

We shall start learning together our own story as we arrived here, how we developed our bodies to be what we are now, how we have lost our identities in the process, and the way to regain such identities.

We get into the root of our own being.

You will need to read these teachings again and again to assimilate what has been said because it would relate to us, to our most ancient past as we all have been the players through all these waves of humanity.

Do not think they are all foreign to us.

This is all our story only.

Dr. K. Parvathi Kumar

ISBN 978-81-89467-85-2



Price:

India 275 Rs.

USA 16 US\$

Europe 13 Euro



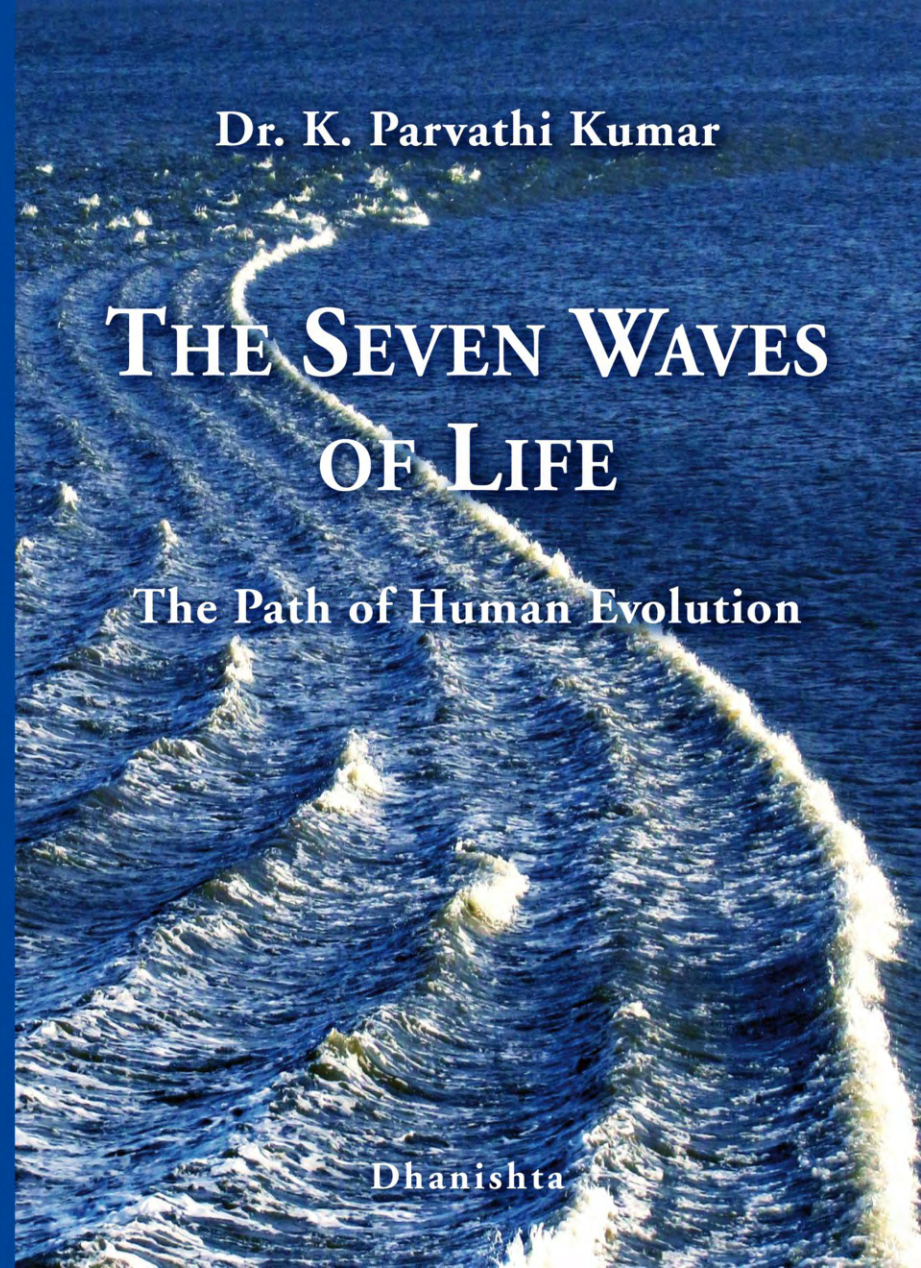
Dr. K. Parvathi Kumar THE SEVEN WAVES OF LIFE

Dr. K. Parvathi Kumar

THE SEVEN WAVES OF LIFE

The Path of Human Evolution

Dhanishta



The content of this publication is given for free as an act of goodwill and for personal use only. It is our responsibility to keep it that way.

Commercialization by any means or on any platform is prohibited, as well as distribution and/or publication in whole or in part without the express written permission of the publisher. All rights reserved.

The Seven Waves of Life

The Path of Human Evolution

Original Title:

THE SEVEN WAVES OF LIFE — THE PATH OF HUMAN EVOLUTION / Dr. K. Parvathi Kumar

© 2021 1st Edition, Publisher: Dhanishta, Visakhapatnam, India

All rights reserved

For copies:

#15-7-1, Angels Enclave, Krishna Nagar

Visakhapatnam — 530 002, Andhra Pradesh, India

Phone: +91 891 2701531

For online orders:

www.dhanishta.org or write to info@dhanishta.org

Further information:

www.worldteachertrust.org

The editing and the production of the book have been realized by persons who feel connected with the work of The World Teacher Trust.

Price:

India 275 Rs.

USA 16 US\$

Europe 13 €

ISBN 978-81-89467-85-2



Printed in India by:

Vamsi Art Printers • 11-6-872, Red Hills, Lakdikapul, Hyderabad, Telangana

www.vamsi.com

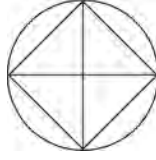
Dr. K. Parvathi Kumar

The Seven Waves of Life

The Path of Human Evolution



Dhanishta



Dhanishta

Dhanishta means Wealthy Wind.

Wealth is not measured in terms of money or business; it is measured in terms of richness of life. Wisdom is disseminated by the Teachers of all times.

Dhanishta works for such fulfilment through its publication of wisdom teachings flowing through the pen and the voice of Dr. K. Parvathi Kumar.

Such teachings are published in English, German, French, Spanish, Hebrew, Telugu, Hindi and Kannada.¹

Dhanishta is a non-profit publishing house.

¹ See Books & Booklets through the pen of Dr. K. Parvathi Kumar in the Appendix

About the Composer

Dr. K. Parvathi Kumar has been teaching various concepts of wisdom and initiating many groups into the Path of Yoga of Synthesis in India, Europe, Latin America and North America. His teachings are many and varied. They are oriented for practice and are not mere information.

Dr. K. Parvathi Kumar has been honoured by the Andhra University with the title Doctor of Letters Honoris Causa, D. Lit. for all his achievements as a teacher around the world. He works actively in the economic, social and cultural fields with spirituality as the basis. He says that the spiritual practices are of value only if such practices contribute to the economic, cultural, and social welfare of humanity.

Dr. K. Parvathi Kumar is a responsible householder, a professional consultant, a teacher of wisdom, healer of a certain order, and is a composer of books. He denies to himself the title of being an author, since according to him - "Wisdom belongs to none and all belong to Wisdom."

The Publisher

Contents

Foreword	13
Preliminary Remarks	16
1. Cosmogogenesis and Anthropogenesis	17
Speculative wisdom	18
Operative wisdom	22
2. Formation of the Globes	23
Seven principles, twelve qualities	23
Seven rays and seven planets	24
Form consciousness and number consciousness	25
Formation of the planet	25
Dissolution and continuation	27
Seven pulsations — waves	30
Human Wave	32
Consolidation of Earth and of man	33
Vanishing of vehicles	34
Returning of souls	35
3. The First Human Wave	37
The cycle of necessity	37
Chhaya rupa	37
Relating to Earth	38
Shadow bodies	39
The pitris	40
Illusion of forms	41
The sense of hearing	41
Solar gods and lunar gods	42
Dnyaneshwari	43
Terrestrial bodies	44
The four letters	45
The spheres of expectation	46

The letter	48
The mindless beings.	50
Pudding bags — the White Island	50
4. Details of the First Human Wave	53
Meru and Ameru	55
Pushkara	56
The seventh tissue.	57
The imperishable Sacred Land	58
Sishtas	60
The Seven Seers	61
Periodical changes.	62
The Great Adjuster	63
5. The Second Human Wave	67
Transition of waves	67
The emergence of new waves	68
Antahkarana sarira	71
From unity to diversity.	72
Amanasa, chhaya, bhuta.	74
First Human Wave and Second Human Wave	75
Sexless and asexual	76
6. Second Human Wave — Multiplication Through Division	77
The process of cell division	77
Fiery lives	80
Building and destruction.	81
Disciples in the ten seed activities	84
Unity of all life	85
Power of positive and negative thinking	85
Giving a different direction.	89
Basic constituents of life	90
7. Details of the Second Human Wave	93
Equilibrium beyond opposites	93
Multiplication through budding	96

The sense of touch	97
The watchers of the waves	97
8. The Third Human Wave	99
The most important phase in human development.	99
The throat centre	100
Bhagavata and Seven Waves	102
The most interesting of all waves.	102
The sweat-born, the egg-born and the development of two sexes.	103
Birth of the great seers	105
Evolution of the human form.	107
Development of senses.	109
Sons of passive yoga	110
Agnishwattas and barhishads	110
More about the sons of passive yoga	111
9. Forms of Procreation	115
From fission to budding, from budding to spores, to hermaphroditism.	117
Hermaphroditism	118
10. The Androgynous State of Humanity	123
Mythological descriptions of androgynous humanity.	123
Androgynous nature of initiates and avatars.	124
All round development.	124
Fulfilment through a Master	127
Androgynous nature.	127
“He is in She”.	130
Prithu	131
Male and female distinctions.	131
Qualities of the Third Human Wave man	133
The veiled chronology	135
Appearance of man on the planet.	136

11. Ancient Civilizations	137
The separation of sexes	137
Greater cities and civilizations than today	137
No great structures on the physical plane in the East	140
Great civilizations and loss of knowledge	143
Location of the Lemurian continent: Northern Lemuria	144
Location of the Lemurian continent: Southern Lemuria	146
A tilt of the axle of the Earth	148
12. Manasaputras and the Elect Race	151
The beginning of language	151
The Elect Race	152
Shambala	154
Manasaputras	155
The urge to become human	158
Five volumes of Secret Doctrine	160
13. The Awakening of Mind	163
Solar pitris, lunar pitris, terrestrial spirits	163
Evolution through experience	165
Preparation of Man	168
Quickening of the human plant	171
The Hyperborean continent	172
Faster learning through suffering and hate	179
14. The Constitution of Man	183
The soul and the fourfold body	183
Learning through trial and error	184
Polygenesis	186
Ascending to unity	186
The middle principle	188
The great illusion	189
Family life	190
Seven fires	192
Ichha sakti, jnana sakti, kriya sakti	197

15. Devas, Men and Animals	201
The abyss between man and animal	201
The curse of the Creator	204
Nirmanakayas	205
Vairajas	205
Failures with devas and men	209
16. Right and Wrong Use of the Mind	213
Mind — facility and impediment	213
Orientation of the mind	215
Concretized mind and buddhic consciousness	217
Pandora's box	218
Manushyas	220
17. From Unity to Duality	225
Senses, sense organs and elements	225
Formation of the eye	226
Formation of Gemini and of Mercury	228
Vision of the cosmic existence	228
Right path and left path	231
The sun sign Gemini	234
Duality	235
Pineal gland and third eye	236
18. The Fourth Human Wave	239
The paths of devayana and of pitruyana	239
The magic of sound	240
Development of Sanskrit language	240
Northern Lemuria and southern Lemuria	242
Changes of the physical frame	243
Intellectual development	245
Details of the development of languages	246
The lowest point of descent	249
19. Evolution of Humans and Animals	251
A two-way progress of man	251

Softening of the brain cells	253
The ascent from solar plexus to heart	256
Distance from the animal	257
No sister to the D Globe	258
No end of the journey	259
Closing the doors to the human kingdom	261
Distorted copies of early humanity	262
 20. Atlantis — Pride and Perversions.	 265
Sexual perversions.	265
Influences of negative spirits.	267
A contact between an ape and humans	268
Lemurian and Atlantean energies in America	269
Examples from Indian scriptures	269
Four aspects of the Atlantean Wave	272
The Lodge of Ibez	273
Abuse of knowledge leading to perdition	275
 21. The Sinking of Atlantis	 279
Details of the location of Lemuria and Atlantis	279
Relics of Atlantis	282
The work of Hierarchy during Atlantean times	283
The impending doom	284
Evacuation of the righteous ones	286
The fight between the White Lodge and the sorcerers	287
The cataclysm	289
Different phases of the sinking of Atlantis	291
Temptations of the left path	291
Turning towards the Sixth Human Wave	292
 22. The Fifth Human Wave	 295
The beginnings — bifurcation of humanity	295
Migration to Central Asia	297
Rebirth of Atlantean souls; the problem of pride	298
Life of the early Aryans	299
Preparation for the sixth minor wave	304

23. Inheritance of the Past and Path into the Future 307

 Beginnings of the Fifth Wave; the first divine kings 307

 Disturbance of Earth’s axis and
 dating the submergence of Atlantis. 308

 Development of the planet and of the human form 309

 Material tendencies of the Fifth Wave. 310

 The statues of Bamiyan — testimony of the five Human Waves. . 312

24. Pioneers of the Sixth and Seventh Human Wave 317

 Future developments and habits from the past 319

 Forerunners of future waves and rounds 321

Appendix 323

 Books & Booklets through the pen of Dr. K. Parvathi Kumar. . . . 323

* * * * *

Note:

This text follows The Chicago Manual of Style Sixteenth Edition [Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 2010] guidelines, which prefers sparing use of capitals — what is sometimes referred to as “down” style. The quotations from the Secret Doctrine are reproduced exactly, including spelling, capitalisation, and punctuation, to retain the original text.

The illustrations used in the book are either public domain, from Wikimedia (see footnotes) or photos and pictures provided by friends for the publication.

Cover: Molgreen (https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:20141009_xl_von-Spiekeroog-nach-Neuharlingersiel-0919.JPG),extract, <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/legalcode>)

Foreword

"All the world's a stage, and all the men and women merely players; they have their exits and their entrances, and one man in his time plays many parts, his acts being seven ages."

- William Shakespeare¹

"Seven times seven the angel shines forth."

- Ramayana

"Ten times ten. The wheel rotates. Three wheels from one wheel. A total of four wheels. Three above and three below. Seven wheels rotate in three directions. Seven and three is ten."

- Master C. V. V.²

Number seven is the key to wisdom. The whole creation is described with this number by seers of all times. Everything is seen through the spectrum of seven. So it is with man. Man acts through seven stages and seven ages as seven successive progressive waves. All enter the world's stage and exit through learning, progressing, and fulfilling.

Humanity on this planet is as old as the planet itself. According to Eastern scriptures the planet was conceived as a habitat for the beings, who are again seven in their gradations (mineral, plant, animal, human, and three gradations of devas). The conception of the planet itself was gradual and is attributed to the seven pulsations. From subtle to gross things manifest and from gross to subtle they recede or de-manifest in a due order. At the middle stage, which is the fourth, the visible world and the visible man are seen as we see today. The invisible dimensions preceding the fourth stage and succeeding the fourth stage are known

-
- 1 William Shakespeare (1623): Mr. William Shakespeares Comedies, Histories, & Tragedies. Published according to the True Originall Copies. London: Printed by Isaac Jaggard, and Ed. Blount. p. 194
 - 2 Master E.K. (E. Krishnamacharya): Spiritual Psychology (Kulapathi Book Trust, Visakhapatnam, 2001-2), p 108: Meditation 60.

only to seers, and not to those who can see only through naked eye. Each one of us existed in the womb of the mother before we appeared in the objective world. Likewise, we continue to exist even after the body ages and collapses. The aging of the body again has its own seven stages. Body itself contains seven tissues and seven centres of awareness.

Wisdom demands insight, which leads to vision. When men aspire to know they need to be open, silent, enquire, ideate, and not negate what is not acceptable to mind.

Man went through many ages and stages. Supported by nature, there were continuous reformations of forms from all-round forms (Pandas) to present man. Many formations took place at many stages. They are chiefly considered to be seven, presided over by the seven Manus. Seven are the waves through which the human evolution on the planet is traced and envisioned. Each wave contains again a sub-wave. The topic is intricate and is beyond a chronological presentation. The initial presentation was given by the seers, which is preserved in the world scriptures. It was re-presented by Madame H. P. Blavatsky from sources and resources, some of which were exclusive to her. It drew the interest of aspirants of wisdom. She spoke of the seven waves in her classical work "The Secret Doctrine" which are but the seven waves of the humanity which come again and again into incarnation for self-realization.

The topic is of profound importance and dimension. It was dwelled in a group seminar of nine days¹. The resultant information and explanation ignited the fire of imagination among the students leading to a transcription of the teaching and its present publication.

May the student find his way and eventually find the human destiny, which is inexplicably linked to the doctrine of evolution.

From the unseen to the seen, the seed sprouts and gradually grows. Further growth remains for a duration and it recedes gradually to disappear. The appearance is apparent, the disappearance is also apparent. This can be gazed upon only when one realizes the key "How it is and how it is becoming". The forms not only change but also evolve. The indweller of the form experiences. The indweller is the eternal traveller, the forms are his vehicles. He continuously evolves as forms evolve and

1 The World Teacher Trust International Group Living on 'The Doctrine of Seven Races', Visakhapatnam, India January 14-28, 2005

moves forward for fulfilment. It is true with appliances the humans use; it is also true with the human body, which is also but an appliance. Each lifetime he comes, he comes in with better equipment to effectively move, not only on the physical plane but also in the subtle and causal planes. One must realize that occultism always and only sees frontiers to pass over, never dead ends.

We, the beings on the planet, existed right from the first wave and will continue to exist until the seventh wave. The difference is, we may be in different planes of awareness due to different states of awareness. From the White Islanders of the first wave to the present-day Aryans, all are but One Humanity progressing forward within seven successive grades or waves.

May this book serve its purpose and satiate the seekers.

Dr. K. Parvathi Kumar

Preliminary Remarks

In the Secret Doctrine, Madame Blavatsky (1831 - 1891) presented certain ideas that no others had presented before. Her description of chains, globes, rounds and root races and also the states of planet earth in relation to every race is profound and complex.

In the present work, Dr. K. Parvathi Kumar gives a synthetic introduction into the topic of the seven races. The book conveys the ideas as described in Secret Doctrine without using the words races, root races or sub-races except in quotes from the original text. In much of today's world, the word race is much disputed and used with regard to skin colour and ethnic origin. However, the original definition of the words "root race" have to do with the beginning of a whole wave of evolution. Therefore, the term "Root Race" is replaced by "Human Wave", the term "Sub-Race" by "Minor Wave", and the term "Race" by "Wave", sometimes "wave of humanity" and a few times just "humanity".

The Publisher

1. Cosmogenesis and Anthropogenesis

Hearty fraternal greetings and good wishes to the brothers and sisters that are gathered here for this year's seminar. We have been gathering in India annually during these times from 1988 and taking a dip into the ancient wisdom.

Ancient wisdom as such consists of two parts: cosmogenesis and anthropogenesis. A wisdom student is required to engage himself in a detailed study of cosmogenesis and of anthropogenesis. This is how the scriptures were conceived in ancient times. Srimad Bhagavata speaks of cosmogenesis and anthropogenesis; the first canto of Mahabharata symbolically gives an overview of cosmogenesis and anthropogenesis. Likewise, in ancient times study of wisdom meant study of how the cosmos came to be and how man came to be, and what the cosmic intelligences involved. Engaging oneself with such knowledge is very essential and it would help man to lift himself up from the localized conditions and the localized identities. When you are ideating about the cosmos, the galaxies, the related intelligences, you are not bothered about the insignificant issues.

In a mundane life, i.e., the life on Earth, even the most intelligent man is engaged with very mundane things. An average human mind is engaged with the global, economic, religious, political, and social activities and conflicts. Anything global seems to be big, but the globe itself is a mustard seed in relation to the cosmos. So, we are talking about an activity within the mustard seed and then we invite the related conflicts into us. There are others who step down from global concepts to national and local concepts, and from local to small community concepts. Community concepts mean group concepts, which are minor concepts compared to the globe. The global level itself is also insignificant when compared to the cosmos.

So, how petty we remain when we just engage totally with something which is the pettiest of the petty things? Are we not localized with our thoughts relating to the group and group members? Does it not make us very petty?

The scriptures speak of cosmic intelligences. Relating to cosmic intelligences, and relating to something beyond our solar system would instantly lift us up from our local situation. When engaged with such things, petty problems of family or the group do not exist. Everything is petty in comparison to the cosmic system because this global activity is not even a mustard seed compared to the cosmos.

All this wisdom relating to cosmogenesis and anthropogenesis is a means for man to lift himself up from this petty thought plane. When you are looking at an elephant, do you bother about a mosquito? So, that is how you can relate to the cosmos and thereby lift yourself up into cosmic presence. That is how wisdom helps us. It is like our being is lifted up from a cell or a prison house. We are lifted up to something which is grand and unlimited. So, we breathe fresh air, and we feel fresh. We feel a sense of expansion. And in that expansion, individual problems look small. Otherwise, our petty problems loom very large for us.

How are we to minimize a problem? Make the problem small! The whole game is in the mind. When our awareness expands, our problem is diminished. But if you consistently give your energy to the problem, the problem grows. This is one of the purposes of engaging oneself with wisdom: to lift up from a limited situation, to uproot from localization. Uprooting from localization helps the individual consciousness to enter a pool of universal consciousness; and it brings in energies relating to the cosmic presence which find their expression through you into the surroundings. That is why it is said that whenever the cosmos, related intelligences, and their work is pondered upon, then the minds open and receive the cosmic presence, and through such minds it is transmitted to the surroundings. Group life contemplating upon cosmic wisdom is considered a great service for this reason.

Speculative wisdom

There is a speculative aspect of wisdom relating to the cosmos and relating to man because man is a micro-cosmos while the cosmos is the macro-cosmos. You find the relation between the two, i.e., cosmos and man. This speculation helps us break the boundaries of our thought patterns. Such was the practice of ancient wisdom in the past. When the great ini-

tiates expressed themselves in society, men of reasonable understanding gained cosmic understanding, and then the Master could lift them up into cosmic awareness. But men of lesser understanding made that very Master a god and built everything around him and said nothing else is important.

Cosmos through man is important. Cosmic man through a man is important. You cannot ignore the cosmic man, or the cosmic presence, or the cosmic intelligences, and limit your study to the study of the life and teachings of a man, who can be a Master. The life and the teachings of a Master is a demonstration of the cosmic presence. Hence, it should be respected. The purpose of a Master is to link individual awareness to universal awareness. So, in the play of universal consciousness a Master of Wisdom is relevant. A Master of Wisdom is not the end, a Master of Wisdom is a means. The means has been misunderstood to be an end during the last 2,000 years. That is how religions of lesser understanding came to be.

There is always a section of humanity on the planet which is in its infancy. They fancy around a man. That is infancy. Now, we have so many Masters in India. For example, Satya Sai Baba, or Shirdi Sai Baba, or Ramakrishna Paramahansa, or Sri Aurobindo. Men of lesser understanding make them gods. Men of better understanding see them as cosmic representations. The cosmic man is represented in these men. If you see Sri Aurobindo, he speaks of the universal wisdom. His epic poem, *Savitri*¹ (based on the Mahabharata) is the scripture of the 20th century. It will be more and more understood in the future. Aurobindo revealed the cosmic plan of transcendence and immortality through the poem *Savitri*. Men of lesser understanding do not follow the teachings in the *Savitri* but instead, they worship Sri Aurobindo. Worship is important but entering into the wisdom proposed by a Master of Wisdom is equally important. The wisdom is important and the Master is important. Between the two, you cannot say who is more important. Both are equally important. Without the Master, the wisdom is not represented. And without wisdom rep-

1 Sri Aurobindo, *Savitri: A Legend and a Symbol* (Pondicherry: Sri Aurobindo Ashram Trust, 1950).

Available at: <http://www.sriurobindoashram.org/ashram/sriuro/download-pdf.php?id=43>

resentation, one is not a Master. So, this equation is important. But, people of lesser understanding always build a form of worship around the man or the teacher and this creates separation. Men of still lesser understanding will build up a fundamentalism around a Master of Wisdom.

Each time there is an advent of a Master, there are some who take to the cosmic wisdom that the Master presents. They relate to the cosmos through the Master. Master is the key; he is the master key. There are others who learn to relate to the cosmos through the Master. And there are still others who cannot see beyond the Master because the Master always brings that which is beyond, that which is invisible. He brings in that which is invisible to visibility. He brings that presence which is not visible, just like a magnet brings magnetism. Magnetism is not visible; a magnet is visible. But the impact of magnetism is through the magnet. Without the instrument of a magnet, the presence of magnetism is difficult to feel. It is not impossible but it is difficult.

To feel electricity without an electrical appliance is difficult. Electricity is everywhere. The whole universe is electric but can we feel it every minute? When it is manifest as a light, you can easily perceive that this light is glowing by virtue of electricity. It is not glowing by itself; it is glowing with the support of electricity. Electricity which is imperceptible has come to perceptible levels. The knowledge is brought from imperceptibility to perceptibility by a Master of Wisdom. Without the Master such perceptions are not possible. What is to be perceived through the Master? The wisdom. If electricity is not present, this bulb here is not relevant to us. And without the bulb, we cannot feel electricity. So, the bulb as well as electricity together help us gain the experience of electricity.

Cosmic presence, likewise, can be experienced through a Master of Wisdom because he presents that cosmic presence through him, just like a piece of magnet presents the magnetism through it. When you only look to the piece of magnet and do not look to magnetism, you build religions about every piece of magnet. The Masters of Wisdom once again try to give at a global level the cosmogenesis¹ and the anthropogenesis².

1 Origin and evolution of the universe/cosmos

2 Origin and study of the human race

The Secret Doctrine¹ is written in two parts, cosmogenesis and anthropogenesis, just like Bhagavatam and Mahabharata, or any other Purana for that matter. All Puranas contain details about cosmogenesis and anthropogenesis. That was how wisdom in the ancient times was represented. Even through Madam Bailey — through Treatise on Cosmic Fire², through the books on the Seven Rays³, through Esoteric Astrology⁴ — the cosmic energies and their patterns are presented. So, this is all called speculative wisdom because speculative wisdom is informative. Informative can also be said as “in-forma-tive”. A person who engages with informative wisdom starts forming inside the cosmic man, who exists as a point. When the cosmic man in you grows, you merge into him and experience the cosmos. Such is the purpose of the wisdom. This is all called speculative wisdom.

Jesus Christ spoke so much about cosmic wisdom. Men of lesser understanding could not record it. He spoke on every branch of wisdom. Only bits and pieces are gathered and recorded while the essential wisdom is not recorded. So is the case with many great initiates who spoke so much of wisdom and gave so much of vision. It all depends on the receptive capacity of the listeners. According to their receptive capacity, they received him, did not receive him, or even rejected him. Pythagoras too gave such grand wisdom; Socrates gave such wisdom; Apollonius was doing the same. There is a galaxy of great initiates.

1 H. P. Blavatsky, The Secret Doctrine: The Synthesis of Science, Religion, and Philosophy, Unabridged Verbatim Edition (Pasadena: Theosophical University Press, 2014), PDF e-book (hereafter cited in text as SD).

Available at: <http://www.theosociety.org/pasadena/sd-pdf/sdpdf-hp.htm>

2 Alice A. Bailey, A Treatise on Cosmic Fire (New York: Lucis Publishing Company, 1925). Available at: https://www.lucistrust.org/online_books/a_treatise_on_cosmic_fire_obooks

3 Alice A. Bailey, A Treatise on the Seven Rays, five volumes (New York: Lucis Publishing Company, 1936-1960).

Available at: https://www.lucistrust.org/online_books/a_treatise_on_the_seven_rays

4 Alice A. Bailey, A Treatise on the Seven Rays, Volume 3: Esoteric Astrology (New York: Lucis Publishing Company, 1951).

Available at: https://www.lucistrust.org/online_books/a_treatise_on_the_seven_rays

Operative wisdom

Though we all seem to be one humanity, there is a gradation in terms of comprehension. What one comprehends is different from what others comprehend. So, there has to be training for better comprehension. That is how the second part of wisdom comes in. The second part of the wisdom is the operative part of wisdom. The first part of wisdom is the speculative part. In the operative part of wisdom, you get the laws of discipleship, the laws of right relationship, then the discipline relating to yoga, and the eightfold path of yoga. So, the process of discipleship is to awaken the individual to be receptive to cosmic wisdom and the wisdom relating to man because man is a micro-cosmos. A way of life is conceived to make the human instrument fit to conceive wisdom. The wisdom relates to oneself, to the student, who is a representation of the cosmic person. Such is the essential purpose of the wisdom teachings.

A group life is meant to develop cosmic wisdom more than to focus on petty individual opinions, judgements, differences, etc. Long years of such practice will relate you to the noblest of thoughts and lift you up from the activity of criticism, judgements, strong opinions, and the resulting tremendous differences and discords.

We get into another group life of wisdom where we shall ideate upon the very beginning of the story of man on Earth, which is presented through the doctrine of the human waves. From tomorrow we shall start learning together our own story as we arrived here, how we developed our bodies to be what we are now, how we have lost our identities in the process, and the way to regain such identities. We then enter into the root of our own being.



2. Formation of the Globes

Before we begin an understanding of the waves of humanity, I shall give a very brief introduction to the formation of the globes. This doctrine is very elaborately explained in the doctrine of globe chains. Globes and the beings that descend on the globes are formed according to a cosmic design. The cosmic design has a great detail. The cosmic design explains everything coming from seeming nothingness to apparent something, from a negative zero to positive zero, which is an expression of the self-existent existence. There is a self-existing eternity. From such eternity of existence, there is the emergence of an impulse. That impulse brings forth its detail into light called the cosmic light or cosmic fire, which again details into three essential principles as cosmic will, cosmic knowledge, and cosmic activity. The three interact through time and bring forth seven principles and twelve qualities into existence.

Seven principles, twelve qualities

The seven principles and the twelve qualities exist on all planes. The seven and the twelve interact to bring forth eighty four: seven principles functioning through twelve qualities. The knowledge relating to this emergence is contained by the numbers one, three, four, seven, and twelve. And then seven subtracted from twelve is number five. That is the alchemy relating to Mercury, which brings in something apparent as all this. This is a knowledge by itself.

It is these principles that make this solar system with the Sun as the means or the medium. Through the Sun, the seven principles express as the seven planets; and through the Sun, the twelve qualities express as the twelve sun signs. As far as our study is concerned, we will start with how these seven principles express themselves on a planet. From cosmic to solar and from solar to planetary, there is the working of the number, the sound, the colour, and the symbol to bring forth a solar system: a Sun, and through Sun the same principles again express to bring forth that which is planetary. Earth too has the same principles enabling its formation.

We consider in this seminar how the human waves formed and developed on Earth. That means, a huge story is left behind and we are trying to start at a point, which itself is a huge story. In a grand story, we are starting somewhere in the last part, and in that part also, we are considering the last part. Cosmogenesis is mind-blowing and that is what is needed for a disciple — that his mind should blow, and his buddhi¹ should manifest. Mind is like a coconut. Unless it is broken, the essence of coco is not experienced. That is why in ancient times, wisdom studies were made to absorb the mind into the buddhic plane. That is where the grandeur of the divine activity is experienced, in contrast to the petty mental concepts our lower mind has about divinity. What we think of divinity is very small; it is like thinking that an elephant is like a mosquito. That is why we try to ascend into this knowledge (buddhi).

Seven rays and seven planets

Coming to the doctrine of the waves of humanity, the formation of the planet itself is a big story. One of the seven principles emanating from the Sun forms the basis for the Earth globe. The Sun's rays have seven qualities, seven colours and seven sounds, and the seventh emanation or principle from the Sun is what we see as forming Sun this Earth.

A solar ray has seven qualities. That is what we call the seven rays: will, love/wisdom, knowledge/activity, harmony through conflict, concrete science and understanding, emotion/devotion and rhythm/ritual (methodical functioning).

These are the seven rays of a sunray. When the Sun emits the rays, the seven qualities result in the formation of the seven essential planets. That is how we have the seven chief planets around Earth. Earth is the junior most one among the planets. The beings on Earth are also the junior most beings in the solar system. When we comprehend Earth's formation, we can begin to comprehend how every globe is formed.

Should we not try to think about the formation of a globe from the atmosphere? Should we not think about the formation of a human being from the spermatozoa? How is it forming into all this? Why there is the same form coming from a human sperm? It enters the womb and forms an

1 Knowledge, discrimination

ovum, like a bubble, and then slowly it develops its own point, then the head develops like a spherical form, and forms a spine. From the third month to the seventh month, slowly two eyes are formed, one nose with two nostrils is formed, two ears emerge from the sphere, and a mouth emerges, and then the rest of the form through the spine happens. It all happens in the same form, in due and ancient form. Where is this design in that sperm?

Form consciousness and number consciousness

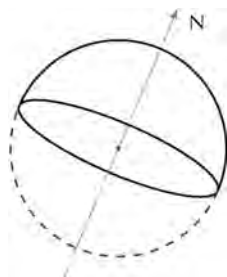
There is a design consciousness in the universe. It is Him whom we call the Great Architect of the Universe. The Great Architect of the Universe is the form-making cosmic intelligence. There is an intelligence which makes forms according to due and ancient form. A coconut brings out only a coconut tree; a mango seed brings out only a mango tree; a human sperm brings out only a human form. From every animal, similar form emerges. This form consciousness is a grand cosmic intelligence called Lord Visvakarma. Visvakarma is also called in the Greek system as the great Pymander. In the Masonic system he is called the Great Architect of the Universe.

There is a form consciousness in the cosmos; it brings forth forms. There is a number consciousness in the cosmos; it brings the numbers in the same order: the two eyes, the two ears, the two nostrils, one mouth, sixteen upper teeth, sixteen lower teeth, and then five fingers for the feet and the hand. These are all according to a number consciousness which exists in the cosmos. These are the two grand principles which manifest the form. This number consciousness is called Kapila. The Great Architect of the Universe as well as the number consciousness also exist in a sperm and they prepare the baby in the womb. And by seven months, the whole form is made. Then the two grand intelligences hide themselves within the spine and settle in the muladhara. This is one understanding.

Formation of the planet

Likewise, the planet too happens. Before a planet comes into existence, a vortex is formed in space. This vortex will be the future north pole. From

out of that vortex, which is caused by one of the seven qualities of the Sun ray, matter is gathered and slowly that matter forms the upper hemisphere. The vortex is the pole which spins the quality of the seventh ray bringing forth the related matter and forming itself as half orange. Half an orange means if the orange is cut horizontally and we have the upper part of the orange with the stem — it is like a dish antenna. And it moves around the Sun in that manner for a long time. Slowly, the matter condenses and the South Pole is formed. The vortex around the South Pole and the vortex around the North Pole hold in between the matter that they spin as one globe. This is again a huge story which is explained in the Eastern scriptures as the story of Dhruva, the Pole Star, and his descendants.

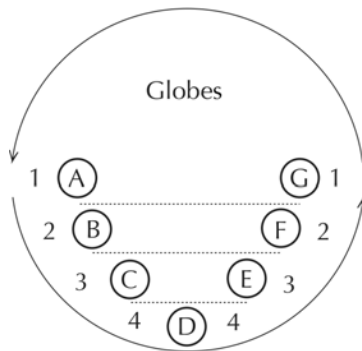


For the globe to form there are three regular steps and in the fourth step we see the globe as we see it now. The globe too had its own involution to be dense and solid — there are stories relating to it. Through three regular steps, and in the fourth step the globe is formed. And again in three regular steps, the globe evolves to be a jewel and unfolds itself as a lotus. When a globe unfolds it is a lotus.

The etheric chakras in our bodies, from ajna to muladhara, are like wheels. When we evolve they become lotuses. There is a muladhara chakra and a muladhara lotus. For the unevolved, it is a chakra; for the evolved, it is a lotus. Likewise, the sahasrara chakra is a wheel of cosmic nature; it can also be called a thousand petalled lotus. For most of the beings, it is a wheel. For evolved beings such as Lord Buddha or Lord Maitreya, it is a lotus. Wheel indicates conditioned movement, circular movement, moving around itself all the time governed by a circumference. Lotus indicates unfoldment of energy. In three regular steps the planet comes to the fourth state; and again in three regular steps it evolves. Thus, the planetary being is fulfilled.

Dissolution and continuation

The Secret Doctrine says that in seven pulsations a globe appears and disappears. The pulsation of a planet is very long, and it is like completing seven rounds on the planet. Then the planet disappears. Likewise, planet Earth forms and enables beings to populate it and evolve. While the beings evolve on the planet, sometimes the planet completes its evolution.

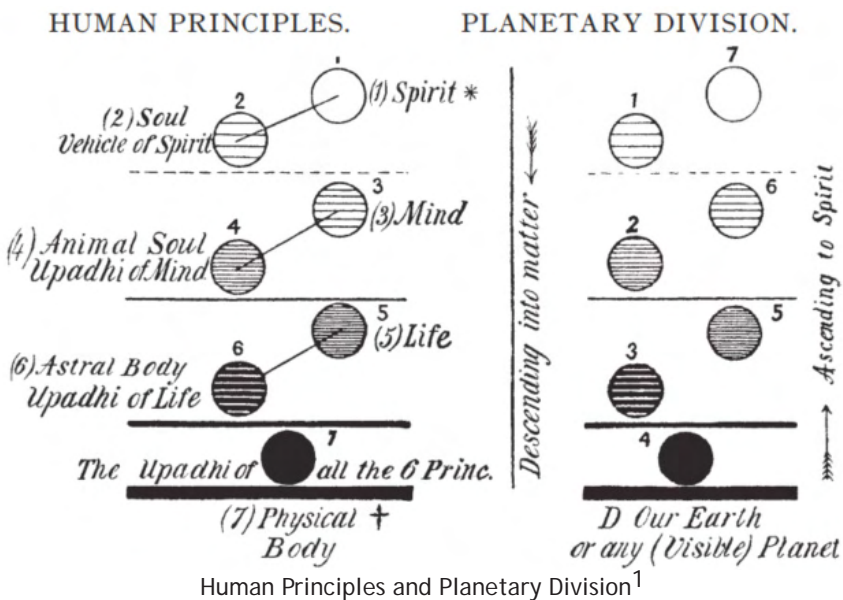


When a planet completes its evolution, it reaches its own nirvana. But then there are beings who are left over. For the left over beings, another planet is to be conceived. Is it not? For example, if there is a school with seven classes, group after group of children enter the school and leave the school after completing the seventh class. After sometime the school building itself becomes old timeworn. When we see that the building is at the point of concluding its life, the management considers building another school. And before the old school building collapses, the children are shifted into the new building and there the beings keep evolving again.

The duration of involution and evolution of a planet is much longer compared to the involution and evolution of the beings on the planet. The life of a school building could be a hundred years, but for the student that studies in the school it is only seven years. 14×7 groups of students are sent out but still new groups keep coming. So what to do? Build a new school when the old school's life is over.

Likewise, before a planet disappears, another planet comes in its place. You find the same principle everywhere. The office in which you work, the bureau in which you work, when you come to the point of retirement, someone is already there to take to that chair and conduct the

work. As you grow to the point of retirement and leave, someone else will come and the work continues. Work becomes the basis for the beings to evolve and the chair never remains vacant. If one president goes, another president comes in. Continuity is a principle in creation. Globes appear and globes disappear. When a globe is in its fourth state, there is already a globe in the third state, a globe in the second state, and a globe in the first state. When the globe in the fourth state becomes astral or etheric, the globe in the third state will take the position of the globe at the fourth state. Likewise, there are chains of globes that keep coming, just like in an organization where employees leave, but new employees come. At all times all positions are filled. It is the same organization you find with the solar system. Everything is an imitation of what is happening in nature. As above, so below.



If someone thinks, "What will happen if I stop functioning?", the answer is, "If you stop working, a better person will come to continue the work." No one is indispensable in creation. We can stop and see if the work continues or not. There is someone waiting to take up that work. It is true with

man, it is true with globe, and it is true with a Sun of a solar system. That is the beauty of continuity in creation. If you leave, your son continues the work in relation to your family. As you leave your bureau or work, your assistant will assume that position and continue the work. As you discontinue your service in a group work, there is another group member who will take up the service work. This is the beauty of the continuity of creation.

There are three generations behind you, and there are three generations ahead of you. Each one of us is like a chain of seven persons. I succeeded my father. He succeeded his father, and he succeeded his father. The great grandfather, grandfather, and father culminate in the one who is now on the physical. Likewise, in the fourth step, there is a total manifestation.

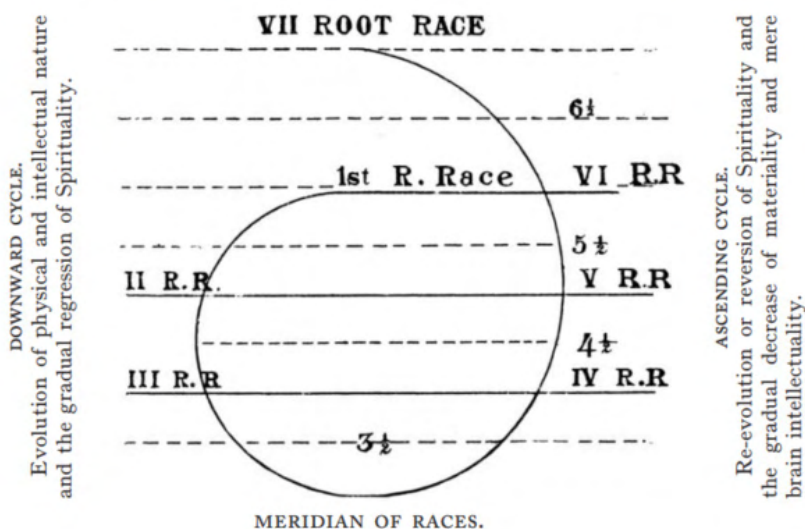
Similarly, you have your teacher, he has his teacher, and then he has his teacher. There are three teachers who came before you, and there are three teachers ahead of you. They form the chain. You are the fourth one. In you the three culminate. And then three teachers will come after you — a chain of seven teachers. There is always a chain of seven. This principle needs to be understood. There is succession everywhere. We succeeded our predecessors. And we will be succeeded by our successors. The work of Madam Blavatsky is succeeded by the work of Madam Bailey. The work of Madam Bailey is undoubtedly succeeded by the World Teacher Trust and Master EK. It continues, nothing stops. Most of the people who were in incarnation when Blavatsky was in form are the people who come back to continue their learning through the teachings, and they reappear in different forms. There is a movement of groups incarnation after incarnation with the same vibration of teachings. And it goes on until the evolution is complete. This is how we can understand the continuity.

It is important for a student of occultism to see this continuity. You yourself are a continuity of your past life. And you will continue into your future life. There is a continuity with you. You cannot just cut it out and then say this is my life and it is complete. It is not complete because the traits you have, the likes and dislikes, the strengths and weaknesses you have by birth, they are all what you brought with you from your past life. And during this life, you will work further. You may overcome some weaknesses, you may gain some strengths by the termination of this incarnation, and then you move forward. Life is not seen just in its physical aspect — there is a subtle aspect, a causal aspect, and a soul aspect.

Seven pulsations — waves

Each one of us has a series of seven lives as one step of evolution. In a series of seven lives, a step of evolution is accomplished. That is why it said that even in this life every seven years is important. That is how this principle of seven is brought into operation into our life: seven years as one cycle, seven days as one cycle. Every week is a unit and then there is a repetition. Each repetition should be a higher step, higher range. Every set of seven should put you on a higher ring. Then the movement is spiral. Otherwise, it is circular. Circular movement is a conditioned movement, and spiral movement is a movement where there is evolution.

EVOLUTION OF ROOT RACES IN THE FOURTH ROUND.



Evolution of Human Waves¹

Likewise, the planet appears and disappears in seven pulsations. The man evolves in seven rounds where you have the seven waves. This is important to note. The man steps down by three steps into the fourth state. Thereafter, he evolves. We have the seven waves for evolution. In each of

¹ SD, 2:300

these seven steps, we are the travellers. We have been and will continue to be the travellers. That should be noted. In this connection, I would like to read some words from the Secret Doctrine.

The word “wave” indicates a specific type of evolutionary development. By seven waves the development is complete: the physical, the intellectual and then the spiritual development. The first three waves relate to bringing the form into an optimum order so that the Fourth Wave is an effective wave. The Fifth Wave is a wave relating to evolution. It takes time for the soul to prepare its form in its completeness, and in the Fourth Wave it is complete. Thereafter, it is a path of return, meaning a path of evolution where, through form, the monad or the soul evolves.

If we are in this form today, there has been a grand work carried out for thousands and thousands of years, which according to the Secret Doctrine is 18 million years. Just to say life began some 2,000 years ago shows ignorance. 2,000 years or 5,000 years or 10,000 years means nothing! The planet itself has been in existence for 30 million years.

What do we know of the history of this planet in existence for 30 million years? Our Earth went through its own changes six times. Many continents that existed before are in the waters today. Many continents that we see today were in the waters before. What we see as the Pacific Ocean was a great continent at one time. Today, we see it as a huge sea.

The islands in the Pacific Ocean, like Easter Island and the Hawaiian Islands, are the peaks of that great continent called Lemuria. Likewise, there was Atlantis — a huge continent which is presently resting under the ocean waters. There was a time when there was no Europe. So many things have happened on this planet. Change is constant in nature. The globe too changes. The story of the Earth is a 30 million year-old story according to scriptures. Today’s science also confirms that the Earth is somewhere around 30 million years old. The story of man, however, is 18 million years old.

How much work must have been completed to come to this point? You cannot start the story just with you. It is like when you arise and see the Sun, then it is sunrise to you. But Sun is always there. Is it not? When you sleep in the midnight hour in India, there is already Sun in Australia. When you sleep in Europe, there is already Sun in Asia. Sun is always there; and when you see the Sun you feel the light. As humanity started feeling the

light at various parts of the globe, they started saying, "*From today there is light, from now there is light, before it was all dark everywhere.*"

This is how many religions speak of the beginning. When there is already Sun here in India, there is no Sun yet in Europe. When Europe gets in the Sun, it is already midday here.

The dawn of Europe is the mid-noon of Asia. This statement is also symbolic. When Europe is in its beginning of comprehending light, Asia was already at the zenith of understanding the light. This is how the Secret Doctrine does not allow you to determine what is what. Don't try to judge, don't try to determine — just enter, become absorbed, get lost, and enjoy the romance of the teachings — that's all. That is how development happens.

One clue I can give you about the study of seven waves is to study how, from the point of pregnancy, the soul develops its body in the womb for the period of seven months. The formation is complete in seven months. If you study each month's development of the baby in the womb, you can also understand each of the seven waves — they are relatable. That is how you have to study.

Cosmogenesis is always studied in relation to anthropogenesis, because God made man in His own image and likeness. To understand the macro try to understand the micro — that is important. So, this is one clue we have.

Human Wave

In an endeavour to convey a distinct meaning to the term Human Wave as against the word wave — Human Wave relates to the beginning of a wave. The beginning of a wave is from the culmination of the preceding wave. From the culmination of the preceding wave, the next wave comes. They are taken as the roots for the next wave — just like when you harvest, you retain some of the grains for replanting. It is the same crop continued into another cycle.

The outer vehicular manifestations are in relation to the very same monads, egos, souls. All those individuals and personalities inhabiting a Human Wave may be new, i.e., the personalities can be new, the forms can be new, their outer vehicle manifestations can be new, but it is the very

same monads. We had a different form, different name, and different personality in the past life. Through evolution, we gained a different personality, a different form, and a different name. But as souls we are still the same. As souls we continue to have the same identity, but as personalities we are presented differently each time according to our evolution.

To give an example, yesterday you put on a different dress, today another dress, tomorrow yet another. The outer changes but you are the same person. We are recognized even when we change our dresses.

Likewise, the seers can identify the souls which assume different personalities and forms. Our personality is seen esoterically as the clothing by the seers. The soul is clothed or enveloped in a personality, and the personality is enveloped by a form. This personality and form are needed for the soul to experience and to evolve. Without personality and form, the soul has no way to experience life in form and matter.

Consolidation of Earth and of man

Madam Blavatsky writes in the Secret Doctrine that without the personality and the body, the soul — which is again a double because there is spirit within it — is like a pudding bag (Madam Blavatsky's words). It has no shape, no form, and can change very easily and is very soft.

The primeval wave, the very beginning wave, was non-physical. There was no rigidity in the frame since it had no bony structure. It was somewhat jocularly called by Madam Blavatsky as a "pudding bag".

Earth was also like that at one point. Then it slowly consolidated. The story of Earth consolidating and the story of man's form consolidating happened concurrently. On one side Earth consolidates; accordingly the forms given to the souls on Earth also consolidated. These personalities are the outer manifestations of the very same monads, which used the old personalities as the vehicles for a period of manifestation. We are in this personality for this life. It need not be the same personality next time. It was not the same before. A person working in a bank will not be working in the bank the next incarnation also. An air hostess will not be an air hostess in the next life. Different personalities, different exposures, and then different experiences. When you have different exposures, you have different experiences, and you evolve with the help of these experiences.

Vanishing of vehicles

The vehicles, outer forms, vanish as the Human Waves disappear. What vanishes along with each Human Wave are the vehicles but the beings continue. This is the story of Jurassic Park. There are certain species which don't exist now, but the beings exist. The beings which were in those forms have changed their forms through evolution. The same forms don't exist. There was a time when we had twenty-eight feet high beings on Earth. Even now there is one like that in the Himalayas. He is called Yeti. Some are retained as samples. There was a time where we successively came from twenty-eight feet and diminished to seven feet.

In the Easter Islands, there are formations of twenty feet high human beings sculptured on the rocks. That is how long ago there were different forms. There was a time when man had two heads on one neck. There was also a time when man had four hands. Slowly, through evolution all those forms resulted in the form we have now. To think of man as he is here now as the man before, and will be in the future is due to our static thinking.

We attribute this kind of male and female forms to devas. Some religions speak of devas wearing the same kind of clothing that we are wearing, with the same kind of hairstyle! We think the whole universe is like us because we try to centre everything around ourselves alone.



Easter Island statues¹

¹ Chaparroandrea (https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:12_Moais..JPG), <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/legalcode>

The characteristics of the old waves have disappeared. In due time, the same monads will take on vehicles of still greater variance. Vehicles change but the souls do not — it is the same souls. At one time we were using horses. Later, we started using bicycles, then motor cycles, then cars, then trains, then airplanes. This is because inherently we also change our vehicles, the human equipment. What we produce outside has a relation to what we are inside.

The characteristics of the old waves have disappeared. In due time, the same monads will take on vehicles of still greater variance. Vehicles change but the souls do not — it is the same souls. At one time we were using horses. Later, we started using bicycles, then motor cycles, then cars, then trains, then airplanes. This is because inherently we also change our vehicles, the human equipment. What we produce outside has a relation to what we are inside.

Returning of souls

If you go to the zoo in Barcelona, there is an old painting relating to the Iberian times where elephants are painted. The major part of ancient Iberia is under water now. There was a time in Iberia where they had elephants; today, there are no elephants there. What happened to the beings of those times? They come back into new forms.

Likewise, Puerto Rico is a Borinquen Island. There were Borinquens there. The huge land sunk into the waters. The Puerto Ricans whom we have there are today called Americans or can be called Spanish, but they are essentially Borinquens¹.

The humans over there were killed when there was an invasion into South America and North America. But what happened to the souls? They came back into the new bodies. Hence, if you ask them, "*Are you European?*", they say, "*No, we are not European.*" It was a great revelation to me because that land was occupied by the Spanish. Europe brought much civilization to the Northern and Southern American continents.

1 The ancient name of the island of Puerto Rico. Before the Spanish arrived and renamed it Puerto Rico the indigenous Indians, the Tainos, called the land "Borinquen", which means "Land of the Valiant Lord." One who was from Borinquen was called a "Boriqua".

Everything occurs according to the divine plan. You cannot place guilt on the Spanish or anyone who accomplished certain exploratory tasks.

From a higher standpoint, all is in divine order. When the Spanish landed, many natives were killed. But what happened to the souls? They come back into the same place in a European body but with a Native American psyche. That is why they say, *"We are South Americans. We are not Europeans."* Many times just to know the psyche I used to ask them, *"Are you not Spanish?"* They say, *"No, I am not Spanish, I am Argentinian."* You ask a Brazilian, *"Are you not Portuguese?"* He says, *"No, I am not Portuguese. I am Brazilian."*

You ask anyone in the Central American continent like Venezuela, Bolivia, Columbia, Cuba, Santo Domingo, they do not identify with the Europeans. They do not say they are Europeans. Why? This is because the same souls came into new forms. The remnants of the old waves of Mayans, Mexicans, Aztecs, and such others did not take to evolution. They got mixed into the new wave, and they are finding their evolution now. That is why they retained their identity, though in a new form. That is how the form can be new. In order to continue their cycle of evolution under the new conditions, another Human Wave, which is entirely different from the old Human Wave, is formed.

The ones who are in the North and South American continents and whom we today call as Americans, they are not just Europeans. That is what Madam Blavatsky meant that this is a new wave because it is a mix-up of not only German, French, British, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, but also the natives. Twelve million Native Indians are said to have been killed in the North American continent. Where are they? They are in the form of Americans only. That is why they speak so much about the injustice done to the natives. People who work for the Indians in America, who advocate their cause, and who bring about more facts about what injustice was done to them, in their blood there is the Native Indian. Souls are the same, forms keep changing. We need to have this understanding.

The term "monad" signifies the pilgrim that is passing through the cycle. We are all pilgrims on this planet. We are making our pilgrimage. This pilgrimage is not a wish, it is a necessity for us. With this background we will enter into the First Wave.

3. The First Human Wave

The cycle of necessity

We have been speaking of the pilgrim who is passing through the cycle of necessity. The cycle of necessity means passing life after life on Earth — a series of lives to fulfil the purposes of the soul. As much as the purposes of the soul are fulfilled, so much the pilgrimage on the planet is completed. That is how the pilgrim keeps returning again and again in a cyclical manner until he arrives at the path of yoga where the cyclical paths transform into a spiral path. He keeps using different vehicles, vestures appropriate to the human kingdom.

When Madam Blavatsky speaks of monad it is atma-buddhi. Atma-buddhi means the soul with consciousness trying to find its expression for fulfilment in creation and for self-fulfilment. Since the law of motion prevails both on the manifested spheres as well as on the unmanifested spheres, the waves keep coming and going, yet the human kingdom continues on the globe. We need to carry the understanding that until the necessity is completed, the waves keep coming. That is how through all these waves it is the same monads, the same souls, continuing to progress. With this basic understanding we enter into the First Wave.

Chhaya rupa

The First Human Wave: the soul has to have a body to relate to the Earth and to function on Earth. For that it requires the cooperation of the pitris, the lunar devas who keep working through another channel to provide bodies for the souls. It is the lunar devas who supply the necessary material which in the beginning forms a shade around the soul. It is like a wrapping around the soul. Since it is like a shade around the soul, it is called chhaya rupa. Chhaya in Sanskrit means shade. Rupa means form or body.

The Secret Doctrine says, *“The Heavenly rupa (Dhyān Chohan) creates (man) in his own form; it is a spiritual ideation consequent on the first differentiation and awakening of the universal substance; that form is the*

ideal shadow of Itself: and this is the man of the first race)."¹ He produces his duplicate. That is why the personality is an exact duplication of the design of the soul. It duplicates itself and for that the lunar gods help. Just like you find your mirror image in the mirror. This is the future lower self.

At the very beginning, the future lower self is like a shade of the same — just like if you stand in the light, your shade will be according to your form. *"To express it in still clearer form, limiting the explanation to the Earth only, it was the duty of the first 'differentiated Egos' — the Church calls them Archangels — to imbue primordial matter with evolutionary impulse and guide its formative powers in the fashioning of its productions."*²

Relating to Earth

The will to relate to the Earth is with the soul. The soul carries the will and it intends to relate to the Earth. To relate to the Earth, it needs to use its will. And that impulse creates the first shade. That is why the scriptures say, it is the desire that makes you come back. The desire is arising out of necessity. The necessity is to fulfil itself, fulfil itself to be perfect. The whole game of the soul is to trace perfection. We try to better ourselves in terms of our experience. Every soul would innately like to experience and fulfil itself. The soul pursues all pursuits — pursuit after money, after sex, after power, after health, after knowledge. As the soul fulfills its pursuits, it no longer need to indulge in the same pursuits. Much of humanity's activity is based on making money, sex, food, improving its importance, and seeking to be recognized — so many facets to be experienced. One after the other as they are fulfilled, the pursuit continues. The earthly fulfilments are limited. Then the soul seeks knowledge. When it fulfils itself with knowledge, the ultimate fulfilment comes. For all these fulfilments you need a causal, astral and physical body; or causal, etheric, and physical. So, the Soul creates a body to fulfil its purposes. In our life, we create opportunities to equip ourselves with. After being equipped, we seek to fulfil our purposes. We want the body to grow into its full strength and full size enough skills. Then with the skills and with the body, we want to ex-

1 SD, 2:242

2 SD, 2:242

press ourselves into the world and fulfil our potentials. This desire to fulfil is the innate desire of the soul.

In the process of learning there is always a trial and error period. We learn from our mistakes, we also learn from right actions and ultimately we learn to choose what is right. This is how the experiment happens with the soul. All that it has built as its body is on the basis of its self-will. It is with the will we relate to the earth. It is also again with the will we dis-associate with that which is earthly. As much as you relate to Earth this is then reflected in our physical bodies: causal to etheric, etheric to physical. When you are more engaged with etheric state of existence, you develop a strong etheric body, and then you develop a strong causal body, and carry out grand acts like the initiates do. A man who builds a strong causal body is said to have built the Solomon's temple because that body is capable of doing many great things.

Shadow bodies

The First Human Wave is that state where the soul by its self-will creates an ideal shadow of itself. It is a double into which it will itself reflect further. The process is the same even now. Whatever you wish to create, you first will it, visualize it, transmit your energy to it, then you create it. Anything we created is like that. For example, this Retreat Centre — it was willed that we should have a place of our own so that we would not always have to find a different place for our activity. So, we willed it, we visualized a plan, and then we brought it into manifestation. This is how the will manifests. Will manifests not only in the involutionary process, will can also manifest in relation to the evolutionary process. The first form is an image projected from out of the will of the soul.

*"Thus the 'Self-created' and 'Self-existent' projected their pale shadows; but group the Third, the Fire-Angels, rebelled and refused to join their Fellow Devas."*¹ Thus, the self-created and self-existent projected their pale shadows according to their original desire.

"Subservient to eternal law, to the pure gods could only project out of themselves shadowy men, a little less ethereal and spiritual, less divine and perfect than themselves — shadows still. The first humanity,

1 SD, 2:242-243

therefore, was a pale copy of its progenitors; too material, even in its ethereality, to be a hierarchy of gods; too spiritual and pure to be men, endowed as it is with every negative (Nirguna) perfection."¹

Meaning, they are less spiritual than gods but more spiritual than the men that we know. The creation is brought forth from pure gods from out of their forms as their shadows into which the souls, which did not fulfil the purposes, enter into. This you have to understand. When one Earth globe completes its manifestation, the unevolved beings shall have to be transferred to the newly formed globe. They need bodies. So, to them bodies are provided. In the beginning, those bodies are shadows. These shadows came from the gods who gave their form as a reproduction. Is that clear? When we go further, it will be more clear.

*"It is from the material Worlds that descend they, who fashion physical man at the new Manvantaras."*²

"They" here means the ones who came from the other planet unevolved, and they are fashioned by the shadows. The fashioning is done by the lunar "*Ihas*". In buddhic terminology "*Iha*" means god. There is a place called Lhasa in Tibet, meaning it is a place of gods. So, the people come from more material chain of globes to the Earth globe. Just like I spoke about the school, the school's life is over and the children remained. The children went through some evolution in that school. Similarly, the beings went through some evolution on that planet, and that planet took to a higher initiation. So these beings are shifted to this new globe. Then, to them the lunar pitris give a shady form with the help of the solar gods.

The pitris

Carefully understand this statement: *"It is from the material Worlds that descend they, who fashion physical man at the new Manvantaras."*³ This has reference to the lunar pitris who have come from more material chains of the globes. They completed their evolution on the lunar chain. They attained the status of gods and were entitled to be called pitris. Madam Blavatsky is speaking about the pitris. The pitris are those who

1 SD, 2:95

2 SD, 2:57

3 SD, 2:57

completed their evolution on the moon chain, and became gods relating to the moon chain. They are not equal to the solar gods. They are lunar gods. They are considered to be inferior to the solar gods. It is these lunar gods, who came from the moon chain, that fashion the body to the souls that arrived on this planet. The 'Lords of the Moon' are termed as inferior gods in order to make a comparison between the lunar gods and the solar gods. The solar gods are gods of will. The lunar gods are the gods that prepare the forms of illusion (bodies of form).

Illusion of forms

Every form is an illusion (meaning not permanent), and the forms are created by the energies of the Moon, i.e., the lunar energies. The bodies of illusion consist of ethereal matter, which is again of two grades: causal and etheric or causal and astral. With these the illusion is created. Once you are out of the influence of the lunar gods, there is no outer world. The outer world is the magic of the five elements. It is a make-believe world that is created by the lunar gods. Your body is also created with the lunar energies. However, you are solar. The substance of our body is prepared by the lunar gods, the pitris. That is why you are able to relate and see forms. Once you are out of the lunar effect, you will not see all these forms. You would only see an expanse of light all around. That is how you find statements coming from the great initiates that all is light, that it is all divine, and that form is an illusion. That knowledge, illumination is the final experience.

The sense of hearing

When you are clothed in these bodies, you gain the related senses. With the first envelope around the soul, we attain the sense of hearing. That is the first sense among all the senses. Pure soul has no sense to hear, to smell, to taste, or to touch, etc. As the body develops itself into its denser aspects, through wave after wave, all the five senses are developed. Then you are encased and bound in a vehicle of body of matter.

This is due to habit. By habit we are stuck in matter. Some people are stuck with bread, some others stuck with idlis, some are stuck with rice, some are stuck with vegetables. There is so much of sticking to by us which

is developed by a habit. Our sticking to language is also by habit. When you regularly apply the habit principle, you feel that this is the only way.

When the etheric form as the first envelope around you is created, the sense of hearing is developed. That is how hearing comes in. Along with the successive bodies, the successive senses also are developed, and then we are fully equipped. This is a vehicle which is in preparation for use by the soul to have a complete experience in matter.

Solar gods and lunar gods

We should first know the distinction between solar gods and lunar gods. The souls descend from the solar gods. Our bodies come to us through the lunar gods. The devas mould out bodies and make them useful. The form is a body of illusion and it is later physicalized. Though physicalized, it is impermanent. It is subject to constant change and modification. The subtler the form, the greater the degree of change. The denser the form, the lesser degree of change. Change is always there, impermanence is always there. By having these bodies the souls become mortals, in the sense that when they identify themselves with these bodies, they became mortals.

It is like identifying ourselves with our vehicle. The self is identifying itself with the non-self. The non-self is felt as the self. On account of the illusion it suffers. The non-self is felt as the self. The non-self is impermanent and it dies. When you identify with that which dies, you suffer death. But that happens due to the illusion created by the lunar pitris.

The illusion happens to an unevolved soul. The illusion does not happen to the evolved soul. For example, when a Master of Wisdom assumes a body, he does not identify himself with the body — he utilizes it for specific purposes. That is why the Masters of Wisdom sometimes fulfil their purposes in just thirty or thirty three years, and then disappear.

Shankaracharya, a great initiate in India, who revived the entire Aryan wisdom after the confusion arising from the teachings of Buddha, lived for only thirty years. His purpose was fulfilled. He then walked towards the Himalayas and somewhere on the way he cast off his body. Recently, Vivekananda did the same. He too cast off his body after thirty years.

Dnyaneshwari

There was another great initiate in the Maharashtra who came to give a fresh exposition of the Bhagavad Gita. He lived only twenty-one years and then said, *"My purpose is fulfilled. I will go to the underground and stay there and depart from there."* So, a room was built in the underground of a temple. After his twenty-first year, he walked into the underground. The terrace was closed, and there was no air. After one year, he appeared to one of his fellow beings and told him, *"I am still in penance in the underground and the root of a tree is coming and piercing at my thigh. You may ensure that root is removed from that tree."*

When they dug open the samadhi, he was just sitting like that after one year also, not talking. They saw the root pushing into his thigh. That root was removed and the underground room was again covered.

This is not an imaginary fairy tale. It happened five hundred years ago and the place is still there. The initiate's name is Dnyaneshwari. It is a wonderful story of a great being. He did not speak until he was seven years old. People thought he was mute.

One day, he and his three elder brothers decided to have an orthodox traditional ritual and sing Gayatri. The priests objected to their caste and said, *"You are unfit to chant Vedas. You are unfit to chant Gayatri."* Then this boy said, *"I will make a buffalo chant Gayatri. I can make a buffalo sing the Vedas."* He then spoke into the ears of a passing buffalo, and the buffalo started chanting Vedic hymns. The priests were surprised. Thereafter, for six years he taught Bhagavad Gita. The next six years he compiled a commentary on the Bhagavad Gita. Thereafter he said, *"The purpose of my taking incarnation is complete. You may preserve the body under the ground. I will go."*

Such stories you will listen, even in recent times, in the states of Maharashtra and Madhya Pradesh. We sometimes have to go and visit those places instead of sitting in these seminars.

The stories of hundred-year-old saints and the saints who lived in the last century are astounding. They all demonstrate total disassociation with the body and functioning through the body. Just like we function through our equipment, they function through their bodies because the body is a facility — it is an equipment. It is prepared by the lunar pitris

with the help of the five elements of this Earth. The soul uses such bodies as clothing. Since the souls that have come into incarnation on the planet are unevolved, unfulfilled, and seeking further fulfilment, the moment the ethereal envelope comes around them they suffer the illusion. The illusion manifests along with the very vestiture itself.



Sant Dnyaneshwari¹

Terrestrial bodies

“The Moon being an inferior body to the Earth even, to say nothing of other planets, the terrestrial men produced by her sons — the lunar men or ‘ancestors’ — from her shell or body, cannot be immortal.”²

The lunar gods are the sons of Moon. Whatever bodies they produce cannot be immortal. They are bodies for experience only. *“They cannot hope to become real, self-conscious and intelligent men, unless they are finished, so to say, by other creators.”³* These bodies are not self-conscious. The body gains consciousness when the soul is present. The quality of the body is far, far inferior to the quality of the soul. That is why for an initiate, staying in the body is difficult, confining. Whenever they enter into a terrestrial body, it is considered a great sacrifice. It is like getting into a very inferior dress. If you put on very inferior clothing, you will not feel happy. That is why when an initiate assumes a physical body, it is con-

1 1. Scene from the 1940 Marathi film Sant Dnyaneshwar: (Wikimedia, Published December 17, 2012). Available at: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sant_Dnyaneshwari_1940.jpg

2 SD, 2:45

3 SD, 2:45

sidered a great sacrifice because the quality of the body is far inferior to his own quality. Through the interaction between the soul and the body, the soul will slowly give birth to better bodies. Until this body is gained, the soul is only a double — a double means the spirit is enveloped within the light called buddhi. The Soul is enveloped spirit. On that envelope is light. That light is called buddhi. Spirit enveloped by light is called soul.

The four letters

*“Into the forms projected by the Lha (Pitris), the two letters (the Monad, called also ‘the Double Dragon’) descend from the spheres of expectation.”*¹ Madam Blavatsky writes like that. How do people understand that? When she says two letters descend, what are the two letters? There is a letter for the spirit and a letter for the soul. Those are the two letters. Then there are two letters for the body. These are the four essential letters relating to man. That is the fourfold man — two letters relate to the soul, and two relate to the body. That is how the tetragrammaton, the tetractys in four steps, the Pythagorean decade, is conceived. It is important that we understand what these four letters are. What the Lhas are, this is already a great expression from much more mystical scriptures present in the Himalayan caves. That is why people respectfully salute the book and do not study it! Better worship the book than to read it!

Literally, what is said in the Secret Doctrine is, *“Into the forms projected by the Lha...”* We should first know what Lha is. Lha is lunar gods. The forms are projected by the lunar gods. We all receive our bodies through Moon. The soul comes from the Sun. The two letters descend. The two letters are the soul enveloping the spirit from the spheres of expectation. What are the spheres of expectation? One school is gone, the children are expecting another school. So, the school is opened and the expectant children are entering that school for operation. When Madam Blavatsky makes such sentences, you have to meditate quite a lot.

*“Into the forms projected by the Lha (Pitris) the two letters (the Monad, called also ‘the Double Dragon’) descend from the spheres of expectation. But they are like a roof with no walls, nor pillars to rest upon.”*²

¹ SD, 2:57

² SD, 2:57

To make a habitation on the planet, it needs something to stay on the planet. The two letters are what we call the spiritual aspect of man. This is what you see as "IHVH". There are four letters which are considered very sacred by the Hebrews. They do not even utter them. "I H V H" — these four letters are used in the Vedic scriptures as "NARAYANA". "NA" is the sound of the spirit because it is seeming nothingness. "RA" is its expression as fire — that is the soul aspect. "YA" is the aspect of akasha into which the soul descends as another "NA", Narayana. "Narayana, Narayana", "OM Namo Narayana". These words in English are "IHVH", which is generally rendered as "Jehovah" by the Christian Kabbalists. It is the same four letters used by Pythagoras for his tetractys and tetragrammaton. The ancient school regarded the four letters with the same reverence and significance that the Pythagoreans held their tetractys.

The spheres of expectation

Then, Madam Blavatsky is speaking of the souls that are in expectation. Spheres of expectations signify the intermediate spheres, where the monads are. One globe is complete, another is to come, and in between there is a sphere of expectation, and the monads are this sphere of expectation.

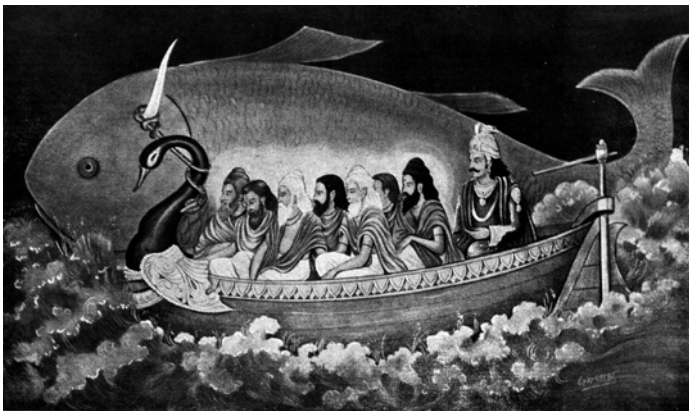
Who are these monads? "Monad" is defined as atma-buddhi. Atma-buddhi means the soul. They are the ones who have not reached nirvana in the earlier chain. It is they who come here. That is the story of Noah's ark and the story of Vaivasvata Manu in the Indian Puranas. The souls are transmigrated from a dissolved globe through pralaya, dissolution, to the new globe. It is they who are given the bodies of shade by the lunar pitris. Until the new planet is ready and the souls are transmigrated, they are in great slumber, in unconscious inactivity. There is no activity for them; it is a kind of suspension. For activity, they need a platform and also a body. There is no body, and there is no planet. So, they are in suspension; they are waiting.

For these waiting souls, the globes are again created. This is what is called as an act of compassion in the divine plan. Is it not an act of compassion if we go with ships or flights to help those who are locked by the waters somewhere and there is no way for them to be released? Here are the unevolved souls who could not complete their evolution on a globe, and in the meanwhile the globe finished its span and it returned into higher

spheres. Those who failed to make it at that time are the ones who need to be given another opportunity. It is they who are brought here and are given a body. The body is given to them from the lunar chain because lunar energies work with the matter, magnetise the matter, enable its evolution, germination, fertilization, and growth — all this is lunar activity.

*“Into the forms projected by the Lha (Pitris) the two letters (the Monad, called also ‘the Double Dragon’) descend from the spheres of expectation. But they are like a roof with no walls, nor pillars to rest upon.”*¹ They stay in the intermediate spheres and are said to slumber in unconscious inactivity between Manvantaras². One Manvantara is over, another Manvantara is to come. Between two Manvantaras there is a time period. In that period, the souls are said to be in slumber, in unconscious inactivity, waiting for the next platform for activity.

That is how Noah is said to have brought beings from another sphere — not from one place to the other on the same land. The ark of Noah is not a wooden boat. The ark of Noah is the Moon. It is the lunar ark, meaning through the assistance of the lunar gods, the beings are brought forth.



The fish avatara of Vishnu saves Vaivasvata Manu during the great deluge³

1 SD, 2:57.jpg

2 A cyclic age in Hindu cosmology

3 Matsya pulls a boat carrying Manu and Saptarishi during Pralaya: (Wikimedia, Published September 16, 2012)
Available at: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_fish_avatara_of_Vishnu_saves_Manu_during_the_great_deluge.jpg

We have a similar story in the Puranas where Vaivasvata Manu also carried beings in a boat. The boat here refers to the Moon. Noah's ark is nothing but the lunar ark, the crescent moon, through which the beings are again transported. That is why when we leave this body at the time of death, we first go to the Moon and later return here according to the quality of the soul.

Madam Blavatsky very generously uses the terms. Without understanding them, we cannot make any sense of what she taught. She uses the Buddhistic terminology, Vedic terminology, Greek terminology, and then sometimes the Mexican and Mayan terminology. That is why you need to have the theosophical dictionary¹, where the words are all explained. Without which, it is not easy to study. To study a page from the Secret Doctrine with some comprehension is a big exercise for the day.

The beings were awaiting the cyclic period when they could descend into the forms prepared by the lunar pitris at the commencement of the fourth round, that is the fourth globe or the D Globe, the globe which is what we see and are on now. The globe itself comes in three regular steps to be what it is now. Into this, they await to come in. Once this is prepared, the beings wait. Now that the globe has formed, the beings are brought and they gain their first envelope according to their soul quality and image. That image is the one with which it associated. That image is like a shade of himself and is called "*chhayarupa*".

The letter

The First Wave is of *chhayarupa* with no colour whatsoever. Until the third letter, when the manas principle, is awakened, the two letters are like a roof with no walls or pillars to rest upon. They are in an envelope, but they cannot relate to that envelope. The envelope is there, and they are there, but there is no relation developed between them. Atma-buddhi is there, body is there, but no manas, no mind, to relate the soul to the body and to relate the body to the soul. It is like a man in the body is separated from the body in his consciousness.

1 G. de Purucker, Encyclopedic Theosophical Glossary, Electronic Version (Pasadena: Theosophical University Press, 1999), E-book.
Available at: http://www.theosociety.org/pasadena/etgloss/encyclopedic-theosophical_glossary.pdf

If you see a mad person, he cannot relate to his body, and he cannot relate to the surroundings. He is there but he cannot relate to anything. The two letters, that of the soul, is there, and the body, the fourth letter, is there, but there is no interrelation yet developed, until the bridging energy is brought in. That is the third letter. The third letter sets in the Third Human Wave where they have the sons of will, the sons of God. That is why the Third Human Wave is the wave of humanity which can work out the equation between the body and the soul.

All the Hierarchies before the formation of the Hierarchy which we know are the ones who are called the sons of yoga. Yoga means union. Those are the ones who united the soul to the body and the body to the soul. They are the ones who are called the mind-born sons of the Creator. Sanat Kumara is one of them. There are five kumaras who are considered to be the sons of mind-born out of the Creator. They relate the form to the soul and they also provide the path for ascension and the path for the descent. Until the Third Human Wave, it is all just staying within envelopes of bodies without relating to the body or to the planet because they are mindless beings. Until the third letter, the mind principle, is awakened the two letters are like a roof with no walls.

*"For the 'Double Dragon' has no hold upon the mere form. It is like the breeze where there is no tree or branch to receive and harbour it."*¹ You cannot feel the breeze without the tree. It is there but you cannot feel it. You may feel a heavy wind but a passing breeze cannot be experienced. However, when you look at the tree and the leaves make subtle movements you see there is a breeze.

The soul is like that in the body. It is like a newly married couple not yet feeling the existence of each other. They are in the same room. They are married. The bride does not know that there is bridegroom in the same room. The bridegroom does not know that there is bride in the same room. They are there together but they do not recognize each other's existence. Where is the experience? Likewise, the double dragon, the soul, is in the form unrelated to the form and the form also cannot relate to the soul. So, they are waiting for the priest to help them! That is the situation. *"It cannot affect the form where there is no agent of transmission (Manas,*

1 SD, 2:57

*"Mind") and the form knows it not."*¹ The form does not know that the soul is within it. The soul does not know that it has form. So, such is the situation.

The mindless beings

For this reason, the First Wave is called the mindless humanity. Likewise, the Second Wave also had no mind. Mind was not awakened even in the Second Wave. The First Wave went through its cycle of time. Its special developmental phase was focused upon bringing into functional activity that of hearing, the first sense. All that could happen for the First Wave was to experience the sound OM. That is why we utter OM in order to reach that state of the soul again.

The first sense that came into functional activity is the sound. At the end of the First Wave, the sense of hearing together with its organ had been perfected. That is all that could happen in the First Wave. The remaining six senses were to be developed in the six following waves. But they are already there in the First Wave in rudimentary stages. Everything is there. The total plan is already there, just like the plan of the total tree is in the seed. But in the first phase, only ability to listen, ability to hear, and the organ to hear sound is developed.

It should be remembered that this primeval wave was non-physical and hence there was no rigidity in the frame since it had no bony structure. That is why it can assume any form at that primeval state. Listening is the basis; the form is very flexible, and it is a very transparent form.

Pudding bags — the White Island

Somewhat jocularly, Madam Blavatsky called this wave pudding bag. Likewise, the condition of the Earth globe was also not the same as it is now. The Earth globe was clay-like, not solidified. The solidification slowly happened; and the Earth was in the same state as the beings. As the planet consolidated, the beings also became consolidated.

The home of the First Wave was called the Imperishable Sacred Land. That is what we today call the White Island. The First Wave lived in that

aspect of the planet which was non-physical. The beings were non-physical, and the planet also was non-physical.

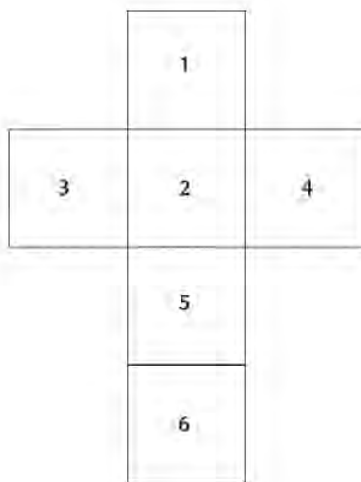
The non-physical aspect of the planet is called the Imperishable Sacred Land. It is called Pushkara in the Puranas. That is what we also call the seventh sphere around the physical Earth. Earth also is in seven layers, just like the human body has seven tissues. Pushkara is the foremost one. It is like the energy of our sahasrara¹, the Sacred Island, the White Island, which is imperishable. From it emerged other lands, meaning other formations. That is the White Island in which all the great beings reside who govern this planet.

1 Crown chakra, head centre



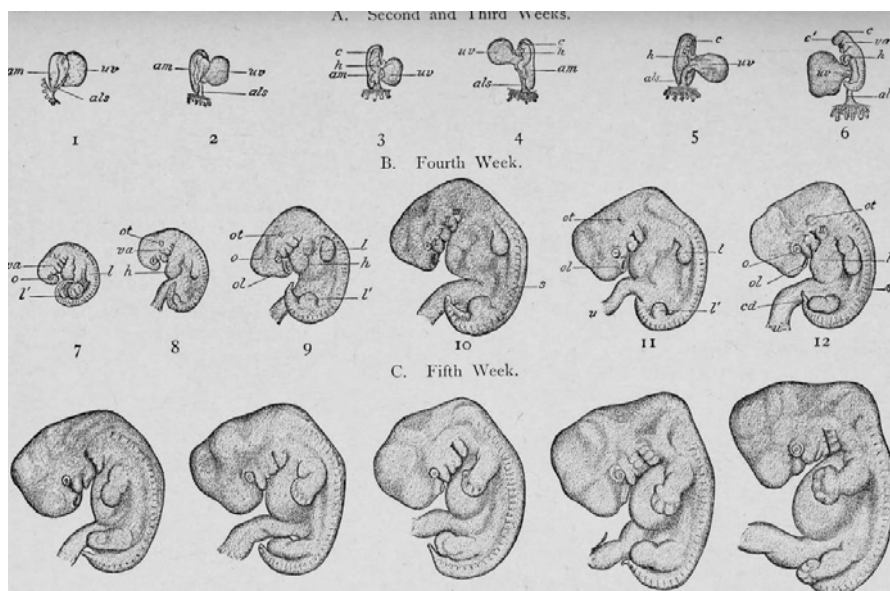
4. Details of the First Human Wave

We are trying to understand how the First Wave of humanity came to be on the planet. The design relating to man comes from the Heavenly Man. This design is provided by the solar gods. That is what is called the shade of the being. There is a Cosmic Man about whom the Secret Doctrine speaks at the very beginning of Anthropogenesis — that a Cosmic Man was prepared by the devas. According to that design, the devas prepare the man. The shade is a copy from the original design of the Cosmic Man. This Cosmic Man is essentially fourfold in his existence.



It is like a cube unfolding into seven squares. When a cube of six sides unfolds, you would have four verticals and three horizontals crossing each other. The unfoldment of a cube would result in the shape of a cross. The six sides unfold in such a manner that it results in a fourfold cross. That is how a cosmic design is conceived, which is explained by the hymn on Cosmic Person called the Purusha. It is the same design that is also given to man by the solar gods. It is in the context as of the great architect of the universe, Visvakarma. He creates the beings in accordance with that design. That design is a shade of the solar god. The substance in relation to

that design is filled in by the lunar pitris. The lunar pitris, the lunar gods, come from the moon chain. Through the moon chain, the substance is filled. Once the substance is filled, the awaiting souls — souls which are in pralaya, meaning the souls which are out of a planet and waiting to enter another planet — are transported and are given the form from the lunar gods. That form was originally etheric. Since it is etheric, it has only the ability to listen because the quality of akasha is the sound. The body is etheric in its highest aspect. Hence, it is said that the human form of the First Wave had only the ability to hear. It is only the ability to hear, but the hearing aspect has not yet come. The ability to hear is different from hearing. Hearing comes only when there is mind. Seeing also comes only when there is mind. All perceptions appear only through the Third Human Wave.



Human embryo development through the first five weeks of pregnancy¹

The First Human Wave beings had the potential for the human form and also had the organs developed in relation to hearing. The First Human

¹ Human embryo development during the first five weeks of pregnancy (Wikimedia: A text book of obstetrics, published 1898) Available at: [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:A_textbook_of_obstetrics_\(1898\)_\(14594028468\).jpg](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:A_textbook_of_obstetrics_(1898)_(14594028468).jpg)

Wave was non-physical, the humanity was mindless, and all that is related to what we are today was potentially there in it. Everything was in its rudimentary state, just like the baby in the womb that has grown to thirty days with the head and the ears formed and with a potential for the spine to develop later.

Meru and Ameru

What is important to know is that the First Wave being was a non-physical, boneless being with the equipment to hear. That is how the whole situation was. They all gathered at that portion of the Earth which is around the North Pole. The North Pole at that time was in the Himalayas around a mountain called Meru. Its counterpart is Ameru. “America” is the name derived from this mount that exists in between the North and South American continents. The name is not derived from a person who travelled with Columbus whose name incidentally happened to be Amerigo. Columbus had an assistant named Amerigo. He travelled with Columbus and preferred to remain in the new lands until Columbus returned.

The worldly belief is that the name America came from the name Amerigo. But, the Secret Doctrine tells us that there were two mountains, Meru and Ameru. Meru is the mount around which the North Pole energies manifested. This was the first ashram on the planet. Then a second ashram was formed by the great sons of wisdom as its counterpart in the West around another mount called Ameru. This mount is in what we today call Peru. That is why there is an abundance of phenomena happening in this area even now. The unidentified flying objects are frequently seen in Peru — so many magical happenings occur there.

Ameru was the second centre formed for wisdom teachings by the Masters of Wisdom.

Meru is the cradle of humanity on this planet. It is considered the Imperishable Land. From its beginning till now that area remains intact. It did not undergo changes through the various inundations that happened on the planet. It is named Sveta-Dwipa in Sanskrit. Sveta means white, dwipa means island. The White Island came to be the cradle of humanity. It is in the seventh sphere of the Earth. Another name relating to it is Pushkara.

Pushkara

The seventh plane energy of the Earth is called Pushkara. This energy visits the planet along with the rotation of Jupiter. It has Jupiterian energy. That is why when Jupiter visits a sun sign, it visits a part of the planet and spiritualizes the ambience in that part of the planet. The ancient seers visualized the visit of the energy of Pushkara with every sun sign in relation to the sacred land of India. Such visualizations can also be thought of in other places. When Jupiter transits Aquarius, the seers say that the energy is present in the river Ganges. When Jupiter is in Aquarius, there is a global event known as Kumbha Mela. It is well publicized now at a global level. Kumbha Mela is where many saints, many sages, many naked people with long hair, even touching the ground from the head, visit the banks of the Ganges. Among them would be people three centuries to fifteen centuries of age. Most of them do not know their age but by the events they narrate you can decipher their age. Such mysterious people come and take bath in the Ganges.

Likewise, when Jupiter visits Leo, Pushkara energies are present in another river in India called Godavari. If similar study is made in relation to other nations, we should be able to find the special energies present everywhere during transits of Jupiter. For example — this is only my projection of a thought emerging from this scheme — when Jupiter transits Virgo, we can say that the energies of Pushkara visit Switzerland, because Switzerland is ruled by Virgo. Likewise, when it is in Sagittarius, we can say that the Pushkara energy would visit Spain. For Germany, it can be in Aries or Gemini because it is ruled by these two signs.

Likewise, every nation has its key sun sign. When Jupiter visits that sun sign of a nation, that nation would receive the energies relating to the White Island. There would be a spiritual upsurge latent in that country according to the state of its Jupiter. A spiritual impulse happens through the transit of Jupiter with respect to every nation once every twelve years. This is to give you an idea of the energy of the White Island, Sveta-Dwipa, or the Imperishable Sacred Land.

The apparent movement of Jupiter around Earth, which is seen from astrology, would have an impact on the related part of the planet and also on the related parts of your body. For example, Jupiter is transiting

Libra today (January 16, 2005), so the energies relating to the solar plexus can be balanced and adjusted.

The seventh tissue of the body is the most spiritual tissue. The seventh plane of the Earth is the most spiritual one. When the energy relating to that plane visits you in a particular centre, that centre can be re-organized because Jupiter essentially enables rearrangement to bring in more magnetism and better electricity and the related effectiveness.

The seventh tissue

The First Wave was essentially of the quality of the seventh tissue. That quality is as per the quality of the substance provided by the lunar gods. The design is provided by the solar gods, and the soul entered into it. It has all the potential for a human form but it is not yet the human form as we see and know it today. Just like a month-old baby has the potential to be the adult form which we are now, but in the womb it is still a bubble — a bubble trying to consolidate and with the orifices related to the ear formed. For this reason, please visit any museum where they preserve babies of one-month old, two-months old, three-months old, four-months old, five, six, and seven-months old. By seven months, the full form takes place. And thereafter it is delivered.

The formation of the being happens in seven months' time; so also the formation of the Seven Waves. We are only the fifth wave now. There can be further modification when we get to the sixth wave, and then to the seventh because there are seven senses that are discussed by the Secret Doctrine. For the Seven Waves, there are seven special perceptions because there is a statement which says that at the end of the First Wave, the sense of hearing together with its organ had been perfected.

Today, we only know five senses and then we speak of the sixth sense. The sixth sense is intuition; the seventh sense is much more than that — the soul expression. We are now expressing five senses. The remaining six senses are to be developed in the six following waves after the First Wave. But they are already present in a rudimentary state. They are with us. Discipleship is a practice that you project into the future and develop all the seven senses. This is an understanding relating to the Imperishable Land and the related senses.

The Imperishable Sacred Land

Madam Blavatsky explains the reason for the name Imperishable Sacred Land. *"The reasons for this name are explained as follows: This 'Sacred Land' — of which more later on — is stated never to have shared the fate of other continents; because it is the only one whose destiny it is to last from the beginning to the end of a Manvantara throughout each Round."*¹

Other continents on the planet had many mutations or changes, but this Sacred Land, the land around Mount Meru, did not go through such changes because it is the essential envelope of the soul and the super soul. This would be the last one to change. All other things can change but this remains. This is the most proximate shell around the soul. There would be further precipitations from the shell. All those things may disappear, but this is what remains. That is why when man dies, he may be leaving all other sheaths, but this sheath remains. It is in that sheath the memory is retained. It is called the akasha sarira. All recordings of the soul are in the akasha.

The Secret Doctrine speaks of lipikas, the intelligences that keep record of the actions of every being. The totality of our actions are well recorded by the lipikas and are preserved in the akashic records. All wisdom is recorded there in the akashic records. That is why the Grand Masters do not worry if their teachings are recorded or not. They are recorded elsewhere. From time to time they will appear according to the need.

Jesus Christ used to draw symbols in sand many times and explain profound wisdom and then would mix up the sand again. The disciples used to say, *"Please wait. We would like to copy them."* Then Jesus used to say, *"You do not have to copy. It is already recorded in the akasha. It will come back to you according to your fitness. Even if you write it in your book it may not be useful to you unless you gain the right fitness."* Many times Jesus used to write symbols in the waters of Sea of Galilee. When he made symbols, the symbols used to appear in the waters. Is that not a miracle? It is the cooperation of the elements. Thereafter, the flow of water would eliminate the symbols. Jesus used to say, *"I may write in the sand, I may write in the water, I may write in the air, anything that I have written and I have said shall remain in the akasha. It will come back according to the*

¹ SD, 2:6

fitness." Such is the beauty of the Grand Masters. That was how the recording was done in the past. We are reaching those levels slowly — from paper now to electronic, from electronic we shall slowly enter the etheric aspect.

The akashic form remains. That is the last form before you become one with eternity, with the Absolute. Until then the identity is retained. Master Djwhal Khul writes about the identity of the soul — that the identity is retained because of the original sheath, which comes from the substance of the Imperishable Sacred Land. That substance remains with you; it is in your brain cells. They are the most delicate ones, like the filament in a light bulb. That is the most sacred tissue relating to the body. The related centre is the sahasrara. It lasts till the end of the Manvantara, and there is continuity for one Manvantara.

*"It is the cradle of the first man and the dwelling of the last divine mortal, chosen as Sishta for the future seed humanity."*¹

The Imperishable Sacred Land is the cradle of the first man. Mount Meru is in the Himalayan range. The scriptures say that the Himalayas are the cradle of the humanity.

Sishta means the one that remained. One who did not go through the deluge. The scriptures say that even if the whole Earth submerges into water, there is a boy who stays afloat in the water on a banyan leaf. Upon a banyan leaf there would be a blue boy always remaining afloat. He is called Shyama Bala. Shyama Bala means blue boy. Shyama means blue, blue of the sky. Bala means a small boy; he remains. The Imperishable Sacred Land is the cradle of the first man and the dwelling of the last divine mortal. That means, he was the mortal who became immortal. He was a man, but he became a deva and remained here. And he is the future seed of humanity.

*"Of this mysterious and sacred land very little can be said, except, perhaps, according to a poetical expression in one of the Commentaries, that the 'pole star has its watchful eye upon it, from the dawn to the close of the twilight of a day of the great breath'."*²

Great breath means the day of Brahma. From dawn to dusk he remains. So, the Sishta continues to be here as long as the Earth is there.

1 SD, 2:6

2 SD, 2:6

The land where he is also remains at all times. He is the seed for this humanity. That is what is called the Seed Manu. This Seed Manu, Vaivasvata, gives the forms, and remains himself as a model.

Sishtas

The word “sishta” holds the clue to what occurs during the rounds. In Sanskrit, the word “sishta” literally means remainder. It speaks of those who remained behind when the seven great waves of effort touched down on the next globe of the chain. That means these are the beings that were brought to Noah’s ark as the original seeds. These original seeds, according to the Eastern scriptures, are the Seven Seers who would be eventually enabling the formation of the seven rays. They should under no circumstances be regarded as those who remained unevolved in the previous chain. There were unevolved in the previous chain. For them the new globe is made. Along with them, seven mortals who reached divinity, who are called the Seven Seers, the Seven Rishis, the Seven Masters — not the Masters as we know here — who are the principles in the creation, continue. They are called sishtas, meaning they eternally remain to bring out the seven rays, the seven ray quality in people, and to develop their related activity. These are the ones who remain in that first land of the planet which is the Sacred Island or the White Island or the Imperishable White Island, etc. They should not be confused with those who were in slumber.

“The intermediate spheres, wherein the Monads, which have not reached Nirvana, are said to slumber in unconscious inactivity between the Manvantaras.”¹

The mortals who did not finish their evolution when one chain is completed, are in between one Manvantara and the other Manvantara. They are in unconscious inactivity. But the seeds which are called sishta should not be confused with those unconscious inactive souls. Therefore, the sishtas are referred to in the citation poetically as divine mortals. Divine mortals mean that they were also mortals originally but they became divine in the past chain, and they continue to help the mortals become divine. That is the greatest sacrifice and service — that they continue to be among the most ignorant and keep helping them and also receiving the

¹ SD, 2:57

injury and insult coming from the ignorant. Is it not a great sacrifice? They have the love of the mother. When we hurt them, they take it as if a child hurt the mother. All the insults and injuries that are done to god-men by humanity we can see how it is seen from their angle. The god-men we know, the Hierarchy, are the mortals that became divine in this chain. All the great names that we know of the Masters, they were all mortals, but they became divine in this chain. Only a mortal who became divine can be an example to a mortal. This is because the divine mortals can better demonstrate to the mortals. That is why Madam Blavatsky had to coin the word “divine mortal”.

The Seven Seers

There are some divine mortals from the beginning of the Earth chain. They are the foremost ones. They are called the Seven Seers. They function through the seven centres of our body. They have their names in Sanskrit. In relation to each centre, there is a seer and his quality. They are the ones who function with respect to the seven rays of the planet. They are the ones who transmit the seven rays of the solar ray. The mortals who eventually became divine and the ones who assumed these offices, these are the sishtas in the Secret Doctrine. They should under no circumstances be regarded as a sort of backwash, but on the contrary as the most highly evolved type of humanity. Therefore, they are referred to poetically as divine mortals forming the future seed of humanity. That is why we are strongly recommended to think of the Seven Seers daily along with the Hierarchy of teachers.

I gave you one invocation about the teachers, where it says “*Gurubhyo namaha*” meaning salutation to my teacher. “*Parama Gurubhyo namaha*” meaning salutations to the teacher of my teacher. Then “*Parameshti Gurubhyo namaha*” meaning salutation to the teacher of the teacher of the teacher. Three generations of teachers are invoked and respected. Then, “*Sapta Rishibhyo namaha*”. Sapta means seven. Seven Rishis, to them we salute. Then, we salute the Pole Star, Dhruva. Then, we salute the mind-born sons of Brahma: Sanaka, Sanandana, and Sanat Kumara.¹

1 Invocation of the Hierarchy of Teachers: https://worldteachertrust.org/en/web/meditation/invocation_of_the_hierarchy_of_teachers

Like that, there is a Hierarchy. In the daily invocation we are strongly recommended to recognise the presence of the Seven Seers in the seven centres within our being, and also feel their existence on the planet in the land around the pole. It is the Sacred Island. This practice would slowly enable us to establish a link with these grand beings of the planet. The seven ashrams are basically their work.

This land is also called Adi-varsha. Adi means again. Adi-varsha: the first, first land, basically meaning the primordial land. In the Puranas, this land is described as Sveta-Dwipa, the White Island, which is the abode of the Second Logos.

*"That which in the Vendidad, for instance, is referred to as Airyanem Vaêgo wherein was born the original Zoroaster, is called in the Puranic literature 'Sveta-Dwipa', 'Mount Meru', the abode of Vishnu, etc., etc.; and in the Secret Doctrine is simply named the land of the 'Gods' under their chiefs the 'Spirits of this Planet'."*¹

Airyanem Vaêgo, which is again a mutation of the word aryama. Aryama is the Second Logos. Madam Blavatsky uses the words from so many theologies and she essentially relies on the Sanskrit terminology. That is where it becomes difficult for our brothers in the West to study the Secret Doctrine. That is why Annie Besant says there is no way for us to enter into the Secret Doctrine unless we also know Sanskrit. Annie Besant learned Sanskrit. There is such reservoir of knowledge in that language. A very small portion of it has come into English and into other languages. That is where English is becoming a means of servicing the wisdom. If it comes into English, then it enters into other languages today on the planet. That is how it seems to be.

Periodical changes

During the middle period of the First Wave there is a preparation for the land for the Second Wave. It commences to be prepared. They start preparing halfway through, just like even by December we are thinking of where to do the next year's May Call. Preparation for the Second Wave is marked as a convulsion on Earth's surface. The process of preparation goes on steadily, covering many ages, so as to be in readiness when the

time arrives for a new wave to take over. It is for this reason our globe is subject to seven periodical entire changes, which go concurrently with the waves. When there is a new wave, there is an entire new globe. After the First Wave, there was an entire change. After the Second Wave, there was an entire change. After the Third Wave, there was an entire change. After the Fourth Wave, there was an entire change. There have been four entire changes before what we see today as our globe, which itself is known to be like this for many ages. What is our count of years? We only count from 2,000 years. That is where the wisdom expands our limited understanding, of time. Our globe is subject to seven periodical entire changes which go concurrently with the waves.

*"Which means again, that our globe is subject to seven periodical entire changes which go pari passu with the races. For the Secret Doctrine teaches that, during this Round, there must be seven terrestrial pralayas, three occasioned by the change in the inclination of the Earth's axis. It is a law which acts at its appointed time, and not all blindly, as science may think, but in strict accordance and harmony with Karmic law."*¹

Pralaya means dissolution. Three of them would happen due to the change in the inclination of Earth's axis. What remains and what does not remain is as per karmic law. One thing can be said from this law is that what is good for the whole is preserved, and what is an impediment for progress is not preserved. Progressive seeds are preserved, impediments to progresses are eliminated. That is the nature's way of doing things.

The Great Adjuster

*"In Occultism, this inexorable law is referred as 'the Great Adjuster'."*² It is a master adjustment, masterly adjustment. Master CVV also gave a prayer. From time to time, we keep saying "*Master adjustments, Masterly adjustments*" during the Dhanishta prayers. There are so many things that need to be adjusted in us to make our personality able to tune up to the soul. What is useful to the soul should be retained in the personality, and what is an impediment to the soul should be eliminated. Likewise, certain waves will find their extinction; certain civilizations also find

1 SD, 2:329

2 SD, 2:329

their extinction since they are not fit to continue. They will come back in a new form. The souls do not go anywhere, the forms will disappear. That is the beauty. That is the essential, primary teaching of the Bhagavad Gita where Sri Krishna says, the soul is eternal, but the forms change. It is better that they obtain better forms because in the present form and in the present personality, they are suffocating and they are causing suffocation to others. A man who suffocates inside also transmits that suffocation to the outside. What you are inside is what you transmit outside. So, better eliminate such things and give a fresh opportunity.

We know about Sodom and Gomorrah. What happened to them? By virtue of their own excessive doings, to the point of horrible indulgence, they had to be eliminated. What has happened to Egypt? Civilizations come and go when their purpose is completed because the souls want to take the next step. The old structures are an impediment for a newly formed one. All that is old is not beautiful. If someone says India is a holy land, you may not find it when you come. You find the contrary. The holy of the holies is somewhere in this land which is hidden but you cannot take everything that you see as holy. What is not holy through time gets eliminated. Time is the greatest adjuster. In Bhagavad Gita Sri Krishna says “kaalaha kalayata maham” — through time I adjust, I mix up the whole thing and sort what is good. This law is referred to as the great adjuster.

“Thus, since Vaivasvata Manu’s Humanity appeared on this Earth, there have already been four such axial disturbances; when the old continents — save the first one — were sucked in by the oceans, other lands appeared, and huge mountain chains arose where there had been none before. The face of the Globe was completely changed each time; the survival of the fittest nations and races was secured through timely help; and the unfit ones — the failures — were disposed of by being swept off the earth. Such sorting and shifting out does not happen between a sunset and sunrise, as one may think, but requires several thousands of years before the new house is set in order.”¹

We are the Fifth Wave, the Aryans. There must be four changes before us. There have already been four such axial disturbances when the old continents except the first one were sucked in by the oceans. Just like we suck through the straw, continents were sucked. What kind of straw it

could be! It is a principle of Fohat. It can suck and give back. That is the nature, that is the law. That is how there is preservation by nature through the law of the survival of the fittest. The fit ones remain, the unfit ones enter a pralaya, a sleep, later, they come back afresh. The fittest one does not need to be mutated further, just like the Seven Seers. So, some persons remain. Also some places remain for a while on the basis of fitness.

The minor waves are subject to a cleansing processes through minor pralayas. There are major pralayas that happen when a new wave emerges, and when the minor waves happen some minor pralayas will happen. Madam Blavatsky is speaking about the events that happened in between one wave and the other wave.



5. The Second Human Wave

Transition of waves

Just like the Imperishable Sacred Land, the wave also was never swept away nor did it perish during the great changes which occurred on Earth's surface in making the new continent for the Second Wave. A new continent was made for the Second Wave, meaning the Earth solidified further and there was greater land available. The First Wave continued into the Second Wave. It remained unaffected through all the convulsions the primeval wave went through with necessary cyclic rings during its allotted time period, occupying some millions of years. There was little difference between the Second Wave and the First Wave; the First Wave simply became the Second Wave. There is no change of monads. All that was part of the First Wave became the Second Wave — the beings continued as such. The First Wave thus merged into the Second Wave and became one with it.

When the wave became old, the old waters mixed with the fresh waters. The comparison of merging the two waves with the meeting of two currents of waters in a river is an excellent example. The First Wave mixed into the Second Wave just like two streams of water mixed into one and then it started flowing, meaning more monads, more souls joined and the First continued with the Second. This is a process that happens in every case with the new and the old waves — meaning when the Second Wave becomes the Third Wave, and in the Second there is the First and the Second. The Second Wave would merge into further monads that appear during the Third Wave. This is how ultimately you would have seniors within humanity. Some waves are a little more senior than the others. The First Wave is senior to the Second Wave and yet it is one wave; and the Second, which is already a mix, further mixes into another stream. So, within the human community there are some seniors and some juniors. That is how the stream ultimately contains the Seven Waves. This is a process that happens in every case with the new and the old waves.

Each new wave does not suddenly come into being when the old wave has run its course. Just as a new continent commences to be formed during

the middle period of a human wave, so also the seeds of a new wave commence to be sown during the middle era of a previous wave. When the First Wave is halfway through running its course, the Second Wave begins. By the conclusion of the Second Wave, the Third Wave begins to join the Second Wave. When one wave is halfway through its course, a plan is made for the next wave to enter. The two continue until the Second Wave reaches its middle period. Then, already the Third Wave will begin to have its subtle beginnings. By the time the Second concludes, the Third is ready for its appearance. This is how the plan opens halfway through for the next program.

Likewise, the continents also come up in that manner. Halfway through the First Wave tenure, the continent for the Second Wave emerges, and by the time the First Wave tenure is complete, the Second Wave people will occupy the second continent. This is how you have the Hyperborean and other islands appearing. Sacred Land, Hyperborean, Lemuria, all these continents are subsequent formations through solidification where habitation occurs concurrently.

Unnoticed at first, slight differences appear. There would be slight differences in the beginning which cannot be noticed. Everything in nature happens in such a manner that the changes are not very noticeable. Very gradually, more individuals are born with modifications. In the course of time, a greater number of persons display these characteristics. As the ages pass, these new types become standardized and greater numbers of individuals appear bearing the new strain. In due time, greater momentum is gained and the new type shows as much strength as the older wave. This is how a new wave begins along with the old wave, growing in numbers, growing as much, and even more than the old wave. The First Wave and the Second Wave are together but slowly the distinction is seen, though not in the beginning. Such things happen even with respect to minor waves. Each wave has seven minor waves. Before we can understand all the details of the Waves, the theme of how the Seven Waves appear on a planet in a Manvantara has to be understood first.

The emergence of new waves

While the old wave merges with the new wave, there is a distinct emergence of a new wave also. This principle has to be understood. It is a natu-

ral process. You take any nation like Belgium or Switzerland where there is a blend of some nations. Belgium originally is from three other nations forming into a nation. Switzerland also happened in a similar manner. But a Belgian today has an identity. If you ask, "Are you French?", he says "No." If you ask, "Are you Flemish?", he says "No." Likewise the Swiss; they do not say that they are Italian, or French, or German. It is a new thing that emerges through the admixture. They are not the same. A French speaking Belgian is not French. Likewise, a German speaking Swiss is not German, or a French speaking Swiss is not French. A new identity emerges.

In the course of time a greater number of persons display new characteristics. As the ages pass, these new types become standardized. Greater numbers of individuals appear during the new strain, although still in the minority. In due time, greater momentum is gained and the new types show as much strength as the old wave, running parallel with its predecessor. Eventually, the new wave forges ahead, meaning slowly it surpasses the previous wave in its numbers. It becomes predominant and at last takes over the ascendancy, and the new wave becomes the pattern over the whole globe. That is how the Aryan Wave has become the pattern over the whole globe today. It began in a very slow manner, but the Aryan Wave with its minor waves is the dominant wave on the planet today. Irrespective of the origins of groups in different parts of the world, wherever they are born, they are Aryans. This is how slowly a wave occupies the whole globe existing at that time.

The Stanza of Dzyan in relation to this concept of the old merging in the new and forging ahead runs like this: *"When its drops became turbid, they vanished and disappeared into the new stream, in the hot stream of life. The outer of the first became the inner of the second."*¹

The new wave is vibrant with life, hot, aggressive, and active, just like the new youth compared to the parents, the older generation. The older generation becomes turbid, slowed down, quiet, and not aggressive. They would like a peaceful atmosphere. Old people would not like to get into the hub of human activity because they have seen that part in their life, and they now have other preferences. They get mixed with the new wave which is a hot stream of life.

1 SD, 2:18

*"The outer of the first became the inner of the second."*¹ That means that the psyche is hidden inside but outside they have another outfit. The older wave's psyche enters into the new wave. The new wave is vibrant and dynamic but inherently within them, in the seed, the psyche of the old is there — just like the psyche of an old father is in a vibrant active son.

Just for example, though not as an equal to what we are talking about: the people in Asia, especially in South Asia, had enough wars; they do not have the warmongering nature. Now in Europe, there is a strong protest for any kind of war, whatever is the cause, because today Europeans have known the futility of war. The average European does not like war. He would oppose, he would protest, he would walk on the street, and he would not let the government fight the war. But similar is not the situation if you go far West. This is because they are still bubbling with too much energy.

If you take Asia as an old grandfather, Europe as the son who is fifty years old, America can be seen as the youth. The youth has one psychology, middle-aged man who turned into the second half of life has another psychology, the old man has still another psychology. But the grandson receives the psyche of the father, the psyche of the grandfather, and also the psyche of the great grandfather. They are inside of him. As you grow older, the inner side of things surface. The innate man expresses better when there is a greater exposure and related experience. That is the reason why the outer of the First became the inner of the Second, meaning an envelope over an envelope. This is the second ether envelope. The first ether envelope is First Ray around the soul. There is a second ether. The transparent rays with the second ether become the blue rays. They are blue because white in its depth is blue. One is called causal and the other is called etheric. One is white like diamond, and the other is blue.

*"When its drop became turbid, they vanished and disappeared into the new stream, in the hot stream of life. The outer of the first became the inner of the second."*²

When the wave became old, the old waters mixed with the fresh waters. *"This is the mysterious process of transformation and evolution of mankind. The material of the first forms — shadowy, ethereal, and nega-*

1 SD, 2:18

2 SD, 2:18

*tive — was drawn and absorbed into, and thus became the complement of the forms of the Second Race. The Commentary explains this by saying that, as the First Race was simply composed of astral shadows of creative progenitors, having of course neither astral nor physical bodies of their own — the Race never died. Its 'men' melted gradually away, becoming absorbed in the bodies of their own 'sweat-born' progeny, more solid than their own."*¹

The material of the first form complements the second form — it supports from the inside. The First Wave did not die; it continued to the Second Wave. The Second Wave, which is the sweat-born humanity, is less etheric than the astral and ethereal ones. The First Wave was too ethereal, too transparent, like shadows. They later gained a little more ether. Still, from the material we know, it is too spiritual. In comparison with solar angels, they are materialistic, they have denser material. But it does not mean they are dense. From our standpoint, they are still too spiritual. That is how in the second month also, the baby is too soft. It takes seven months for total solidification. Sometimes, somewhere on the way the bones appear. Until the bones appear, there is no strength.

*"The old form vanished and was absorbed by, disappeared in, the new form, more human and physical."*² When we say physical, even akasha is physical. The matter of the sky is physical. That is how physical is — dense matter, subtle matter, subtlest matter. In Sanskrit they use four terms to explain the three ethers: sukshma, sukshmatara, and sukshmatama. From subtlest of matter, it becomes subtler matter, from subtler it becomes subtlest matter, then it takes to its descent.

Antahkarana sarira

*"There was no death in those days of a period more blissful than the Golden Age; but the first, or parent material was used for the formation of the new being, to form the body and even the inner or lower principles or bodies of the progeny."*³ Death comes after the mind appears, because death is an illusion which the mind creates. There is no death to

1 SD, 2:121

2 SD, 2:121

3 SD: 2:121

the ethereal forms. That is why today through yoga we try to strengthen and recognize the etheric form and the causal form which each one of us is though we have forgotten. All of us have been monads, and we also have all these bodies within us. Though we do not function with them and we do not activate them, we do have them. They are the inner side of our being. They can be formed once you enter into the antahkarana sarira (causal body) which is the inner side of your being and the inner side of your form. When you enter into the antahkarana sarira, that is the awareness of the column within your being, and there you can once again activate these forms. The path of yoga is meant for this recognition.

The Wisdom literature today of Master Djwhal Khul through Alice A. Bailey greatly emphasized the building of the antahkarana sarira, which means you turn more inside than engage outside in the objectivity. From objectivity to subjectivity, you enter into and then you contemplate inside the light that you carry and gradually build the body of the antahkarana. You become an active insider than a more active outsider. All contemplations and meditations are for that purpose. When you consciously experience yourself as an insider, then you do not care when the outside falls. If there is a house within the house, and if the outer house collapses, then it means nothing to you. But if you only have the outer house, and the outer house collapses, then you will feel that you would die. All these bodies are envelopes within envelopes. The envelope relating to the First Wave and the envelope relating to the Second Wave do not die because they are still mindless, boneless, and speechless. So, there is no death for them. The material of the First Wave became the parent material for the Second Wave in the formation of the body and became the inner principle of the body.

From unity to diversity

This Stanza says that if you would like to understand the second body of the Second Wave, then you must study it in relation to the first body and the First Wave. Wisdom demands that you start from above downward, never start below upwards, from generals to particulars, from synthesis to analysis, not from analysis to synthesis. If you wish to understand a person, his father, and his father, do not start with him. Start by under-

standing the grandfather because it is the grandfather's energy that percolates down through the father and the son. You cannot analyse the grandfather through the grandson, but you can analyse the grandson through the grandfather. You need to go to the original. If you wish to analyse the health of a tree, the best thing is to analyse the seed. The general clues for obtaining wisdom is to go to the root.

Going to the root is called the study in occultism. Occultism means to go deep and see. From analysis it is difficult to come to synthesis. From synthesis it is easier to get to analysis. From circumference to reach the centre is difficult. From circumference to circumference there can be so many ways without touching the centre. But whichever way you go from the centre, you reach the circumference. That is how the seers of wisdom always direct us to start with the centre and then to the circumference, to stand in synthesis and then get into analysis, to stand in generality and then get into specialty. From the larger to the smaller, from macrocosm to microcosm.

The physicians of the olden times were more generalists and less specialists. They knew the overall functioning of the body. Today, there is such an excessive specialization that each specialist only knows that part of the body which he specializes in and he does not know the consequences of his treating that part in relation to the other parts. He does his job but another part of the body becomes damaged because the body is all one composite unit. The human constitution is all one composite unit. That is why excessive specializations do not do anything, even in wisdom. In wisdom also, first you should try to daily link up to the One God. The One in all is called the God in form. The Sanskrit name for it is Iswara, and the English name is Master. The central point of consciousness in all forms is One. When you start from the point of oneness then you can get into the detail easily. From unity to diversity. From diversity, you cannot reach unity.

If you wish to understand the second, you study it in relation to the first. You should first study its relation to the primary. That is the reason why when we start the studies on the waves of humanity, we cannot start with us and then go back. It is better we start with them and come to us. Then we know much more about ourselves. Hence, the reason for dwelling on the theme of the primary wave.

Amanasa, chhaya, bhuta

Three characteristics are stated about the First and the Second Wave: amanasa, meaning without manas (no mind), meaning it is a wave being; chhaya, in the sense it is a reflective system — it enables the soul to reflect into the first envelope and also into the second envelope; bhuta, which means it still does not have a fixed form. Bhutas are those who do not have a fixed form — it keeps changing. When you are in these bodies and in this awareness, you can change your form. That is how people put on different forms for different purposes at different times. All yogis can do it. They can appear as a human, they can appear as a white dragon, they can appear as an eagle, they can appear as a white cobra. That facility is because of this bhuta body which exists in us. Bhuta was the only body that was there at the beginning. They - the First and Second Waves and yogis - can change their form at will.

In the Puranas and in mythologies, you find heroes changing their forms at will. Today, it looks like fiction but that was the order of the day at that time. Hanuman, the monkey god - that monkey form is not his fixed form. He appears differently to different people. In Ramayana, when he first appears to Rama, he appears in the form a brilliant Vedic scholar, just as we believe Paracelsus is in the eagle form. There are certain forms which the great adepts would like to take to assume for greater facility, but they are not bound by those forms. They can change them — the form can grow big, it can grow very small, it can grow vertically or horizontally, and it can also contract, it can fly. There are so many facilities because it is all etheric. It has access up to the sky. That is how these forms are.

The other name for the bhuta characteristic is kama rupa. You discover these words when studying the Secret Doctrine. Kama means desire, rupa means form. Kama rupa means desire form. Whatever form you desire, you can become that form. What a facility! These are the characteristics of the First and Second Wave forms. The First mixed into the Second, and the Second also has these characteristics. That is why it is called the shadow — shadow in the sense that you can see through a shadow. And it can change this form at will. They neither had a fixed form nor mind.

First Wave and Second Wave

Along with the idea of merging of the First and Second Waves, it should also be borne in mind that the monads utilising the vehicles of the primary wave in order to obtain evolutionary experiences, are the same monads that used the rupas (forms) of the Second Wave in order to obtain further degrees of racial development. Though the First is mixed into the Second and First's material is used by the Second, the First is more experienced. The First existed long before the Second, so it carries more experience, and it has greater access to the soul because it is the first envelope.

Those who live in the First Wave have greater experience, have greater access to the soul quality, and they also have the facility of the second envelope. The Second do not have the awareness equal to that of the First. The higher getting into the lower would have the higher aspect and also the next inferior aspect. Though the inferior gets the substance from the superior, it is not equal to the First in its subtlety, in its experience, and in its degree of light. Thus, the individuals of the Second Wave differ from those of the First Wave.

The analogy of a school room is applicable here. The pupils that entered the school to study in the first grade after completing their work are the same pupils that comprise the second grade in the next academic year. But they are also in the same school as the pupils that later enter into the first grade. Both are in the same school but their experience is different. That is how we have to understand. While there is a transition from the First Wave into the Second Wave and the Second Wave is almost like the First Wave — both are ethereal — but the First Wave is much more ethereal and shining than the Second. Both are wave. Both have the facility for flexible forms. The light shines forth through both of them. This is how they are.

By the time the Second Wave accomplished its seven minor developmental changes, the Second Wave would have completed its seven steps for manifestation. When it comes to the seventh step of the Second Wave, if you compare the beings of that state with the First Wave, you can feel the difference between them, though the difference is gradual.

Sexless and asexual

The two waves are still non-sexual but the First is called sexless, and the Second is called asexual. While the terms are practically synonymous, there is a slight difference between the two. There is no word like “asexual” but to express it some words must be used. Both are non-sexual but one is sexless and one is asexual.

Sexless means devoid of sex. Asexual signifies having no distinct sex, also meaning without sexual agency, as by cell division or fissure. The asexual process of reproduction is through the process of budding. The Second Wave came through budding because it is sweat-born. The First Wave came through reflection. The process of fissure was especially applicable to the First Wave, and that of budding was associated with the Second Wave.

The First Wave is reflective, and the Second Wave is budding. The first month of the conception of the baby is through a process of reflection of the father into the mother. The desire gets over there. That is why there is a saying in Sanskrit, “*atmavyi putra namasi*”, meaning father only comes back as son, meaning self only emerges as the son. It is a reflective process. A Son of God is one in whom the God is reflected in its totality. It is a reflective process. It is not that which we can attain. You have to be impregnated by the divine. The First one is through such kind of reflective process, while the Second one is a budding from the First to the Second.

I think the whole thing is understandable and common sense ultimately, when we look at the terminology.



6. The Second Human Wave — Multiplication Through Division

The process of cell division

We have been considering the characteristics of the Second Wave wherein the First Wave merges into the Second Wave. This merging is explained very thoroughly by Madam Blavatsky in the Secret Doctrine. She draws analogies through amoebae and then the cell division process. The students of botany and zoology would understand it better but nevertheless we shall narrate the process as is given.

Let us consider the amoeba for a moment since the hint is given that the First Wave reproduced the Second Wave in a manner analogous to the amoeba, except that it is on a more ethereal level, and on a larger scale, and is much more impressive than the processes of an amoeba. Amoeba is defined as the lowest animal form. A protozoon unit consists of masses of living matter. The outer layer is usually firmer and stronger than the inner layer. Within the inner layer there is one nucleus or a number of nuclei, in which case there is also a nucleon — that means, it enables through decomposition the formation of many. Nucleus is the singular, and nuclei is the plural.

On attaining its maximum size, the amoeba draws itself out and divides itself into two amoebae, each of which contains half of the mother nucleus. Or by means of another mode, two amoebae fuse together forming into one amoeba. One can become many, and many can become one. This process is seen in the lowest living matter consisting of units of masses. This can be seen with the help of the science of zoology or botany. In the same manner, the fusion of the First Human Wave with the Second Human Wave happens, and also the process of multiplication.


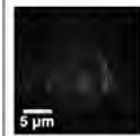

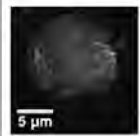

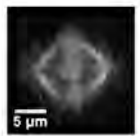

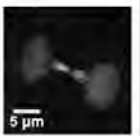

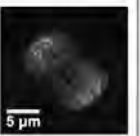

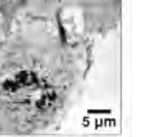
Also suggested for consideration is the process of cell division. This study has been carried on with great enthusiasm by biologists to such an extent as to formulate a science in itself. This process of cell division is known as cytology. Cytologists accept that all living beings have the same unit of structure which is the cell. The cell in any living matter has the

same substance called protoplasm. The division of the cells has been carefully delineated. This process whereby new cells come into being is termed mitosis.

Here in brief is a summary of the process. The process is explained. Near the centre of every cell — not in the centre but near the centre — there is the nucleus which contains the chromosomes and the nucleoli as well as nucleoplasm, which is the nuclear sap.

When the actual process of cell division commences, the outer membrane covering the nucleus disappears. When it disappears, a mitotic spindle will form between the centrioles. Spindle is the one with which you spin the thread. In fact, South and North Poles are called the spindle around which the Earth gathers the matter when it goes around the Sun. It is a process of induction of the sunray. When the spindle moves, everything gathers around it. When the outer membrane of the nucleus disappears, a spindle is formed. It is called the mitotic spindle or the spindle responsible for the separation of the cell. It separates the cell in the shape of a system of rays, while at the points of the spindle a star form is formed. Then, the matter takes to the South and North poles. The chromosomes then attach themselves to the rays of the spindle and become shorter and more dense, moving towards the equator of the cell. That is how the matter gathers in a spindle. You can understand this better when you see a spindle. In between the two poles of the spindle, matter gathers in greater mass, just like our equator. The most bulging part of the globe is around the equator; it condenses towards the North Pole and towards the South Pole. This is how cell division first gives rise to a spindle and later to the formation of matter around the equator. Moving towards the equator of the cell as though pulled by the rays, which are termed spindle fibres.

Unless there is a student of the science of biology here, we have to request a biology teacher to demonstrate for us with the help of a video show. Then we can understand better. That is why these sciences are very important. They give the clue to the designs that existed for the formation of the creation. Chemistry, physics, and biology are the most important subjects of study. The other studies like economics and other are ancillary for social living. But knowledge is in the sciences like physics, chemistry, and biology.

Prophase	Prometaphase	Metaphase	Anaphase	Telophase	Cytokinesis
 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chromosomes condense and become visible Spindle fibers emerge from the centrosomes Nuclear envelope breaks down Centrosomes move toward opposite poles 	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chromosomes continue to condense Kinetochores appear at the centromeres Mitotic spindle microtubules attach to kinetochores 	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chromosomes are lined up at the metaphase plate Each sister chromatid is attached to a spindle fiber originating from opposite poles 	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Centromeres split in two Sister chromatids (now called chromosomes) are pulled toward opposite poles Certain spindle fibers begin to elongate the cell 	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chromosomes arrive at opposite poles and begin to decondense Nuclear envelope material surrounds each set of chromosomes The mitotic spindle breaks down Spindle fibers continue to push poles apart 	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Animal cells: a cleavage furrow separates the daughter cells Plant cells: a cell plate, the precursor to a new cell wall, separates the daughter cells 

MITOSIS

Stages of mitosis¹

By the time the chromosomes reach the equatorial position, each chromosome has become duplicated in all its material — it multiplies. The material composing the chromosomes termed genetic are hereditary units. Then, each group of chromosomes gradually moves towards opposite poles so that the complete group of chromosomes are at both poles — i.e., one pole is a perfect replica of the other pole. What is in the North Pole is also in the South Pole. Then nuclear membranes are formed about each group of chromosomes. Shortly after which, one fourth of the cell divides from the other portion of the cell at the centre so that when the separation is completed, two complete cells are present in the place of one original cell. Each cell then proceeds to grow to the approximate size that the cell had before the division commenced. Such is the process whereby two cells are formed from one cell. Then again they divide.

¹ OpenStax (https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:0331_Stages_of_Mitosis_and_Cytokinesis.jpg) <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/legalcode>

The statement that was made in the Secret Doctrine reads like this: *"If, indeed, the cell-theory applies equally to Botany and Zoology, and extends to Morphology, as well as Physiology of organisms, and if the microscopic cells are looked upon by physical science as independent living beings — just as Occultism regards the 'fiery lives' — there is no difficulty in the conception of the primitive process of procreation."*¹

This is how procreation happens in the primitive waves, meaning the original waves. One is sexless and another is asexual, but still they multiply. How do they multiply? It is just like the multiplication of the cell through division, and just like the amoebae merging and dividing. You can find this process in the foremost matter, in the lowest form of living matter. You can find it in the microbes. The same analogy can be taken for the macro. Science has different terminology compared to the terminology in occultism. Occultism calls the intelligences working for all such processes as the *"fiery lives"*. If you wish to study Cosmic Fire², you need to first study about the protoplasm, chromosomes, the related nuclei, nucleons, their formations, their growth, their divisions, and their multiplication. Then you can also understand the cell function because ultimately it is the same cells, be it in a bull or in a man. In all matter, the ultimate division is in the units of cells of living matter.

Fiery lives

The term *"fiery life"* calls attention to one of the most significant passages. According to occult science, life force's manifestation into these smallest units of cells is due to the *"fiery lives"* in English, or in Sanskrit the intelligences of prana have their base in fire.

"The 'fiery lives' are the seventh and highest sub-division of the plane of matter, and correspond in the individual with the One Life of the Universe, though on only that plane. The microbes of the science are the first and the lowest sub-division on the second plane — that of material

1 SD, 2:116-117

2 Alice A. Bailey, A Treatise on Cosmic Fire (New York: Lucis Publishing Company, 1925). Available at: https://www.lucistrust.org/online_books/a_treatise_on_cosmic_fire_obooks

prana (or life)."¹ If you consider the seven planes of matter, the most subtle plane of matter is where the fiery lives are. In the first plane you have fiery lives. In the second plane from above you have the microbes.

*"The physical body of man undergoes a complete change of structure every seven years, and its destruction and preservation are due to the alternate function of the fiery lives as 'destroyers' and 'builders'."*²

This is because of the seven states of matter. Everything evolves. Even in you, the matter evolves. When the matter evolves, there is a change in the physical structure. That is how every seven years there a structural change happening. The one that builds is also the one that kills. Food is nourishing, and food is also poison beyond a point. It is the fiery lives that build. It is the fiery lives that destroy. The beauty of these fiery lives is that they are in such equilibrium that their destruction is equal to their building. There is as much building as there is destruction. In between is the apparent existence. If only building happens all the time, then the matter in the body grows beyond proportions. If there is only destruction of the matter in the body by the fiery lives, then the person becomes emaciated. This is the work of fiery lives within the prana, the life force. They continue to build on one side and destroy on the other side so that the form is intact.

Building and destruction

Ill health is traced to the disequilibrium in relation to the balance of building and destruction. If the destruction is not as active as building then mass grows in the body. When the destruction is more than building, then there is emaciation. That is how the functioning of the life force has this equilibrium by which it holds the body intact. The building happens up to a point. That is how the baby grows. Thereafter, it stabilizes, again up to a point. Thereafter, the destruction is more than the building. According to Ayurveda and also from occult understanding, the building process is more than the destruction process for a period of five cycles of seven years. The body grows up to thirty-five years. In Sanskrit they have two terms: one for the growing body and one for the decaying body. The growing body is

1 SD, 1:262

2 SD, 1:262

called deha, and the decaying body is called sarira. Up to thirty-five years it is deha. After thirty-five years, it starts becoming a sarira. There is a period where it neither decays nor grows. This is how the life force in the body builds the cells of matter in all its seven planes and every seven years there is a change in the quality of the matter relating to the body.

*"They are 'builders' by sacrificing themselves in the form of vitality to restrain the destructive influence of microbes, and, by supplying the microbes with what is necessary, they compel them under that restraint to build up the material body and its cells."*¹

The microbes can destroy. When the life force is strong, then it resists the destruction by the microbes. The fiery lives restrain the destructive influence of microbes by supplying the microbes what is necessary to them. They compel the microbes to build up the material body and its cells. Once the life force is withdrawn, the microbes will decompose the body. The decomposition or composition of the body occurs due to the fire of life present in it. The work of fiery lives is beyond the comprehension of that of the work of the microbes.

I think we need to take classes on cells and on biology. We need to learn a lot of biology. It is helpful because without concurrently gaining the knowledge of science, a theologian will remain theoretical.

When microbes are not supplied with fiery life, and they are not restrained, they will destroy. *"They are 'destroyers' also when that restraint is removed and microbes, unsupplied with vital constructive energy, are left to run riot as destructive agents."*²

The microbes build under compulsion of the fiery life. When this compulsion is removed, they destroy. They destroy when unsupplied with vital constructive energy. When the vitality is not supplied through fiery lives, the microbes will play havoc. It is like an unruly mob within your body. They work in the presence of the king. Just like in a classroom when the teacher is present, the children are in order and they work constructively. Once the teacher is absent, they jump from one chair to the other, from table to chair, and from chair to table like monkeys. Like that, these microbes, with the presence of fiery lives, become builders because there is a compulsion. They are restrained from their natural activity to destroy.

1 SD, 1:262

2 SD, 1:262-263

Once the fiery life withdraws, then the process starts. That is why you need to bring in more and more prana into your system. That is where breathing becomes very important, sunlight becomes very important, and clean ambience becomes very important. Where there is not much fresh breeze, not much light, where there is less vitality, you need to work more to have vitality. Reduction of vitality is the reduction of the activity of fiery life in you. In spite of your best health habits, there is a point after which the body decays. It is a natural process. Nevertheless, we can keep it intact so that you can fulfil your purposes. This is the work of life in you that supports you by giving you a body useful for your purposes. Hence, there is a responsibility to do things which contribute more to life rather than doing things that cause hindrances to the flow of life energy.

*"Thus, during first half of man's life (the first five periods of seven years each), the 'fiery lives' are indirectly engaged in the process of building up man's material body; life is on the ascending scale, and the force is used in construction and increase."*¹

The first half of life does not mean fifty years because no one lives hundred years these days. Even if they live, the last part is really non-functional. Within the brackets Madam Blavatsky says, *"First five periods of seven years each"* — thirty-five years. It is actually thirty-four years, seven months, and odd weeks. This number comes from the Old Testament and is described as Ezekiel's wheel. Ezekiel's wheel is that wheel of time through which you grow. From this standpoint we can study Ezekiel in Old Testament as a time cycle.

During the first thirty-five years, the body continues to be constructed and it grows. Thereafter, it no longer grows. *"After this period is passed, the age of retrogression commences, and, the work of 'fiery lives' exhausting their strength, the work of destruction and decrease also commences."*²

The fiery lives are also called countless lives. They are innumerable. They cannot be seen even with the scientific instruments. We can see them only with occult vision. They are also called invisible lives. That is why life is considered invisible. They are called countless lives and invisible lives. They are the means for manifestation in the physical body of

1 SD, 1:263

2 SD, 1:263

what is termed as One Life. The aggregate of countless, innumerable fiery lives is what is considered as life in a body. It is also called life force. It is the fiery lives that build the human body and maintain it, just in the same way as they build the rocky crust of our Earth. Everything is built by fiery lives. The rocky crust of our Earth is also due to the support of the fiery lives. The full passage to which the proceeding citation was added as a footnote points out that the esoteric philosophy regards the unity of all life as a fundamental tenet, not solely from the standpoint of common structure of the cell, not solely from the similarity of the physical substance composing the bodies, but upon a still more basic factor.

Science recognizes the cell as the primary living matter which is common amongst all that is in life. But then the occult science considers something beyond the cell. What is it that is providing activity in the cell? It is an intelligence in the cell which causes all the activity relating to the cell, and dividing the cell through the process of spindling. That intelligence working in the cell is recognized in occult science as the life force which is beyond our instruments to observe. We try to see these smallest of the small unit formations and their functioning with our microscopic instruments, but it goes beyond that. That is what is meant that esoteric philosophy regards the unit of life as a fundamental tenant. There is essential unity at the cell level. That is how the science speaks. In the occult sciences, it is not only because of that cell but there is the fiery life which is supporting both, animate and inanimate formations. There are so many formations happening on the Earth. All is life, whether animate or inanimate.

Today, there is a lot of study happening in science to know what life is because that is the next step. How life enters into the human system? How life recedes from the human system? And what exactly is the substance of life? This is already a deep study in which science is currently engaged. Research in the medical field is deeply working on this aspect.

Disciples in the ten seed activities

Please remember that there are disciples in every field. There are disciples in all the ten seed activities. There are disciples in the field of education, there are disciples in the field of health, there are disciples in the

field of politics, economics, social aspects, human resources aspects, science, arts, and language. There are disciples in all these fields. They may not be talking as we talk, but they are in the Work, relating to the Plan.

That is why sometimes you may encounter them in your travel. It happened to me once. A doctor from Japan happened to be my co-traveller once in my flight from Zurich to Bombay. He sat by my side and within ten minutes he said, *"You must be working with occultism."* I said, *"I wish to believe that I am so!"* He smiled and then we engaged in a talk. Till we landed in Bombay, for seven hours, we talked. He is a doctor and he knows so much. He said that he is with a group of doctors all over the world who are trying to investigate what life is. Those are the ones who bring greater benefits to humanity by their works. Anyway, that is a side issue.

Unity of all life

The esoteric philosophy enunciates the theory of unity of all life on the basis of the functioning of the fiery lives, while science also agrees with that theory from the standpoint of the common structure of the cell. Science also agrees with the point of unity of life on the basis of the similarity of physical substance composing the bodies. All bodies have similarity of physical substance. Form is different, but substance is the same.

Power of positive and negative thinking

*"Science teaches us that the living as well as dead organism of both, man and animal are swarming with bacteria of a hundred various kinds; that from without we are threatened with the invasion of microbes with every breath we draw, and from within by the leucomaines, aerobes, anaerobes, and what not."*¹

Swarming in bacteria — we are in it, they are in us. Just like we are in life and life is in us, and just like we are in God and God is in all, we are in bacteria inside and outside. That is why they speak of bacteria all the time. When we breathe in, the microbes enter our bodies.

There is so much concern in the West about pollution. The occult science says that thought pollution is the worst of the pollutions and not to

1 SD, 1:260-261

worry about the other pollutions. If there is pollution in thought, then you have fear of pollution. That fear of pollution will invite the destructive microbes of bacteria to enter into you. Your recognition of pollution will cause more pollution within because you develop a negative pole, a receptive pole, in you. An average villager who does not know about pollution is not so much affected by the pollution compared to the so called educated man who lives so much in the thought of pollution. His thought of pollution pollutes the ambience further. The more you talk about pollution, the more you are bringing in pollution into your environments. It is like talking about evil.

Some theologians speak more of evil than good. So what are they bringing in through their thoughts and speeches? Only that which is undesirable. That is why the Master says, *"The evil is more with those who speak of it and with those who think of it, than actually what it is on the planet."*

The "so called good" always think of evil. What is good with them? In the name of God if you are always thinking about the devil, you only bring the devil in. For 2,000 years the devil has unconsciously been worshipped and not the divine. The more you recognise the devil, the more it comes in through your thought. We bring forth that which is contrary to our good. It is like you wish to get some firewood, so you go to the forest. You climb a tall tree and try to cut a branch while sitting on that branch! You sit on that branch and cut that very branch! That is the kind of humanity we are! This is our intelligence! We always think of the evil and therefore feel that we are divine! Are we not bringing forth the contrary?

That is why the thought of pollution is more polluting than actual pollution. The fear of a snake causes the bite of the snake because you develop a receptive pole in you through your negative thought of fear. But if you do not know that it is a snake that bites, more often it does not. Today, the humanity is walking more and more and more into fear. And they give a nice word for their fear as seeking security. The more you think of security, the underlying idea is fear. Through fear you are only inviting all that which you do not want, because fear is a negative energy. Negativity is receptivity, so you receive what you fear.

That is why science teaches that from without, from every breath we draw in, we are threatened with the invasion of microbes, and from within by leucomaines, aerobes, and anaerobes, and what not. There are

aerobes and anaerobes — let us say it is another quality of microbes that exist inside. We are also threatened. The more threat you see, the more you receive it.

*"But Science never yet went so far as to assert with the occult doctrine that our bodies, as well as those of animals, plants, and stones, are themselves altogether built up of such beings; which, except larger species, no microscope can detect."*¹

The science fears the microbes and the bacteria killing us. What Madam Blavatsky says here is that the science does not yet know that it is the same bacteria and the same microbes which have built all this with the help of life force. What has been the builder is afraid as the destroyer. It is true — it destroys if the life is withdrawn.

What is important for us is to orient more towards building life, not looking into the consequent activity of microbes and bacteria. Today, the civilized man developed this kind of negative thinking in many aspects. In many aspects he is negative and therefore in terms of defense he is very destructive. You think that a snake bites, so you bite it or you kill it. You think a mosquito bites you, so you bite it. So, you are destructive. We are destructive every minute because there is a thought that something is always existing to harm us. Thinking that someone would harm me, I would go and kill him — it is only my surmise, it is only my presumption.

There is a higher standpoint which creates a positive pattern of thinking. A theologian that speaks too much about evil will only bring in evil. A person who is critical about others all the time unconsciously becomes very, very negative. From this standpoint, you can see what the media is today. There is as much good on the planet as there is also the opposite. If only the good events of the planet are transmitted, it would have been a great goodwill work that could have happened through the media. Everywhere, they show and they talk about destruction. They think of the destruction of life in the oceans also. The idea is to save them. There is a negative way of presenting things, and a positive way of presenting things. We would have contributed to the good of the community by a positive outlook more than by a negative outlook. If a glass is half full of water, one way is to say it is half full, another way is to see it as half empty. When there is emptiness in your mind, you see the empty aspect.

When there is fullness in your mind, you see the full aspect. That is how we see holes in everything and in everyone. While full moon can be so beautiful, there are people who only see the patches in the Moon. In a nicely painted wall like this, if there is a small mark, is not the human eye attracted towards the mark in spite of the whole wall here? If I make a small black dot on a white board or on a white paper, what is it that our psyche sees? The entire white paper disappears and only that dot appears. Did you ever analyse what kind of psychology we carry with us? That is why year after year you are brought to India to learn how not to see these things! The Indians go to Benares to learn how not see such things because that is our ancient most city, and the most sacred one, and apparently the dirtiest city we have in India from one standpoint. And from another standpoint, it is the deepest spiritual place in India.

If you are superficial, you see the dirt. The more the light is, the darker the shade is. The darker shade is a veil for the light which is bright. We are supposed to look to the brighter side of things. If the Pacific Ocean has some little ripples, the papers speak about cruel nature. But those who know, see the divine rearrangement. There is a rearrangement in everything. That is why there is a saying, *"All is in divine order."* The blow up of the World Trade Centre is in divine order. The holocaust in Iraq is also in divine order. Nothing happens without divine will. The holocaust in Iraq is also in divine order from a highest standpoint. But when you take to a viewpoint, you indulge into rights and wrongs. Nothing happens without divine will. The so-called evil arises from certain past karma which is not known to us.

When something painful happens to us we always ask why, but when some pleasure happens to us, we do not ask why. In the moments of pleasure, do you ask why should I receive this pleasure? If you do not ask in moments of pleasure, you do not have right to ask *"Why did I get this?"* when you have a pain. They are all based on different laws of nature. Even if you question, it is a cry in the wilderness because there is no one who will answer. It is a cry in the wilderness and you have to accept what comes to you. Crying is always extra! You can cry as long as you wish to cry, but there is a point after which you will stop crying and start working.

I am just trying to show some dimensions in us which are really self-destructive. A doctor speaks more about bacteria than a normal person. To the doctor, bacteria are destructive. A normal person is blissful about the

existence of bacteria. The occultist is also blissful because he knows that the bacteria do both, building and destroying. What is important for the occultist is the life force. He does not fight with bacteria — he tries to use bacteria to build. You may have seen some movies where some very dangerous criminals are utilized to achieve a special task. Someone is very good in throwing a knife, someone is good with a gun, another is good with arranging bombs, still another has the ability to climb —such people are gathered from prisons and are made to do good acts. We have such movies. You can put these microbes to good use just like using prisoners for acts of goodwill. Utilizing the prisoners for social service action is considered an act of great goodwill. Their effectiveness is given a different direction. That is what an occultist does.

Giving a different direction

The best disciple of Gautama Buddha was the worst robber of his time. His name was Angulimala. He was a killer and he used to chop off heads just like we cut cucumbers! He was given a different direction by Gautama Buddha and then he became one of the greatest disciples. You know that the one who wrote Ramayana was a great seer. But before he was a seer, he was the worst bandit. It was a nightmare to think of him. Just the thought of him in the night children used to get fever. Such a person once stepped into the life of a seer. That seer was Narada, a grand initiate. Narada saw the will in the bandit, and the deep love the bandit had for his family. He utilized these two qualities — love and will — and gave a different direction to the bandit. Consequently, the bandit became the foremost of the seers. According to Indian mythology, Ramayana is the first scripture and the bandit-turned-seer is the first poet. When there is effectiveness in a person, it needs direction. When the will is well directed, it does great good. Such people are much better than the just-good people. There are many people who are just-good. These just-good people are fit for nothing. They cannot help themselves, they cannot help others, but they are good. What kind of goodness is that! Goodness should be associated with effectiveness. Only then you can deliver the goods. So, for a seer, these microbes are a great army for building. But for others who do not see the builder aspect in them, they are destroyers.



Buddha and Angulimala¹

*"But Science never yet went so far as to assert with the occult doctrine that our bodies, as well as those of animals, plants, and stones, are built up of such beings; which, except larger species, no microscopes can detect. Regarding the purely animal and material portion of man, Science is on its way to discoveries that will go far towards corroborating this theory. Chemistry and physiology are the two great magicians of the future, who are destined to open the eyes of mankind to great physical truths. With every day, the identity between the animal and physical man, between the plant and man, and even between the reptile and its nest, the rock, and man — is more and more clearly shown."*² Unless these microbes are of a large size, our microscopes do not detect them. *"Reptile and its nest"*, meaning it is the same substance in both, and the same life is conducted in both by the fiery lives. .

Basic constituents of life

In the future, physiology and chemistry will show that all that exists in its essentiality has its unity in the fiery lives. They are the ones who conduct

¹ The first meeting of Buddha with Angulimala (Wikimedia: Angulimala, published 2009) Available at: <https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Angulimala.jpg>

² SD, 1:261

the building activity as well as the destructive activity. And for both it is the microbes, for both it is the bacteria. We need bacteria to help us, but when we are otherwise, the same bacteria will kill us. Police is a friend, police is also an enemy. Police is a friend to those who follow the law. Police is feared by those who do not follow the law. If by nature I wish to go beyond 120 kilometres per hour, speeding on the road in Europe, I am always on the lookout for the police. When you have the instinct to transgress, police are feared. Otherwise, why should police be feared? In childhood we study in books that the police is your friend. You do not have to fear the policeman. He is supposed to help us and protect us. Why do we fear him? When we transgress, we have to fear. Microbes also are to be feared when life is withdrawn. Why is life withdrawn? Life can be withdrawn on account of two reasons: by your behaviour which is not in tune with nature, and by the law of cycles. Through time, life is given and withdrawn. That is the cyclical law. What is given is taken back, to be given again, to be taken back again, and to be given again — life happens like that, cyclically. That is what we need to understand.

“The physical and chemical constituents of all beings found to be identical, chemical science may well say that there is no difference between the matter which composes the ox and that which forms man. But the Occult doctrine is far more explicit. It says: Not only the chemical compounds are the same, but the same infinitesimal invisible lives compose the atoms of the bodies of the mountain and the daisy, of man and the ant, of the elephant, and of the tree which shelters him from the Sun.”¹

Between the bull and man, the chemical and physical constituents will be found to be the same by science in the future. Whether it is mountain, man, or ant, it is the same fiery lives that built that form.

We are not so much into our surrounding when we are engaged with such subjects. We may have to listen again and again so that we become more linked to the fiery lives — they are not only in the book, they are in us and they are around. To feel their presence is good because through thought the alchemy happens.

¹ The first meeting of Buddha with Angulimala (Wikimedia: Angulimala, published 2009). Tevaprapas (<https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Angulimala.jpg>)



7. Details of the Second Wave

Equilibrium beyond opposites

We are considering the cell life, how life is a unity, and how unity of life is demonstrated in all formations, from mountain to man, man to ant, ant to elephant, and elephant to tree.

*"Each particle — whether you call it organic or inorganic — is a life."*¹ In the ultimate analysis, all is life, and all forms are built up to be destroyed. Wherever there is a build-up, there is destruction. The build-up and the destruction are carried out behind the scenes by the fiery lives. What appears to be inorganic becomes organic, and what appears as organic will become inorganic. From organic to inorganic, and inorganic to organic, the matter keeps changing. This you can see in how from out of the rock the fossils are built up. A rock is also an aggregate of these fiery lives manifesting as the rock. Soul exists in every particle and in aggregates of particles. These varieties of innumerable forms become temporary abodes for the soul. They harbour the soul and then again they expel the soul from the form. The soul enters and exits the form, and keeps on migrating in that manner.

*"Every atom and molecule in the Universe is both life-giving and death-giving to that form, inasmuch as it builds, by aggregation, universes and the ephemeral vehicles ready to receive the transmigrating soul, and as eternally destroys and changes the forms and expels those souls from their temporary abodes."*²

By aggregation they become universes; individually, they remain as atoms and molecules. They also become the ephemeral vehicles ready to receive the migrating soul. The soul is in continuous travel. These are all like the resting places or the inns where one enters and stays for a while, and then leaves. Like this, the soul experiences its travel in the universe *"... and as eternally destroys and changes the forms and expels those souls*

1 SD, 1:261

2 SD, 1:261

from their temporary abodes.”¹ The body invites the soul, and after a time it says farewell. There is invitation as well as farewell. The soul enters into forms and then exits from the form.

*“It creates and kills; it is self-generating and self-destroying; it brings into being, and annihilates, that mystery of the mysteries — the living body of man, animal, or plant, every second in time and space; and it generates equally life and death, beauty and ugliness, good and bad, and even the agreeable and disagreeable, the beneficent and maleficent sensations.”*²

What is self-generating is also self-destroying. If you see the beauty of the ancient wisdom, they speak the opposites together. It is not polarizing on one side or the other. Whenever there is duality, the two together are always considered. Knowledge and ignorance together are considered. Life and death together are considered. Visibility and invisibility together are considered because life is the giver and also the taker. We only know life as a builder, but life also can destroy because it is the same fire. The fire in life builds, and the fire in life can destroy. With fire so many things are done; with fire so many things are burnt. Anything that is life giving can also be life absorbing. This we have to understand. In every aspect in creation, there is always the other aspect without which the creation is not there. If you wish to have light, there is shade already. Can there be light without shade? You can get beyond the duality where you accept duality. That is why the way we see evil is not seen that way by the ones who grow in wisdom. The way we reject, in higher circles there is no such rejection because if you reject one, the other is also rejected. It is not rejection — it is being neutral to find a golden middle point. When there is like, there is already dislike. The whole creation is built on duality. We have to accept the duality and then function within it. When I lift this side up, the other side is already down. There is a point where both are equal. That is how in everything you have to find the equilibrium where you are neither this nor that. That is the beauty of wisdom.

The beauty of wisdom is that you stand in the middle point, and through that midpoint you escape into a higher system. The escape route is always an equilibrium between two seeming opposites. The escape is always through the equilibrium between two extremes of a concept. That is how it

1 SD, 1:261

2 SD, 1:261

has to be. Is it east or is it west? Which is best? A balance of east and west will push you out of east and west, and will put you above both. That is how when the two angles of a triangle are equal, then you rise to the apex of the triangle. Excess of one thing does not help. The devas who are working with light and the diabolic who work with night always fight. The fight continues because through their seeming opposition the creation "is". You cannot take to one side or the other. You have to take to the middle part and move out. That is where you have the Masters of Wisdom, the Hierarchy, who try to neutralize the fundamentalism relating to both. There is fundamentalism in relation to both aspects.

It is only the fundamentalists of the two poles that fight, the others do not fight. When there is capitalistic fundamentalism and dictatorial fundamentalism, let them fight because both are fundamentalists. That is how fights happen. As you come to the centre, there is adjustability, there is acceptability, and there is a neutrality. That neutrality is equidistant to both the extremes. Equator is equidistant to the North Pole and the South Pole, and the energies of the North Pole and the energies of the South Pole agree at the equator. That is how it is to be seen. That the path of yoga is not the path of light or path of darkness, it is the path in-between.

The day and the night meet in the twilight, and in that twilight both agree. In that twilight there is harmony, and there is no conflict. They agree to be together. Conflict is when there is rejection of the one in favour of the other. As much as you learn to reject, so much you are rejected. If the good rejects evil, the evil also rejects the good. The rejection of evil is ignorant. Love, compassion, comprehension, understanding, adjustability, tolerance — these are all the factors that bring us to a neutral ground. Through hate you cannot achieve, but through love you can achieve. An enemy can be won through love but not through hate. He may be defeated but he is no longer on your side. He is not one with you. You need to concede to win. That is the way love demands. Just like any austere or religious practitioner shuns a prostitute, Jesus did not shun the prostitute. He did not shun the drunkards. He did not wish away the ignorant. That is the beauty of the golden middle path where you are equidistant to all. That is where the yoga is — all is acceptable.

Likewise, a life that gives also takes. The giver is also an eventual taker. This is how the whole scheme of things is. It is very well said here

in the Secret Doctrine: *"It creates and kills; it is self-generating and self-destroying."* If you see Vishnu Sahasranama or Lalita Sahasranama, there are so many names which are seeming opposites that are kept together. It is always the seeming opposites that are kept together to make you understand that the divine, the Mother or the Second Logos, is this and that as well because it exists in this and that as well. Life exists in the ignorant one. Life exists in the knowledgeable one. Life withdraws from the ignorant, and life withdraws even from the knowledgeable one, and gives another abode. This understanding is important.

*"It creates and kills; it is self-generating and self-destroying; it brings into being, and annihilates, that mystery of mysteries — the living body of man, animal, or plant, every second in time and space; and it generates equally life and death, beauty and ugliness, good and bad, and even the agreeable and disagreeable, the beneficent and maleficent sensations. It is that mysterious Life, represented collectively by countless myriads of lives, that follows in its own sporadic way, the hitherto incomprehensible law of Atavism; that copies family resemblances as well as those it finds impressed in the aura of the generators of every future human being, a mystery, in short, that will receive fuller attention elsewhere."*¹

The beauty of the life force is that it does both, and it works on both sides. This paragraph which I have been reading since this morning is in the first volume of the Secret Doctrine.

Multiplication through budding

In the period that is being considered now — that is during the era of the Second Human Wave — the procreation of the life wave was carried on by a process similar to that of cell division which gradually modified into the method known as budding. Multiplication through division as given concedes slowly to multiplication through budding. And the process of physicalization had not yet occurred. This humanity is also called boneless, indicating that a rigid physical frame had not yet been developed. This second humanity is described as being composed of most heterogeneous gigantic semi-human monsters — the first attempts of material nature at building human body. The budding and then the divisional process gave

1 SD, 1:261

birth to heterogeneity. Then through the course of time, semi-human monsters were born.

The sense of touch

The Second Wave brought into development the second sense — that of touch. The First Wave brought into development the first sense, the sense of hearing. The Second Wave has developed the sense of touch. Akasha goes with the sense of hearing, and air goes with the sense of touch. The second sense is the sense of touch. The Second Wave has two senses: the first sense of hearing developed by the primary wave, and the second sense of touch developed in the Second Wave. It even had a kind of sound language: some sounds — it is not yet constructed sounds into a language only sounds. The First did not have sound. The Second had some utterances, some sound-making facility described as vowels alone. With vowels alone you cannot really speak. Speech came in the Fourth Human Wave. Until the Fourth Human Wave, there is no speech.

The watchers of the waves

Before commenting on the Third Wave, it may be well to repeat the watchers of the two waves. The First Wave is watched over by the rector. You have this title in the Christian priesthood, the rector. The original name for the rector is meant for Jupiter. Jupiter is called rector; he is the teacher. The First Human Wave is presided over by Jupiter. Jupiter is called Brihaspati in Sanskrit. The Second Human Wave is presided over by Venus.

The Second Wave having been destroyed, the Third Wave came into being. The watching Dhyani¹ of the Third Wave is Venus. The presiding planet for the Third Wave is Venus. The resplendent one in Sanskrit is called Sukra and also as Usanas. That is how general information is given about the Second Wave.

So, we covered the First Wave and the Second Wave. Third Human Wave took a good long time because the androgynous aspect began, the third centre, the formation of dualities, the formation of titans, giants, etc. The Third Human Wave is a long story. The stories are longer from here.

1 Lord, contemplative one, intellectual architect



8. The Third Human Wave

The most important phase in human development

Today, we begin considering the Third Human Wave which is a major development of the human waves. In the third month, the baby in the womb goes through significant changes. The pregnancy is confirmed in the third month. Until then it is not very certain. Likewise, until the Third Human Wave came into being, nothing was firmed up in creation and the monads were adjusting in forms which had the potential to manifest but that potential was not yet manifested. They were a wave, they were speechless, they were sexless, and they were residing in forms which were growing by themselves like amoebae, only different dimensions, gigantic dimensions. But they did not have self-direction because there was no mind.

It is in the Third Human Wave that the major developments happened. It is in the third month in the womb of the mother that the major developments happen to the baby. We need to study what occurs in the womb of the mother and what the growth is for the next seven months. We can corroborate that with the human development that happened through these waves. We need to make a study of correspondences and thereby know with greater clarity how these Human Waves came to be.

Upon entering the third stage of evolution of the human kingdom, the most important phase in the development of humanity was reached. In contrast to the very, very slow evolutionary advancement which took place during the periods of the First and Second Waves, the third part is ushered in by means of a striking cadence. It is like a musical symphony — everything starts in a slow manner and then somewhere on the way it picks up, which is often marked by great contrasts. Slowly as the musician plays, he brings in contrast of sounds. Then only the music is enjoyed. In the drama of development of the Human Wave, the greatest of the changes occurred in the Third Human Wave. The changes are so striking that there is no resemblance whatsoever between the being that opens the third stage and the human that evolved by the close of the third stage.

The form of the being at the beginning at the First Human Wave is totally incomparable to the form that developed by the end of the Third Human Wave. There was rapid evolution of the form during the duration of this Human Wave. That is the reason why this Third Human Wave is considered most important. Incidentally, it is the middle point between the five Human Waves that have happened so far. At the moment we are living through the Fifth Human Wave. And between one and five, number three is midway. The Third Life Wave is important.

While it is true that there is no visible proof concerning the early waves of mankind, it is affirmed that initiates are able to check the statements made in the Stanzas of Dzyan regarding the waves of mankind by pursuing their own means of verification. There are no proofs available for the simple reason that it is all covered over in the vast waters of the Pacific Ocean. There is nothing that can be traced except little islands like Bali, Sumatra, Java, Andaman, Jakarta, Malaysia, and such of those islands which are the remnants of the Third Human Wave.

The throat centre

The Third Human Wave saw the birth of the greatest of beings — like the great bird Garuda, and the great monkey god, Hanuman. It is where there happened the birth of gigantic personalities — both divine and diabolic — because the Third Human Wave relates to the third centre, which is the throat centre and which is related to Gemini where one becomes two. The being according to his past becomes divine or diabolic. Based on the karma that one carries from the past Manvantara, he manifests his qualities. In a given situation two persons behave in two different ways. So, duality appeared in the Third Wave. One becoming two also means the duality of male-female appeared, and left and right.

There is a vertical division of the beings in terms of the qualities and in terms of gender. In the beginning of the wave, the beings were androgynous. By the end of the Third Human Wave the androgynous beings were separated into male and female, resulting in procreation through sex, and the functioning of the mind, some in tune with the law and some contrary to law — all these changes taking place at the throat centre. That is why for discipleship the throat centre is most important. It is

written in the wisdom books that the throat centre is the centre relating to discipleship.

If you look to the teachings of Master Djwhal Khul, many times he mentions that the throat centre is the centre for discipleship. Humanity is ruled by Gemini because humanity lives in duality, and duality relates to the throat centre. There is unity in the head; there is duality at the throat with the left and right energies, with the lateral senses taking place. Unless we know how to use the throat, we cannot enter into discipleship. It has to be kept especially pure because only through purity can we transcend duality and enter into the unity of life and unity of consciousness existing at the brow or ajna centre. "*Suddhi*" means purity, and "*visuddhi*" means visistha suddhi, meaning extraordinarily pure. At the ajna there is unity, and at the throat there is duality. That is why all meditations are directed for unity in the head, not so much in the throat. The Eastern scriptures make specific mention of meditation upon the ajna because it enables us to have unity, overcome mortality, discover eternity of life, eternity of existence, unity of consciousness, and unity of all that is.

Only through throat are things manifested. That is why the Gemini full moon is chosen by the Hierarchy to initiate humanity, who is the throat centre. Humanity can receive from the unity of all that is and then manifest through the throat which is a centre for manifestation.

The Third Human Wave is the Human Wave through which the Plan is manifested. The beings hereafter, needing to evolve can enter into evolution here, but not before. Since a new era for further evolution of beings was inaugurated, during the same time the great initiates also came to Earth to teach humanity the path. The path of initiation, the path of yoga is thus available to those who choose it. Some take a rightist attitude and some a leftist attitude. At the throat centre, there is the merger of ida, pingala, and sushumna¹. An inversion takes place in the flow of energies — the right becomes left, and the left becomes right in terms of the flow of the energies of the ida, pingala, and sushumna. The throat centre is seen as the centre of initiation where the inversions are reversed and the light can be made to manifest.

The secrets of Gemini were spoken of so many times in so many places in so many seminars. In all these eighteen years there was never a time

1 Nadis, energy channels in the subtle body

when I did not speak on the mysteries of Gemini because mostly I was in the West during these eighteen years in the month of Gemini. And every time around Gemini full moon we spoke about the alchemy of Gemini with Mercury as its presiding deity.

Bhagavata and Seven Waves

So much relates to the throat centre, so much relates to the Third Human Wave, and so much relates to the development of the foetus in the womb into a proper form for expression. Among the Indian scriptures the Third Canto of the Bhagavata was substantially dedicated to the development of the child in the womb of the mother in the third month. Once we cover the Seven Waves, I will give you the stories as they are scribed in Bhagavata by Veda Vyasa in relation to the Seven Waves. They are much more poetic, much more absorbing, and much more interesting. I am now only giving the scientific side of the story so that you would form the design in your mind. Then there would be a very artistic presentation of the whole matter contained in the ultimate scripture written by the great seer Veda Vyasa. These are all thoughts that you should correspondingly develop when you think of the Third Human Wave. When you read a scripture, you are reading your story. This you should know. Any scripture you read is an autobiography. Scripture should not be read in the third person. It should be read in the first person. Then one gains better understanding.

The most interesting of all waves

The third stage of evolution of human kingdom is not only of paramount importance but also the most interesting of all the waves of mankind. This is the stage of Sanat Kumara and that level of beings. The epoch brought about the evolution of permanent physical characteristics. The story relating to the Third Human Wave brings about all permanent physical characteristics such as bony structures, as well as the greatest degree of changes in the form of the human being, and the crowning feature — the head is formed — and the awakening of the mental faculties resulting in the climactic period of human evolution. The Third Human Wave is referred to as the most mysterious of all waves developed so far.

The sweat-born, the egg-born and the development of two sexes

The changes that happened during the Third Human Wave period can be divided into three distinct divisions. First, it is the sweat-born which is the evolutionary process brought into development by the Second Wave. The initial beings of the Third Human Wave were all sweat-born. Then, the second division marked the emergence of the two-fold being, meaning the androgynous human being. The left and right energies are united at the higher throat centre, and at the lower throat centre, they are divided. So, it was androgynous in the initial stage. Even in the second period itself, there was also the egg-born which developed the male-female qualities together. Then, in the third stage the development of two sexes, the two-poled being, was affected into a division as two separate beings. This is the state of separation of the sexes resulting in male and female human beings. The first stage is sweat-born. The second stage is egg-born with androgynous energy, male-female energy together. The third stage is male-female separation. Generally speaking, these are three stages in the Third Human Wave.

The Stanza of Dzian says, *"Then the Second evolved the Sweat-born, the Third (race). the sweat grew, its drops grew, and the drops became hard and round, the Sun warmed it; the Moon cooled it and shaped it; the wind fed it until its ripeness. The white swan from the starry vault overshadowed the big drop, the egg of the future race, the Man-swan of the later third. First male-female, then man and woman."*¹

This translation into English is from Senzar, which is the most proximate translation that was afforded to Madam Blavatsky in the presence of Master Koot Hoomi.

The sweat drops in the Second Wave started growing, and they started hardening into something like an egg. The Sun warmed them up. The Moon cooled and shaped them. Then the wind fed them to ripeness. Then a man-swan came out of the egg who was male/female in the beginning, and later separated into male and female.

The man-swan is whom in the Eastern scriptures the seers called Garuda, the great bird. It is a human consciousness in a bird form. The story goes that the egg was hatched. Then it was growing and growing for

five centuries, and it did not open. The person from whom the sweat came and the egg happened, she could not wait. She opened the egg and found that the being was half formed — only up to the hip, no thigh, no legs — only 50 percent was prepared. These are called the thigh-less beings whom we call Anuras. In a place near Barcelona called Nuría, there is a being whose name is Aruna. In the scriptures he is called Anura. This is a bird which was half formed. He told his Mother, *"You are impatient. You broke open the egg. You could not wait, so I could not be formed fully. So, I cannot serve you."* He soars into the solar region, joins the Sun god and becomes Sun's chariot driver. He is the elder brother of the great bird Garuda. That is how the story goes which relates to the man-swan. Anura cautions his mother not to break the second egg, which she also gave birth to, until it opens by itself. It took 1,000 years for that egg to open. And a great being, a man-bird came out of it. It is he whom we call the great bird Garuda. This is how the stories are relating to Third Human Wave beings.



Aruna and the Sun God Surya

Birth of the great seers

Likewise, Hanuman was born out of the sweat of the cosmic First Ray. The sweat was like a golden egg which was taken into by a monkey. Then he was delivered. By birth, he had the ability to grow in any dimension and to change his form. So many mystical things are said about the birth and the growth of Hanuman, the monkey god. Likewise, the stories of kumaras. The stories of all kumaras are mystical, meaning they are not born as we are born. The birth of the great seer Agastya (the cosmic Jupiter) and that of his counterpart Vasishtha are also not from the womb of the mother, but by division of the sweat coming from a celestial nymph.

There are innumerable stories in the Puranas relating to the great beings who are guiding us today. The World Teacher, whom we know as Lord Maitreya today, his Teacher was Parasara. Parasara's Teacher was Sakti. Sakti's Teacher was Vasishtha. Vasishtha is one of the stars of the Seven Seers or the Great Bear. He has his counterpart as the southern star where you have Agastya. These two are but one and should be taken as the contents of the right brain and the left brain.

Vasishtha of the Great Bear is the father related to our solar system. Agastya, the Sirius star, is considered the Teacher to our solar system. The birth of the Father and the Teacher of our solar system happened in the Third Human Wave. Likewise, the birth of many seers happened in the Third Human Wave. Kumaras, who became the path to light, also happened in the Third Human Wave. Mysterious giants of right and left order were also formed during the Third Human Wave.

Such was the beauty of the Third Human Wave where they had huge structures, bony structures, with immeasurable strength. They were divine and diabolic. Some were also relating to the golden middle path. That is how the foundation of Hierarchy also happened along with the manifestation of left and right energies. Yoga was taught even from those times. The purpose of the yoga was to centre oneself, not to be affected by the right and left. If you are too much to the right, you are affected by the left. If you are towards the left, you are affected anyway. To be centred — where there is synthesis of left and right — was the theme which was followed even during those times.

Besides the beings that needed to be evolved through this Manvantara, the great initiates took the opportunity to be born to help the wave that is

being born on this planet. Mind you, these beings are not only born as humans but also as animals, plants, and insects. Until their evolution is complete, all their Teachers preferred to stay on the planet and help the beings.

These Teachers are called the Seven Seers, the Five Kumaras, and many other cosmic intelligences like Garuda and Hanuman. Garuda functions in us as our pulsating principle. Hanuman functions in us as the ascending pulsation. He is called the chief pulsation. Likewise, they all took birth and they are working up to our present times. They are countless. You only have to read the Puranas for the details of all the great beings that were born, besides those who chose the right action, and those who chose the wrong action.

Such is the development that happened in the Third Human Wave, which is explained with one paragraph drawn from the Book of Dzyan. *"The text of the Stanza clearly implies that the human embryo was nourished extra by Cosmic forces, and that the 'Father-Mother' furnished apparently the germ that ripened: in all probability a 'sweat-born egg', to be hatched out, in some mysterious way, disconnected from the 'double' parent. It is comparatively easy to conceive of an oviparous humanity, since even now man is, in one sense, 'egg-born'."*¹

That means in the third month of pregnancy in the womb, there is developmental support coming from cosmic forces. In the beginning it is like an egg. Then slowly the ovum develops within the uterus. It is nourished from within by physical means in contrast to the early Third Wave method which, as stated in the first sentence, was nourished from without. To nourish within is what we have today for the human being.

In the first two to three months, the human being in the womb is also like an egg with ovum being nourished by the energies of the mother. It is nourished from within but in the early Third Human Wave it was nourished from without by the cosmic forces. When the human form was fully developed, the egg was hatched from the outside. That system was incorporated into the human beings though the nourishment started coming from within. That is what is being explained here.

"While the early sub-races of Third Humanity procreated their species by a kind of exudation of moisture or vital fluid, the drops of which coalescing formed an oviform ball — or shall we say egg? — which served as an extrane-

*ous vehicle for the generation therein of a foetus and child, the mode of procreation by the later races changed, in its results at all events."*¹

They were emitting vital fluids and these fluids were forming into eggs. And these eggs were hatched by the Sun, by the Moon, and by the wind. Then the forms came out of the egg.

Later, they were hatched inside with the energies of Sun, Moon, and wind coming through the mother. The egg was the extraneous vehicle, the outer vehicle, through which the being was nourished till it found its own expression from out of the egg. That was the method of procreation, meaning the sweat coming out of great beings are the vital fluids, and then they formed into ovi-forms or eggs. These eggs through time gave birth to the beings.

Mind you, all those beings were not yet in the human form as we are today. They had the flexibility of forms because the ethereal condition was predominantly there. Those who were forming the bony structure were still proximate to etheric condition and hence the related flexibility. According to the Puranas, these eggs originally gave birth to reptiles. That is how there are great serpents. And later gave birth to the birds. The stories are very clearly narrated in the Puranas. Snakes were born first and the birds were born next. This is how the eggs gave birth to different types and eventually gave birth to men.

Evolution of the human form

Mind you, all these beings are called monads. A monad in Sanskrit is called "NARA". "NA RA" means not destroyable. "RA" means destruction. "Nara" means not destroyable, indestructible. The beings are all indestructible ones. In the creational experiment, different forms were conceived for the beings. That is why all are seen as beings. Then evolution of the beings eventually happened, the final being into the human form. The human form is considered to be a complete form. In the human there is the snake. The snake in the human is kundalini. From muladhara to sahasrara, there is the snake. The hood of the snake is the sahasrara. In the human being, there is the great bird as pulsation. Ultimately, all those evolutions that a being went through are incorporated in the human form. We too are like an amoeba — the first month in the womb of the mother is like an amoeba,

like a cell. Then slowly we become an egg. Then we slowly develop a tail and a spinal cord. The formation of the spinal cord happens in the third month, at least the projection of it. That is the beginning of the bony structure around which the rest of the form develops. The head is separated from the rest of the body. That is how there is crowning.

We will have one class where we will explain how the human form evolves in the womb. In that process you find all conceivable forms. Wherefrom the sweat comes today? From the skin pores. The skin pores have the hair that is relatable to the life in the plant kingdom. That is how you can find everything — the lion, the elephant, so many things can be found within the man because the man we see today is an ultimate evolution that happened around the Fourth Human Wave or end of the Third Human Wave.

The difference between the Third and the Fourth is that in the Fourth it was more consolidated and hence more rigid. In the Third it was more flexible. It was flexible and it could be rigid. Today, we are trying to gain flexibility. Flexibility comes when we gain the etheric dimension, which is seen as the sixth sense. The next step is to be in this form and to find that flexibility. Those who are accomplished in yoga or initiation have all gained such flexibility.

Discipleship is a process where you gain through initiations all the seven senses. That is how a Master of Wisdom is. He is fully equipped. Today, we are equipped up to five portions of the seven portions. But we hardly use three portions of the seven portions. We are not yet using the air. We are using the fire through mind. We are using the water through emotion. We are using the material at the physical plane.

Man mostly works with mind, with emotion, with the help of the physical body and physical means. We still have the possibility of functioning with air, further possibility of functioning with the first ether, akasha. They are already in us. We would also have the facility to function with the second ether, where you have the functioning with intuition. And then we would have further possibility of functioning as souls.

Those who choose the discipline of the discipleship or yoga gain these functions now. That means, disciples are completing their evolution ahead of the eventual manifestation of the related Human Wave. Eventually, it will happen to all beings before the conclusion of the Manvantara. And

whatever is left over by that time would go to another continent or even to another planet. That is why in the meanwhile the sons of yoga inform and the inclined ones take to it and work it out.

*"While the early sub-races of the Third Humanity procreated their species by a kind of exudation of moisture of vital fluid, the drops of which coalescing formed an oviform ball — or shall we say egg? — which served as an extraneous vehicle for the generation therein a foetus and child, the mode of procreation by the later races changed, in its results at all events. The little ones of the earlier races were entirely sexless — shapeless even for all one knows; but those of the later races were born androgynous."*¹

A commentary upon this Stanza explains the process that occurred in the early stages. It refers to humans of that early Third Wave period by the name "*sons of passive yoga*". That means, there was the birth of nascent mind but they were still more within the unity of consciousness than in relation to the created planet.

Development of senses

Please remember that these early waves had no activity of eating. It came later. Up to the Second Wave, man was formed only up to the throat centre. They only had the sense of touch and sense of hearing — nothing else — no sense of taste yet. The sense of taste comes much later because taste is the fourth sense. Sight, visibility, is the third sense. Mind was given and hence visibility was given so they could see but there was no eating. They could not relate to eating. The stories relating to eating come later. The major program which we have today, they did not have. It is a great facility if you do not have to eat or drink! A lot of time is available for other things because eating demands cooking. Eating also demands cultivation of all products. As the waves unfolded, eating became a predominant activity. All that we do is for eating! But, in those days, they were living by the prana coming through the air. The Second Human Wave was nourished by air. The First Human Wave was nourished by akasha or ether. The Third Human Wave was nourished by air, fire, and ether all three together. It is good to understand this.

Sons of passive yoga

They were all sons of passive yoga in the early Third Human Wave. That means they did not actively participate. They entered into contemplation. There are many stories in Puranas where a being would be born and he tells his parents, I now go and do my tapas. Tapas means meditation. That seems to be the main work for him. A distinction should be made between the term 'sons of passive yoga' and 'sons of will and yoga'. Slowly came the sons of will, who are also sons of yoga. These are the descendants from the higher circles who came to teach how to use the will in relation to the objective world, how to use the will in relation to the subtle world, and how to use the will for self-experience. The sons of will and yoga represent the loftiest examples of mankind. These are the ones whom in Treatise on Cosmic Fire¹ the Master refers to as agnishwattas.

Agnishwattas and barhishads

There are agnishwattas and barhishads. Barhishads are those whose fire indulges into procreation. They enter family systems, procreate, and provide bodies for the beings, which is also a great ritual. Even today, according to the Vedic understanding of marriage, marriage is a ritual by which a sacred act of proffering bodies to beings is conducted. That was the original purpose of the sex instinct. The sex instinct was given so that the human being could use the fire in him to proffer bodies to the beings, because this human form is the best model. You are giving a grand opportunity to a being to be in this form and to evolve. It is an act of sacrifice, it is an act of goodwill. Later, it became an indulgence into sex. Sex was intended only for procreation, only to proffer human forms to beings, and if you deny this offer, you are denying a great opportunity to a being and you too would be denied in the future. That is the law.

Whatever opportunity you are given, you should ensure that you give similar opportunity to other beings. That is why it is said in the scriptures that "*Nara janmadur labham*", meaning it is not so easy to become a hu-

¹ Alice A. Bailey, A Treatise on Cosmic Fire (New York: Lucis Publishing Company, 1925). Available at: https://www.lucistrust.org/online_books/a_treatise_on_cosmic_fire_obooks

man form. Being human was given to you because of your parents. Be thankful to them for giving you this opportunity, and repay your gratitude to your parents by giving birth, by giving similar opportunity, to other beings. Then only is the debt repaid. That is how it is. There is a saying in the Vedas, "*Prajatantum mavyavat chetsihi*" — do not disconnect the lineage. Use the sex instinct for procreation, not simply for sex. Procreation, making humans, was the original purpose.

Barhishads are those sons of will and yoga who entered into the family system and procreated in order to cooperate with the creation, which required procreation as a means to give human bodies to beings. Agnishwattas are those who have redirected the procreational fire and turning the fire towards ajna. Instead of allowing the energy of fire to descend, to precipitate downwards, they ensure that it returns to the original souls. They provide the upward movement of energies through fire. They are called agnishwattas. Agnishwattas literally means, the ones that have put off the fire of procreation. It is the same energy for both procreation and for the upward movement to the ajna. The Agnishwattas are the ones who formed the Hierarchy. Kumaras are all considered as agnishwattas. They said, "*We do not procreate.*" They did not agree with the patriarchs, the prajapatis. They are considered the rebels. They were all rebels in the scheme of things. The Creator himself did not know why they rebelled. They rebelled for the simple reason that they were to form the path of Hierarchy so that they give that form to the beings. They formed the path, and they permeate the path up to the Absolute. They keep guiding us. These are the sons of will and yoga, which are the loftiest examples of mankind, the most evolved humans of the Third Wave.

More about the sons of passive yoga

There is the further description about the sons of passive yoga. "*The Third Race is sometimes called collectively 'the Sons of Passive Yoga', i.e., it was produced unconsciously by the second Race, which, as it was intellectually inactive, is supposed to have been constantly plunged in a kind of blank or abstract contemplation, as required by the conditions of the Yoga state.*"¹

1 SD, 1:207

Today, it is very difficult for us to contemplate, because we have developed intellect through the Fourth and especially the Fifth Human Wave. We have gained tremendous intellect. Therefore, it is difficult to be contemplative, to remain internally focussed. But it was easy during that time. There was seeing, listening, and sensing the touch of hot and cold. But there was no touch, no taste, and no smell. So relating to the mundane world was not possible. The intellectual capacities also did not unfold. They were incapable of mundane ideation. That means, they did not enter into objectivity. It was all subjective. When it is subjective, it is passive.

What we are now trying to do through yoga is to gain back those earlier states. Having come this far, they are all stored in the memory tank relating to us. As we progressed further into matter, all that we gained in the past we eventually forgot. That is our problem.

I started the winter solstice group life in India in 1988. This is the eighteenth group life (2005). Year after year so many things have been taught. If we are progressive, we will continue to hold what all is taught and take in further teachings. But we cannot as yet, because to hold that kind of memory, you will need a special brain which has to be trained. We are not trained to have this special brain. Not yet. That is why we keep forgetting. Please remember that each one of us has gone through all these racial experiences. They are all in the subconscious. Once the subconscious is opened, you will know and remember your experiences as a reptile, as a bird, as a kind of monstrous being also, and your past lives — all relating to those experiences is revealed to us.

If it were revealed to us today, we would die, because we could not bear it. How did we enter into forgetfulness? The intellect became concretised. So now, through yoga, we are trying to retrieve our treasure of remembering. Where is that treasure? It is within each one of us. The treasure is in the head, but unfortunately most of us live in the stomach.

Today, we are in the Fifth Human Wave. It is the fifth chakra, the solar plexus. From above downward — sahasrara, ajna, visuddhi, anahata, and then manipuraka¹. We are most concerned about our belly, our economics, and our daily food. Even our prayers are focussed on daily food. That is how it is today. There is the yoga path where you can begin to remember the

1 Solar plexus centre

past. If you do remember, you are a grand initiate. When Master Morya was asked what our future is, he smiled and said, "*Your past is your future.*" The sons of will and yoga can also enter into the muladhara¹. We enter the muladhara by displacement. But the sons of will and yoga enter by permeation. That is the difference. To permeate from sahasrara to muladhara is what is called the continuity of flow of consciousness. In our case continuity of consciousness is not yet developed.

That is why we are displaced. Since we are displaced, we lost the faculty which we had before. Can we enter into abstract contemplation today? In the path of descent, there are breaks — you get displaced. To avoid this displacement, continuity of contemplation, of consciousness is recommended. It is because of this displacement, that we also suffer mortality. When continuity of consciousness is established, mortality has no meaning. Then you become divine and immortal, because you are able to hold on to the continuity of consciousness.

*"The 'Sons of Passive Yoga'. They issued from the second Manushyas (human race), and became oviparous. The emanations that came out of their bodies during the seasons of procreation were ovulatory; the small spheroidal nuclei developing into large soft, egg-like vehicle, gradually hardened, when, after a period of gestation, it broke and the young human animal issued from it unaided, as the fowls do in our race."*²

They were all androgynous. They were emitting certain fluids. The fluids were taking to egg shape and they were hardening. And the hardened eggs were nourished by soli-lunar energies. And they were growing through the wind. Consequently, at a certain point they broke open and forms were emerging.

*"This must seem to the reader ludicrously absurd. Nevertheless, it is strictly on lines of evolutionary analogy, which science perceives in the development of the living animal species. First, the moneron-like procreation by self-division (vide Haeckel); then, after a few stages, the oviparous, as in the case of reptiles, which are followed by the birds; then, finally, the mammals with their ovoviviparous modes of producing their young ones."*³

1 Base centre

2 SD, 2:165-166

3 SD, 2:166

The whole process from First Human Wave is always recapitulated. It is a process of procreation by self-division, then oviparous, and then ovoviparous. That is how the Third Human Wave came to be.



9. Forms of Procreation

I consulted the dictionary about the word "*fowl*". It is a kind of bird similar to a hen, and I believe its secretions form into eggs. That is what is referred to here in the Secret Doctrine as "*as the fowls do in our race*" relating to oviparous, the formation of egg. Madam Blavatsky says that there is an example still available among one of the species where the secretions coming from them form eggs and those eggs give birth to similar species. She gives that as an example for oviparous.

In the beginning, the Second Wave, the sweat-born, was budding. Then it slowly started becoming bigger and harder like an egg, which is oviparous, and then in the second stage of the Third Human Wave oviparous had become ovoviviparous, meaning the egg started growing inside the body of the beings just like humans during the first two to three months of conception. It remains in the form of an egg during the first three months. Later, the various body parts become detailed from the third month to the seventh month. The oviparous and ovoviviparous are the two types that emerged from the sweat-born. The ovoviviparous were male-female and slowly they started developing at the end of the Third Human Wave to separately become male or female. This is what is being explained.

*"If the term ovoviviparous is applied to some fish and reptiles, which hatch their eggs within their bodies, why should it not be applied to the female mammalians, including women? The ovule, in which, after impregnation, the development of the foetus takes place, is an egg."*¹

"Now the point most insisted upon at present is that, whatever origin be claimed for man, his evolution took place in this order:

- (1) Sexless, as all the earlier forms are;*
- (2) then, by a natural transition, he became, 'a solitary hermaphrodite', a bi-sexual being; and*
- (3) finally separated and became what he is now."*²

1 SD, 2:166

2 SD, 2:132-133

The story of Adam and Eve is also such separation. It relates to the story of the Third Human Wave where the separation of sexes happened. *"Science teaches us that all primitive forms, though sexless, 'still retained the power of undergoing the process of a-sexual multiplication;' why, then, should man be excluded from that law of Nature?"*¹ Bacteria and all these other things multiply through a process where there is no sex as an act as we understand it.

The purpose of Madam Blavatsky speaking so much in the book about the origin without sex is to impress upon the reader that, for the multiplication of the species, sex came to be the means only for some of the beings but not for all the beings. We try to see with our standards the whole thing. That is why if there is any birth without the act of sex, we think it is all fictional. It is not fiction, it is possible. Such possibilities did exist 5,000 years ago. Now, again we have the science giving us test tube babies where ultimately there is the contribution of the male, but in the primitive human waves even that was not there. In the primitive waves, the indulgence of man or woman was not there when they were a-sexual. *"Bi-sexual reproduction is an evolution, a specialized and perfected form on the scale of matter of the fissiparous act of reproduction."*² We come to fissiparous now. Fission means division. Fusion is synthesis. So, fissiparous reproduction is what we do.

"Moreover, the progressive order of the methods of reproduction, as unveiled by science, is a brilliant confirmation of esoteric Ethnology. It is only necessary to tabulate the data in order to prove our assertion."

I. Fission:

- (a) *As seen in the division of the homogenous speck of protoplasm, known as Moneron or Amoeba, into two.*
- (b) *As seen in the division of the nucleated cell, in which the cell nucleus splits into two sub-nuclei, which either develop within the original cell-wall or burst it, and multiply outside as independent entities. (Cf., the First Root-Race.)*

1 SD, 2:133

2 SD, 2:133

II. Budding:

*A small portion of the parent structure swells out at the surface and finally parts company, growing to the size of original organism; e.g., many vegetables, the sea-anemone, etc. (Cf., the Second Root-Race.)"*¹

From fission to budding, from budding to spores, to hermaphroditism

This budding is like a vegetable budding and coming out of the tree. You may be wondering why all this information when we are speaking of the human being. According to the scriptures, all souls are called humans because eventually they would be humans. The monads went through many varieties of forms before they reached the present form of a human. Man as we know came into being 18 million years ago. It is itself an astounding thing for us. But, before the man came to this form, there were many many previous forms that were developed.

Here the word "man" is referred to as the soul, the monad, which travels from the state of amoeba to that of man. The soul unfolds through more and more sophisticated forms. You will come to that in the next lesson that the man we know appeared 18 million years ago and before that man, the human form was not as it is today.

"III. Spores:

*A single cell thrown off by a parent organism, which develops into multicellular organism reproducing the features of the latter, e.g., bacteria and mosses."*²

So, from budding to spores. The Raumas were brought out like this. From the First Ray the Raumas came out of the romas, the skin pores. They were thrown out and then they multiplied. Madam Blavatsky writes the story of a Prajapati³ called Daksha. That prajapati being very dexterous — Daksha means dexterous — he creates. He makes such a good creation that he feels proud and feels himself to be source of his creation. He denies that

1 SD, 2:166

2 SD: 2:167

3 creator god

there is something superior to him as the super soul. So, to set him to order the Cosmic First Ray, the First Logos, from out of his skin pore, produces a being full of power. His name is Virabhadra. (Don't worry about the names.) He multiplies himself and destroys the work of Daksha.

Such stories exist to explain the beings born out of a single cell thrown out of the parent organism, which develops into multi-cellular organism. The Raumas were brought forth as a special wave for a special purpose, as the work of the ray of will and that of the Mahachohan to bring civilization in this cycle of time. There were civilizations before. They were all lost. So, a special wave appeared from a mysterious place called Romakupas¹. Romakas means born out of skin pores. Such waves do exist in Puranas. Such procreation is also confirmed by science with respect to the cells multiplying into multi forms.

Then the fourth state is hermaphroditism.

"IV. Intermediate Hermaphroditism: -

*Male and female organs inhering in the same individual; e.g., the majority of plants, worms, and snails, etc.; allied to budding. (Cf. Second and early Third Root-Races.)"*¹

Plants are of that category. Worms are of hat category. Snails are of that category even today. They all come out by way of budding.

Then the fifth step is true sexual union.

"V. True sexual union: -

*(Cf. later Third Root-Race.)"*²

Hermaphroditism

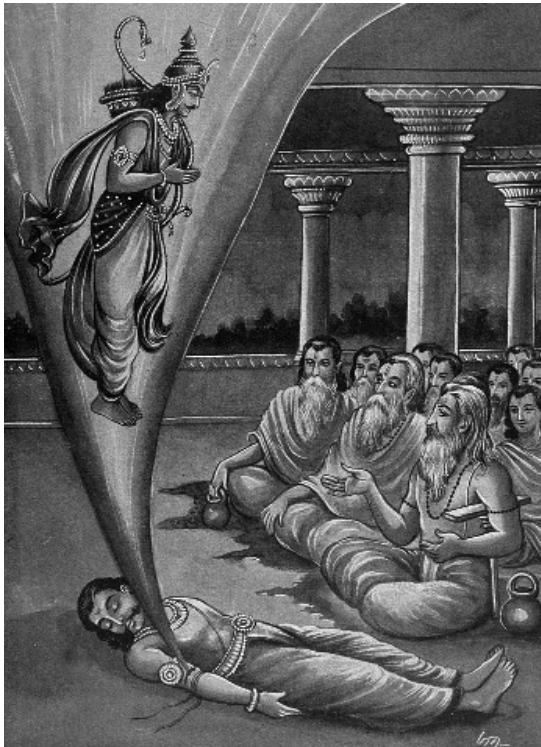
So, there is a sexual union, there is hermaphroditism, beings born out of spores, born out of budding, and born out of fission. This fission is what is called as fissiparous. This budding and spores, they come under the sweat-born and the egg-born. The hermaphroditism is a bisexual process, again through egg-born only. From the same, the two are born.

There is a story in Puranas relating to the emperor Prithu. He was born out of the shoulders of a dead king. That is how the story is. The king died.

¹ SD: 2:167

² SD, 2:167

In between his shoulders, the seers conduct a ritual, and then two beings two-in-one is born. Then they get separated and then they marry each other. Such stories are there. Even this hermaphrodite is a story like that. One is the son of Hermes, the other is Aphrodite. Aphrodite is the nymph relating to a very beautiful lake of waters. This young man, Hermes, bathes daily in the lake. He falls in love with the lake, and the nymph of the lake falls in love with him. That story is a Greek legend. By seeking the permission of the higher circles, the nymph marries Hermes and thus becomes the left part of his body. They join in such union through love that it is two-in-one. That is the basis for hermaphroditism according to the Greek myth. Each theology has its own stories concerning hermaphroditism. In India, Parvathi conducts penance to Shiva, the First Logos, and ultimately joins him as his partner and becomes Shiva's left part, and he remains the right part. That is how we have Ardanari, and then the Greeks have Adonai. There are similar stories existing in all the ancient cultures.



Prithu appears
from Vena's corpse

Hermaphroditism is something that actually does exist. Madam Blavatsky speaks of plants, worms, and snails. The snails give birth to snails through secretions and it is male-female. Such examples are given to show that such things are possible. While the idea of an androgynous state of humanity may be regarded as something to scoff at in our day and age, a little search among the ancient religions that have come down to our day will reveal that the belief was accepted in the olden days. Shall I tell you one secret? Look carefully at the picture of Mary here on the altar. It can be male and female. Just keep looking at it with focus. You cannot decide if it is male or female. When there is such completeness, it looks like this. So, it should be borne in mind that the fragments of the religious beliefs that have survived are the ancient popularized versions — that is to say what was given to the populace principally in story form. The most popular stories coming from the fragments of the past religions which speak of such male-female beings.



Mary

During the times of the Mahabharata there was a being who was born female, and later became male. At sixteen years of age, he became male;

until then it was female. How do you see this person? Is he a male or is he a female? The great warrior Bhishma did not want to fight with that person because he had a vow that he will not fight with a female. But now this person when he is fighting is in a male form, but essentially he was born female. So, Bhishma was in a complex situation. Therefore, he decides not to fight with that person at any cost. With the help of that person, Arjuna wins over Bhishma.

Though it is not a very popular method of formations, sometimes human abnormalities appear. Even now, human babies, male and female, are born with one common head — very difficult for an operation; or a baby with two heads. From the womb of the present day women, abnormalities can happen. They only confirm that such possibilities are there. It is a rarity now, but in the past it was the order of things.

Here is the myth of hermaphrodites. In Caria, Turkey, there once was a spring, whose waters flowed into the beautiful fountain of Salmacis. The fountain was presided over by a nymph as is the case with all bodies of water. All bodies of water are seen as female beings. Even today in India we say Ganges is the mother. All rivers are mothers to us. We treat them as great beings, life giving beings, and they are worshipped. We do not see the water of a river just as water. We feel the water's presence and its flow. All bodies of water are treated as beings. The Nile was also treated like that. In older traditions, all rivers were seen as female beings.

Here, this particular fount was presided over by a nymph. The lovely nymph became enamoured of a handsome youth by the name of Hermaphroditus. He was the son of Hermes (Mercury) and Aphrodite (Venus), goddess of love. The boy was born to Venus and Mercury. Not only did the youth approach the fountain to quench his thirst, but he proceeded to bathe in the cool water. So pleased was he with the refreshing splashing in the fountain that he came there daily for his bath. His presence delighted the nymph and she fell in love with him. So deeply did she fall in love with the youth that she approached, pleaded and entreated the gods to permit her to be joined permanently to him. The problem was that he was mundane and she was super-mundane. She was trying to step down into a lower sphere of awareness, or plane of awareness. So, she had to seek the permission of the gods and to make this great sacrifice. Only love can enable such a sacrifice — that of a higher being stepping down into a lower plane

of awareness. The gods granted her request. So, one day after bathing in the fountain, Hermaphroditus came out of the water as half-man, half-woman. He went into the lake as male, he came out as both male-female. That is how the legend is in the Greek religion.

In ancient Greek art we find the god Zeus was often shown with female breasts. And Aphrodite, goddess of love and beauty, was sometimes represented as bearded. Female having beards, male being breasted — that is how in Greek mythology you find two divine beings.

*"Jupiter has female breasts, Venus is regarded in some of her statues, and Ila, the goddess, is also Su-Dyumna, the god, as Vaivasvata's progeny."*¹
*"See also in the Orphic hymns, sung during the Mysteries; there we find: 'Zeus is a male, Zeus is an immortal maid'."*²

He was a maid as well as a man, meaning male or even female. In ancient Egypt, the god Ammon was depicted as being united with the goddess Neith.

*"The Egyptian Ammon was the goddess Neith, in his other half."*³

In India, some deities are also portrayed as half-man, half-woman. In ancient Persia, Meshia and Meshiane were similarly regarded.

*"Meshia and Meshiane were but a single individual with the old Persians. 'They also taught that man was a product of the tree of life, growing in androgynous pairs, till they were separated at a subsequent modification of the human form'."*⁴

Madam Blavatsky continues to offer so many examples from so many theologies and these examples cannot be just wished away. She wants us to ponder upon such possibilities.



1 SD, 2:135

2 SD, 2:134-135

3 SD, 2:135

4 SD, 2:134

10. The Androgynous State of Humanity

Mythological descriptions of androgynous humanity

We were considering the androgynous humanity and were speaking about how it existed in various countries and in various mythologies. The Persians, *"They also taught that man was a product of the tree of life, growing in androgynous pairs, till they were separated at a subsequent modification of the human form."*¹

Aristophanes repeats the tradition that was held regarding the androgynous state of humanity. *"Aristophanes speaks thus on the subject in Plato's 'Banquet': 'Our nature of old was not the same as it is now. It was androgynous, the form and name partaking of, and being common to both the male and female... Their bodies were round, and the manner of their running circular. They were terrible in force and strength and had prodigious ambition. Hence Zeus divided each of them into two, making them weaker; Apollo, under his direction, closed up the skin'."*² Their bodies were round, and the manner of their running circular — that means they moved around themselves while running.

There is also a story in the Hindu mythology where at the time of birth a male and a female had the same name called Jaratkaru. They were later joined together through marriage. That is why today, if a man has to be powerful he should be joined by a woman, or if a woman has to be powerful she should be joined by a man. Without one the other is weak, because the counterpart exists elsewhere. The system of marriage has come to be to ensure that the male and female stay together. The ritual of marriage also proposes one consciousness functioning through two bodies. That is how the power is divided now. To derive the power again the union of male and female is thus recommended because together they make it complete, together they make it round. Male without female and female without male is incomplete until one has become androgynous, in the sense there is nothing wanting. When there is nothing wanting from

1 SD, 2:134

2 SD, 2:134

the objectivity, then one is complete. When something is wanting from the objectivity, then you are incomplete. That completeness can be achieved through association with the other gender.

Androgynous nature of initiates and avatars

For instance, Jesus Christ was androgynous, in the sense that in him there was completeness. When there is such completeness one is equally attractive to males and females. That is how most of the initiates are attractive to both the genders, because to the males he appears as female, to the females he appears as male, and all are equally attracted. Such was the case with the avatars like Krishna and Rama who are complete. The men as well as women went crazy looking at them. Such was the case with Jesus Christ. He was so complete that people were crazily running after him, because there in Him the missing part in them was found. The beauty of a great initiate is that everyone finds their missing part in the initiate. By being with that great initiate, they are fulfilled. When you find your missing part in someone then you are attracted, because you would like to complete yourself. Males find their missing part in the initiate, and females find their missing part in the initiate. So both, males and females are equally attracted to the initiate. In the androgynous state there is completeness.

All round development

Until such completeness is accomplished, male and female staying together is considered important. Staying together does not always mean sex. There can be a staying together of a brother and a sister. It need not be a sexual relation. They can be companions. A male and female, without having any sexual relation, can be staying together where each receives the supplementing or complementing energy from the other. And each is fulfilled, because what is wanting in one is received from the other and vice versa. That is the reason why to return to that state of completeness and the related strength and power, male and female are recommended to stay together and develop a wholesome energy so that they have that roundness – and the corners are all cleared. That is what Master CVV says, *"All-round development, all round development"* –

meaning in every aspect you have development. He is one Master who strongly advocates the companionship of male and female. It is a means to better accomplishments.

Such was the position in the Third Human Wave when male and female were not yet separated. At one point they had to be separated, because not all of them carried the necessary goodwill. If you have power and strength, but do not have goodwill, this becomes a problem for the creation. So through time they had to be divided into two. Such a narration was there in Aristophanes' literature written in the book called Plato's 'Banquet'.

Even in the Bible there is a reference to the round and circular form of humanity. In Ezekiel's vision we read of four divine beings who had the likeness of a man. They all looked like one, meaning everyone looked the same. Their work was on a wheel with four cardinal points. All the four put together were complete. That is also in the Book of Revelations as the four horsemen with different colours.

*"But Ezekiel plainly describes the four Cosmic Angels: 'I looked, and behold, a whirlwind, a cloud and fire infolding it... also out of the midst thereof came the likeness of four living creatures... they had the likeness of a man. And every one had four faces and four wings... the face of a man, and the face of a lion, the face of an ox, and the face of an eagle...' ('Man' was here substituted for 'Dragon.' Compare the 'Ophite Spirits.')... 'Now as I behold the living creatures behold one wheel upon the Earth with his four faces... as it were a wheel in the middle of a wheel... for the support of the living creature was in the wheel... their appearance was like coals of fire...' etc. (Ezekiel, ch.i.)"*¹

We have similar situation in Ramayana where Rama and his three other brothers — a total of four — were all born out of a secretion emerging from a fire ritual which was taken into by three queens. The whole secretion was distributed to the queens. The first queen got 50% of the potion. The second queen got 50% of the remaining 50%, that is 25%. The third queen got 50% of the remainder, that means 12½%. Then there was some left over. That again was given to another queen. One queen got two portions of it and she gave birth to twins. The other two queens beget one child each. Four children in all called Rama, Lakshmana, Bharata,

and Shatrughna. They all looked alike. They all had the same qualities but the power was distributed between them according to the percentage of the secretion that was taken by each of the queens. That is a story about four brothers who together make a complete unit and the story of Ramayana relates to them.

In the fragments of the Hermetic teachings from ancient Egypt which have come down to our day under the name of the divine Pymander, the animal kingdom double-sexed. *"In Pymander, all the animal kingdom even is double-sexed. Thus in §18, it is said: 'The circuit having been accomplished, the knot was loosened... and all the animals, which were equally androgynous, were united (separated) together with man...' for ... 'the causes had to produce effects on earth'."*¹ Completion of the circuit means complete development.

There is a prayer in Spiritual Psychology² which says, *"All round development, ardent development."* We should first develop an ardent nature. When we are developing that ardent nature, we find in some being the part missing in us. By being in association with that missing part, you would complete yourself.

That is where a teacher is considered a good key to unlock the door, to loosen the knot, because in the teacher each one finds what is missing in him, and the teacher supplies the related energy through their presence. The presence is by mere thought — it need not be through physically being around the teacher. The thought of a teacher who is complete will enable us to receive the related missing energy. This is another solution found in the teacher-student relationship, where there is cordial relationship between the teacher and the student. The teacher is generally cordial. The student has to develop that cordiality towards the teacher and through that cordiality he receives what is required for his fulfilment. That is how contemplation upon the great ones in relation to the missing part would slowly result in fulfilling oneself through the flow of energy from the teacher to the student. A teacher is a perfected being and he is a representation of THAT and THAT is full. Teacher is full, THIS is full — *"purna madah purna midam."* From out of the teacher's fullness,

1 SD, 2:96

2 Ekkirala Krishnamacharya, Spiritual Psychology (Visakhapatnam, India: Kulapathi Book Trust, 2001)

fullness comes to us so that we are also fulfilled. That is where the Hierarchy becomes important as a solution for human fulfilment.

Fulfilment through a Master

Mind you, a teacher not only fulfils the soul's purposes but also personality's purposes as well, because initially the personality cannot turn towards the soul aspect until some part of the personality is also fulfilled. When a personality is moderately fulfilled, then the student can look to soul fulfilment. If the personality is in trouble, fulfilment cannot happen. A teacher fulfils in all the three worlds. One need not enter into the adventure of finding his spiritual companion. There is a great hunt in the West for spiritual wives and for spiritual husbands! And many times, they land with wrong partners.

The best way to fulfilment is to link up to a Master of the Hierarchy and according to the needs of the student they are guided to the right persons, right places, and are placed in right situations. This is a process of magnetisation by which the teacher, the magnet, transforms the student, the iron piece. The qualities of the magnet are absorbed by the iron piece. An ardent thought about the teacher — that is all. A cordiality is developed between the student and the teacher. Then the student has to work in patience. Slowly, the students are fulfilled. It is a promise of the Hierarchy, right from ancient most times. The Master is the master key for all aspects of fulfilment.

There is one Spiritual Psychology meditation "*Lock and key adjustments*." We have many locks in us. We are locked up in our psyche vis-à-vis so many things. They are so many inhibitions, so many prejudices, and so many fixations. They are locked. They do not let the energy flow. Those locks can be unlocked with one key called the Master key, and consequently the energy is free to flow.

Androgynous nature

All animals which were equally androgynous were united together with man. That was how we had man-animal. Centaur is a man-animal, sphinx is a man-animal — the rear portion is animal, and the front portion is hu-

man. Then we have the mermaid where the anterior is human, and the posterior is fish. Likewise, it is written in the books of Hermes. Hermes speaks in the book *Divine Pymander* that animals were androgynous. There was also this androgynous nature vis-à-vis animal and man. We have to think about all these formations.

Even today, there is some principle of the androgynous aspect in all of us. Every male carries in him the female, and every female carries the male within her. There is a part of male in the female, and a part of female in the male. Male is strong outside and weak inside. Women are strong inside, and soft outside. That is why it is all a make-believe world. People who have soft appearances need not be soft in nature. People who have hard appearances need not be hard in nature. There is a part of femininity in masculinity and vice versa. However, the male and female aspects are not balanced either in a male or in a female. There is a female aspect and there is a male aspect in both male and female. They need to be balanced. That balancing is yoga. The spirit and matter have to be balanced. That is what is called the great exercise. It is like walking on a tight rope without falling to the left or to the right. It is also like bicycling — that you are in the middle, not inclined to the left, and not inclined to the right.

Yoga is an act of balancing male and female energies in oneself. Association with the other gender is helpful. Association with the other gender helps us find our own balance. Association with the teacher is also a way to find one's balance. The male and female aspects, together with the animal aspects in man were obviously present in the past waves. Don't we carry certain animal nature with us? Behind our mind there remain certain animal instincts.

We have animal instincts, we have human instincts, and we have divine instincts. That is the beauty of the human. We have all the three possibilities. We can be beastly, we can be human, and we can be divine. When the beastly aspect, human aspect, and the divine aspect are presented together in an obvious manner then you have the centaurs, the sphinx, and the mermaids. Later, the animal aspect is deposited inside the human. So, the animal is separated. Completely beastly nature becomes animals. Semi-human and semi-beasts instead of being presented in a human and beastly form, they are presented together in a human form and the beast is inside. The beast can be seen only when we grow proximate to a person.

Otherwise, he looks very human. From a distance a person is very human. From proximity when observations are made you can find that he could be a divine person, or he could be a semi-divine, semi-human, or he could be completely human, or he could be semi-human, semi-beastly. Now, within one human appearance so many possibilities are deposited.

In the earlier Human Waves, the formations were exactly as per the nature. That means that now the soul has been given a more sophisticated form which enabled certain subtle hideouts. It is all one humanity but within the humanity we have so many grades. If these grades are presented as such in form, then you would have the formations which we have described in relation to the Third Human Wave. Today, in the world, a monster or a master appears to be the same. There can be a monster in a man. Only by his behaviour you would know. They look the same outwardly, but inwardly they are totally different. In the olden human waves, it was very clear. The monster by form was also a monster. A master was by form a master.

Today, there is a lot to delineate because appearances are deceptive. Everyone looks like a decent person. Even a killer looks like a decent person. The obvious aspect of nature expressing into forms was the case with the Third and the Fourth Human Wave.

That the human form was definitely intended to be androgynous in the initial stages is indicated in the Stanza of Dzyan where the great chohans are represented as giving their commands to the lords of the Moon. The lords of the Moon are the pitris. They are given commands by the chohans. And the command is given here:

*"The great chohans called the Lords of the Moon, of the airy bodies. 'Bring forth men, men of your nature. Give them their forms within; she will build coverings without; males-females will they be. Lords of the Flame also...'"*¹

"They will be males, they will be females, and they will be covered by the matter of earth. But you, the pitris, bring the forms as you have. The subtle formations are conducted by the pitris, and the matter is filled by the earth. But the design comes from the higher circles. The design comes from the cosmic intelligence called Visvakarma, the great architect of the universe. He gives the design. The pitris provide the

subtle forms. The earth provides the dense forms. And let them be males and females." Such is the sloka 12 of Stanza 3 of Dzryan.

"He is in She"

*"Almost sexless, in its early beginnings, it became bisexual or androgynous; very gradually of course. The passage from former to the latter transformation required numberless generations, during which the simple cell that issued from the earliest parent (the two in one), first developed into a bisexual being; and then the cell, becoming a regular egg, gave forth to a unisexual creature."*¹

From unity it becomes binary, bisexual. Then the two divide. We have to think along those lines. The earliest parent is two in one. The Absolute, the Parabrahman, is also two in one. It is not male, it is not female. God Absolute is not male or female. We should also not say that the God Absolute is "He". It is not "He", it is not "She", it is "IT". That is why God is said to be "IT" and "THAT" in the Vedas. To say that God is "He" is an incorrect expression. God is as much a He man as he is a She man. In fact, in creation it is "She" who presides. God as "She" presides and "He" remains in She. He is inside, and She is outside.

Master CVV gave an excellent explanation of this. He says in creation *"He is in She"*, because the spelling for "She" has "He" in it. *"Madam carries Adam, woman carries man."* When it comes to creation, it is the Mother. Beyond the creation, it is the two together. The earliest parent cannot be but bisexual, two in one, first developed into a bisexual being and then the cell becoming a regular egg gave forth a unisexual creature.

*"But it is evident that the units of the Third Race humanity began to separate in their pre-natal shells, or eggs, and to issue out of them as distinct male and female babes, ages after the appearance of its early progenitors."*²

Meaning separate male and female births occurred in the Third Human Wave. In the initial stages, male-female were not separate at birth. Later male and female separated. Slowly there was a bisexual birth and subsequent separation. That is where you have the story of king emperor

1 SD, 2:197

2 SD, 2:197

Prithu. I think in the future we will narrate these stories in the Indian group life. There is a lot to speak on all these aspects.

Prithu

Prithu is the first king on the planet who made a barren cow of Earth into a milk yielding cow. Assuming the Earth to be a cow, the cow was not yielding milk. Why? Because the beings did not yet start eating. The sense of taste and hunger was not developed. Hunger came much later when the beings became bisexual. Speech came when the vocals formed, when the mouth was formed. Before that, there was no hunger. So, the planet was not giving out any food. When the beings started feeling hungry, around the end of Third Human Wave and beginning of Fourth Human Wave, then came a great being in a male-female form and separated as male and female. He is the one who milked the Earth. These are poetic words. For such milking of the Earth, the great being brought every planet's energy into the calves. The cow gives milk in the presence of the calf. He brought Jupiter as calf and made the cow of Earth yield milk. He brought Venus as calf and milked the cow of Earth to give rice. Like that, he brought all the planetary energies as calves, meaning he interlinked the planetary energies to enable this planet to develop food and also to teach man how to cultivate, thereby producing the food to eat. These are all the great developments in relation to the history of man and the planet. Today, we take so many things for granted, but you can imagine initially how things could have happened.

Male and female distinctions

It is evident that the units of the Third Human Wave humanity began to separate in their pre-natal shells and be birthed as distinct male and female babies. They were coming out as male and as female. Before, they were coming out as both, as male-female. Even today, these male and female distinctions happen during the teenage years, and not before. The voice of a young boy and a young girl is just the same. You listen to a five-year-old boy's voice and a five-year-old girl's voice, it is the same. During the teenage years, the female develops the female organs and the male develops

the male organs. For the first seven years, or for that matter up to twelve years, i.e., one Jupiterian cycle, they are just the same — the male does not grow a beard, and the female does not develop breasts. If you carefully observe all these, though the initial form can be recognized as male or female, you will see the male nature and the female nature establishes after the first cycle of seven years. In ancient times, even the form was not distinct. Today, the form is distinct but it takes a minimum of seven years to separate the sexes in the being.

Until Libra is formed in the being the separations do not happen. Once Libra is neutralized in us the separations disappear. Man becomes man-woman, woman also becomes woman-man if the activity of Libra is neutralized. The emergence of Libra causes the distinction of male and female. That is why the story of Adam and Eve is seen as a much later story where there is the birth of Libra. The female is separated from male. Until then, it was all together. To be together and then to be separated happened in the Third Human Wave itself, but in a very gradual manner through innumerable years of time, innumerable generations.

*"And, as time rolled on its geological periods, the newly born sub-races began to lose their natal capacities. Toward the end of the fourth sub-race, the babe lost its faculty of walking as soon as liberated from its shell, and by the end of the fifth, mankind was born under the same conditions and by the same identical process as our historical generations."*¹

This is very significant. This means, humanity was passing beyond three and half minor waves. They lost the faculty of walking as soon as it liberated from its shell. We do not walk when we are born. A calf walks as it is born. Some animals or some beings can walk as they are born. We too were able to do that, but we lost those natal capacities. It happened in the fourth minor wave of the Third Human Wave. By the end of the fifth minor wave, mankind was born under the same conditions and by the same identical process as our historical generations. From the fifth minor wave of the Third Human Wave, humans were as we are now, born distinctly as males and females, losing the natal faculties and regaining them through practice. That is how slowly the continuity of consciousness also would be lost to later reappear through education. There were no educational institutions in the earlier Human Waves. We now re-equip ourselves with edu-

1 SD, 2:197

cation. But each one exists only up to one's capacity and the capacities vary. Studying in the same university, people express different capacities because they have different natal capacities. And through cultivation they improve their capacities for the rest of the life.

The process described above was working in consonance with the developmental unfolding of the human wave as it continued down the arc of descent. This process of separation was happening as the formation of Earth was precipitating in its arc of descent. From the standpoint of wave evolution, the lowest point was reached during the mid-period of the Third Wave.

Qualities of the Third Human Wave man

It should be borne in mind that the early Third Wave human was a remarkable being. He is described as a Titan of the Secondary age.

*"The whole posse comitatus of biologists will turn away from the conception of this third race Titan of the Secondary age, a being fit to fight as successfully with the then gigantic monsters of the air, sea, and land, as his forefathers — the ethereal prototype of the Atlantean — had little need to fear that which could not hurt him."*¹

The Third Human Wave being was fit to fight successfully with the gigantic monsters of the air, sea, and land. He was big, he was strong, and he could fight — with lots of Martian power. He formed the ethereal prototype for the Atlantean, because the Fourth Human Wave, the Atlantean, was a much greater expression into objectivity. So, the Third Human Wave becomes his ethereal form. Second and First Human Waves were deep down in him as seeds.

As you go forward, the initial experiences are all engraved within us as seeds, as potential. When the Second came out, the First remained hidden. When the Third came out, the Second and the First were hidden. When the Fourth comes out, the Third, the Second, and the First in that order were hidden. The Third Human Wave being was big, powerful, and was able to fight beings of air, sea, and land. That was how the Third Human Wave man ultimately came to be. The Third Human Wave man became the ethereal prototype for the Fourth Human Wave, the Atlantean.

1 SD, 2:9

This wave could live with equal ease in water, air, or fire, instead of just being on land, for it had an unlimited control over the elements. You would see the cyclopes and others of Atlantean times doing so many things, because they had in the background the Third Human Wave capacity. You see in Ramayana that Hanuman carried a huge mountain on his form, fought in the air, and even when he was put into fire nothing happened to him.



Hanuman carrying the mountain¹

All these are relevant when you see the capacities of the later Third Human Wave and early Fourth Human Wave.

*"This race could live with equal ease in water, air, or fire, for it had unlimited control over the elements. These were the 'Sons of God'; not those who saw the daughters of men, but the real Elohim, though in the oriental Kabala they have another name."*²

1 Hanuman by Raja Ravi Varma (1848-1906) (Wikimedia, published May 22, 2012)
Available at: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hanuman_fetches_the_herb-bearing_mountain,_in_a_print_from_the_Ravi_Varma_Press,_1910%27s.jpg

2 SD, 2:220

Among the Third Human Wave were born-again gods. Until then, the monads were in the formation. Then there was the descent of the gods to conduct evolution in the Third Human Wave. That means, the Third Human Wave is a special Human Wave. There was the interference of solar gods into the work of the lunar gods and the gods of Earth. That is why the time of the Third Wave was so powerful, according to the Secret Doctrine.

*"This inclusion of the First Race in the Secondary is necessarily only a provisional working-hypothesis — the actual chronology of the First, Second, and Early Third Races being closely veiled by the Initiates. For all that can be said on the subject, the First Root Race may have been Pre-Secondary, as is, indeed, taught. (Vide supra.)"*¹

The veiled chronology

This history of humanity is written in the Secret Doctrine due to Madam Blavatsky's access to the cave temples, the access of which was given by the Masters. That is why she comes with such astounding and profound information. And she logically linked it up to the scientific findings of her times. But what all is said about these Human Waves is a pittance of what it really was like then! We are only given a glimpse into those times which cannot really be described. What the Secret Doctrine provides is just a momentary glimpse of those ancient times. And that is what she says that *"... the actual chronology of the First Wave, Second Wave, early Third Root Race is closely veiled by the initiates. For all that can be said on the subject, the First Root-Race may have been Pre-Secondary, as is, indeed, taught."*²

Only a small amount of information about Second and Third Human Waves is given.

The Secondary age of the geological periods is divided into Triassic, Jurassic, and Cretaceous periods. The Primary age has no record; the Secondary age has a record. The Secondary age could be from the Second Human Wave because the First Human Wave is called Pre-Secondary. Then we get to another big stage within the Third Human Wave called *"The Separation of Sexes."*

1 SD, 2:715

2 SD, 2:715

Separation of the sexes occurred 18 million years ago. The story told up to the separation of sexes is Pre-Secondary. When we speak of male and female human forms, we are speaking of the history of man from the beginning of 18 million years ago. We do not have that history of 18 million years with us now. Today, everyone starts saying that the history started with him, with his birth! The Jews say history begins with them and the Christians with Christianity all of which are only in the thousands of years!

Appearance of man on the planet

There is no history now for the period before 2,000 years. Till recently, the historians did not go beyond Egypt and Greece. But in reality the history of man goes back 18 million years, if you do not consider the Pre-Secondary period. And we do not know how long the Pre-Secondary age was. The planet itself is considered to be 30 million years of age. Man appeared on the planet when the planet appeared in the Fourth Round. When the planet came into objectivity in the Fourth Round, when the D Globe was formed, man also came to be, because the development of the globe and the development of man are concurrent. That is how the First Human Wave speaks of the Imperishable Sacred Land.



11. Ancient Civilizations

The separation of sexes

The fourth minor wave of the Third Human Wave marked the establishment of the two sexes. There is one time period given in the Secret Doctrine in regard to the waves of humanity. Since it is the only numerical figure presented, its uniqueness should render it worthy of remembrance. Madam Blavatsky is so audacious to give the number of years from which the man is as he is today. This is what she writes in the first volume of the Secret Doctrine.

*"The Occultists, having most perfect faith in their own exact records, astronomical and mathematical, calculate the age of Humanity, and assert that the latter (as separate sexes) has existed in this Round just 18,618,727 years, as the Brahmanical teachings and even some Hindu calendars declare."*¹

It would be well to emphasize the minor wave of the Third Human Wave which marked the establishment of the two sexes.

*"Though we apply the term 'truly human,' only to the Fourth Atlantean Root-Race, yet the Third Race is almost human in its latest portion, since it is during its fifth sub-race that mankind separated sexually, and that the first man was born according to the now normal process. This 'first man' answers in the Bible (Genesis) to Enos or Henoch, son of Seth (ch. Iv.)."*² That is what the Secret Doctrine says.

Greater cities and civilizations than today

People today are inclined to believe that the peak of civilization has only now been reached in our days and in our age and declare that never has there been such prosperity. They also hold the opinion that the mankind has steadily advanced in its culture from the era of cave dwellers up to

1 SD, 1:150. The figure was calculated for the year 1888. So, as per the year 2021, we need to add 133 years to it.

2 SD, 2:715

its present state some thousands of years ago. Those who maintain such notions will naturally reject the idea that there could have been any civilization worthy of name millions of years ago, not to mention its dwellers. Madam Blavatsky says there were greater civilizations and greater cities built than what we have today which is confirmed by the most sacred manuscripts held in the Trans-Himalayan caves. To offset these opinions, there is the ancient record as narrated in the Stanzas of Dzyan informing the cultural activities of the Third Wave, called Lemurian, which is not its true name. The true name of the Third Human Wave has not been divulged. It is generally called the Lemurian.

The Stanza of Dzyan says, *"They built huge cities. Of rare earths and metals they built, and out of the fires vomited, out of the white stone of the mountains and of the black stone, they cut their own images in their size and likeness, and worshipped them."*¹ They built cities out of fire — buildings done out of fire, emitting lava.

*"But to confess their presence is not to accept that there were men on them during the early geological periods — men and civilized nations, not Palaeolithic savages only — who, under the guidance of their divine Rulers, built large cities, cultivated arts and sciences, and knew astronomy, architecture and mathematics to perfection. This primeval civilization did not, as one may think, immediately follow their physiological transformation."*²

Physiologically they are not transformed as we are, but knowledge-wise they were far greater, because during this time and into the wave there was the descent of gods who guided the humanity. That is how the kings came to be divine people. In the ancient most times, kings were gods because gods descended in the form of kings. And they gave the knowledge to the humanity as to how to live on the planet, how to cultivate, how to produce things from the earth, how to relate to them, and they were also given sciences such as architecture, mathematics, astronomy, human and other sciences.

"Between the final evolution and the first city built, many hundred thousands of years had passed. Yet, we find the Lemurians in their sixth sub-race building their rock-cities out of stone and lava. One of such great

1 SD, 2:20-21

2 SD, 2:316-317

*cities of primitive structure was built entirely of lava, some thirty miles west from where Easter Island now stretches its narrow piece of sterile ground, and was entirely destroyed by a series of volcanic eruptions."*¹

Madam Blavatsky mentions the Easter Islands, which is on the west coast of the American continent in the Pacific Ocean, multiple times in *Isis Unveiled*² and also in the Secret Doctrine, because that is the continent relating to the Lemurian or the Third Human Wave which is in waters now. Some of its borders are towards the North and South American continents. That is why the western borders of North and South American continents carry certain magic even today. The California belt of land in North America, Andes Mountains in South America, Mount Shasta in North California are all highly spiritual even today and many phenomena like UFOs (Unidentified Flying Objects) happen in those areas. These Easter Islands are also related to the Lemurian continent, now submerged in the waters of the biggest ocean of Earth, i.e., Pacific Ocean.



Mount Shasta

1 SD, 2:317

2 H. P. Blavatsky, *Isis Unveiled*, Volume 1 and 2 (Pasadena: Theosophical University Press, 1877), PDF e-book. (hereafter cited in text as IU).

Available at:

http://www.theosociety.org/pasadena/isis/isis_unveiled_volume_1.pdf and

http://www.theosociety.org/pasadena/isis/isis_unveiled_volume_2.pdf

*"The oldest remains of Cyclopean buildings were all the handiwork of Lemurians of the last sub-races; and an occultist shows, therefore, no wonder on learning that the stone relics found on the small piece of land called Easter Island by Captain Cook, are 'very much like the walls of the Temple of Pachacamac or the Ruins of Tia-Huanuco in Peru,' ('The Countries of the World' by Robert Brown, Vol. 4, p. 43); and that they are in the CYCLOPEAN STYLE. The first large cities, however, appeared on that region of the continent which is now known as the Island of Madagascar. There were civilized people and savages in those days as they are now."*¹

*"Nevertheless, and civilization notwithstanding, while their pastoral brethren enjoyed wondrous powers as their birthright, they, the builders could now obtain theirs only gradually; even these being generally used for power over physical nature and selfish and unholy purposes."*²

There was civilization and huge demonstration of knowledge, and on the other side there was also the abuse of the wondrous powers for selfish and unholy purposes.

No great structures on the physical plane in the East

*"Civilization has ever developed the physical and intellectual at the cost of the psychic and spiritual."*³

This is a very important statement. When you build civilization at the physical level, slowly it results in loss of psychic and spiritual powers, especially when such manifestations are done for selfish and unholy purposes. That is why things had to be closed — anything not worthy of survival will be taken away by nature. The knowledge had come during the Third Human Wave, because there was the birth of the sons of will and yoga and the birth of gods as kings of the regions. But as times pass by, there would normally be abuse of knowledge. That is why life in the metropolis is totally different from life in upcountry. The upcountry life is more natural, because it is proximate to nature. Life in the metropolis is more conditioned by materialism— there is ambition, related competition, jealousies, and suspicion. Huge cities are nothing but a spent force of human psychic

1 SD, 2:317

2 SD, 2:319

3 SD, 2:319

and spiritual power. When it happens on the physical level, then there is a fight for the power to control and the power to rule.

That is why the initiates of the East, around the Himalayas, never believed in building huge cities and civilizations since it opens the doors for a fall. The initiates would build what was needed and then they dematerialized it. If you see Ramayana, which also relates to those early waves, there was a great seer by name Bharadwaja. Rama, the king emperor to be, by virtue of overwhelming events, had to go into exile on the same day of his coronation. At the moment of his coronation, he left the kingdom with his wife and brother and went into the wild forest. Many citizens who were admirers of the prince abandoned the city and followed him. Almost the whole city of Ayodhya was emptied and they all entered the forest.

Rama, the prince, reached the ashram of a great seer called Bharadwaja. The seer looked at the plight of the prince and invited him to take shelter in his ashram before Rama proceeded deeper into the forest. But there were thousands and thousands of persons that accompanied Rama. Rama was perplexed because as a king he had to protect them, which also meant giving proper food and shelter and such proper food and shelter had to be arranged in the wilderness. Then with sounds the seer created a much more beautiful city than Ayodhya and hosted an excellent lunch and dinner for all the people and gave all facilities that they would have had at their homes. The agreement was that in the morning people would return to the city of Ayodhya and that Rama would go deeper into the forest. Throughout the night there was a huge city which was enjoyed by all the people. By the morning the seer de-manifested all that he had materialized.

This is how you create for the occasion. When the occasion is not necessary, it is better that it is not there. When there is a need for structures on account of a huge activity, we can have structures. But if the activity dies or if the activity recedes, the structure remains a source for power fighting. Now, you see many huge buildings in the West. These were built when there was the height of activity, and most of them now look like abandoned houses. If you go to the Vatican, it looks abandoned. Many churches, which are very huge in Europe, are now closed or do not vibrate with life. Is it important that we have structures for prayer? It is better that we have prayer more than the prayer hall. Prayer in a tempo-

rary prayer hall is better than a permanent prayer hall with no prayer. What is the use of a huge prayer hall with no one entering into it?

Between prayer and a prayer hall it is best to focus on prayer over the prayer hall. That was the thought of the Eastern seers, magicians. But in the West, especially in North and South American continents, where the other counterpart to the Himalayan school of wisdom was located, at Ibez, it was there that they believed in manifesting the structures and that caused the fall.

Suppose, there is a great teacher and he is emitting much light, he is so magnetic and so radiant that around him huge structures and huge ashrams are built. After his departure, there would only be a fight for power in those places because the successor generally does not maintain that high vibration. So, it becomes an avenue for unholy, selfish purposes.

That is the reason why Master Morya, Master Koot Hoomi and the like say, *"We do not build huge ashrams on the physical plane, it does no good. Our ashrams are in the etheric. Our ashrams keep changing according to time and place with the need as the basis."*

Where there is a need, there they hold the ashram in the etheric plane. Once the need is fulfilled, it is shifted elsewhere. Nothing is brought into brick and mortar. When there is a huge manifestation on the physical plane, it is like a spent force. Those who gather around it would gather for the material and not for the spirit of it. That is why the holy men in India, in spite of their magical power, never believed in manifesting huge things into brick and mortar. They believed that simplicity is much better and that in such simplicity spiritual and psychic powers can be experienced better for self-realization.

The statement which made me say all these is: *"Civilization has ever developed the physical and intellectual at the cost of the psychic and spiritual."*¹

Once there is a huge demonstration on to the physical plane, then you can take it as the end of the things. It is like having a huge physical body — it would cause death because the life cannot sustain it for long. That is why if you see the city of Babylonia, the cities of Egypt, the cities of Greece, and other such great cities, all these cities eventually became ruined. It is no wisdom to build huge cities.

1 SD, 2:319

That is what is meant by this statement: *"Civilization has ever developed the physical and intellectual at the cost of the psychic and spiritual. The command and the guidance over his own psychic nature, which foolish men now associate with supernatural, were with early Humanity innate and congenital, and came to man as naturally as walking and thinking."*¹

It is fancy today to be supernatural and spiritual. That is why these miracles are not seen with great favour in the circles of the Hierarchy. The psychic powers came to men as naturally as walking and thinking, but they have become secrets only in our wave. They were public property with the Third Human Wave, meaning they were of common knowledge. Why Madam Blavatsky says all this is, that we do not think that we have developed now much more than our predecessors. There was a stream of humanity which demonstrated very high knowledge before us. There was also a stream of savages.

Great civilizations and loss of knowledge

What we see as native people in South and North America are the leftovers of a great civilization. They carry no knowledge. The height of knowledge which their wave enjoyed at one time, did not enter the present stream. They were all leftover. So, they need to develop in the next cycle with those streams which are developing. Simultaneous to this doctrine, the European occupation of South and North America is to contribute to the further development and they need to participate in that development. North and South America are very ancient continents. One huge civilization happened there and died. Now, in this Fifth Human Wave a new minor wave is being planned in those continents. It is therefore considered a land of opportunity for the humanity to make the next minor wave. That is how the Secret Doctrine explains this.

From the Third Human Wave to the Fourth, and from Fourth to Fifth, there was a loss of knowledge. The Fifth especially has grown in intellectuality, and to that extent lost spirituality. It is always like that, individually and with groups. The intellectual has to be subservient to the spiritual. The intellect should be pure enough to be able to touch the in-

tuition. Pure intellect touches the intuition, but generally intellect suffers from selfishness and pride. When there is pride and selfishness, it becomes impure. When it is impure, it cannot touch upon the intuitional plane. That is how some part of the human wave progresses and some part of the human wave becomes stagnated.

Location of the Lemurian continent: Northern Lemuria

This third continent which became the home of the Third Human Wave, to which the name of Lemuria was given in place of its real name, was situated principally in the region where the Pacific Ocean now lies. For ease of description, it has been divided into two portions termed as Northern Lemuria and Southern Lemuria.

*"No confusion need arise as regards to postulation of Northern 'Lemuria'. The prolongation of that great continent into North Atlantic Ocean is in no way subversive of the opinions so widely held as to the site of last Atlantis, and one corroborates the other."*¹

If there was Atlantis between Europe and North American continent, likewise there was Lemuria between the Chinese border and the west coast of North American border.

*"It must be noted that the Lemuria, which served as the cradle of the Third Root-Race, not only embraced a vast area in the Pacific and Indian Oceans, but extended in the shape of a horseshoe past Madagascar, round 'South Africa' (then a mere fragment in process of formation), through the Atlantic up to Norway. The great English fresh-water deposit called the Wealden — which every geologist regards as the mouth of a former great river — is the bed of the main stream which drained Northern Lemuria in the Secondary Age. The former reality of this river is a fact of science — will its votaries acknowledge the necessity of accepting the Secondary-age Northern Lemuria, which their data demand?"*²

The geologists say it is a drained river. If it is a drained river, there must be a place where it flowed. Today, through satellite picture we also found a drained river called Saraswathi underneath the northwest part of India, which is now in Pakistan. This was where there was a great Vedic

1 SD, 2:333

2 SD, 2:333

civilization where the goddess of wisdom was worshipped. There are so many Rig Vedic hymns dedicated to her. There was a class of Brahmins called Saraswata Brahmins who were specializing in that knowledge. Till recently this river Saraswathi was thought to be a mystical river. But the scriptures speak of an actual flowing river. Through science, through satellite pictures, they found that the river is very much there underground covered by land and that if this river were to be opened the desert states of India such as Rajasthan would become very, very fertile lands.

Rajasthan was known to be a place of Rajputs, the dynasty of solar kings. The great being whom we know as Master Morya is also a Rajput coming from such a solar dynasty. There is a great legend about Rajputs considered to be fiction because their land, which was previously so fertile and so rich, is a desert today. But, there is a revelation in this decade that there is a huge waterbed flowing from the Himalayas in the south western direction joining the Arabian Sea. And now the Indian scientists and government are interested in opening that river bed. Two decades ago with the help of science they found in the Arabian Sea a huge city underwater, which is considered to be Dwaraka, the city in which Krishna placed his people by building a fort.

These discoveries are opening up the possibilities of confirming many scriptural statements relating to our past. So, every geologist regards this river Wealdon, the English fresh-water deposit, as the mouth of a great river. If it is the mouth of a great former river, where would the river have flown? That is the question Madam Blavatsky leaves us with.

“Professor Berthold Seeman not only accepted the reality of such a mighty continent, but regarded Australia and Europe as formerly portions of one continent — thus corroborating the whole ‘horse-shoe’ doctrine already enunciated.”¹

Where is Australia? And where is Europe now? They all belonged to one piece of land. The continent started in the northern part of the hemisphere in the Pacific Ocean, went down into the Indian Ocean, circumambulated the tip of South Africa, and went up to Norway via England — such a horseshoe theory is being stated in the Secret Doctrine. And Australia was part of the whole thing. Thus, Europe and Australia were connected. It is not by chance that Europeans are sent to Australia. The

criminals of the British were all sent to Australia. It is not by chance. When we study the occult side of things, everything occurring is all according to a plan. The movement of people on the planet is also according to a plan. The European connection to Australia happened again in spite of the waters.

*"No more striking confirmation of our position could be given, than the fact that the elevated bridge in the Atlantic basin 9,000 feet in height, which runs for some two or three thousand miles southwards from a point near the British Islands, first slopes towards South America, then shifts almost at right angles to proceed in a south-easterly line toward the African coast, whence it runs on southward to Tristan d'Acunha. This ridge is a remnant of an Atlantic continent, and, could it be traced further, would establish the reality of a submarine horse-shoe junction with a former continent in the Indian Ocean."*¹

In the Atlantic basin there is a bridge for two to three thousand miles southwards from the English islands. The whole pathway is 9,000 feet high compared to either side of the waters. These are all geological confirmations. So, what does it mean? Imagine a bridge-like formation two to three thousand miles from the British Islands down south into the Indian Ocean and moving towards Australia. She says what more striking confirmation you want? It is traced into the Atlantic but if it is traced further it will take you to under the Indian Ocean towards the Pacific in an eastward direction. Like this, she is giving certain information which would enable us to think differently concerning the present contours of land. That is where the Lanka of the Titans in Ramayana is not the Sri Lanka as is supposed by the many Indians. That Lanka is an island far below this Lemurian continent, almost towards South Pole, below the equator. The present Sri Lanka is above the equator. When it comes to South Lemurian continent, it covers Sri Lanka and all the other islands.

Location of the Lemurian continent: Southern Lemuria

In regard to Southern Lemuria: *"It covered the whole area of space from the foot of the Himalayas, which separated it from the inland sea rolling its waves over what is now Tibet, Mongolia, and the great desert of*

Schamo (Gobi); from Chittagong, westward to Hardwar, and eastward to Assam. From thence, it stretched South across what is known to us as Southern India, Ceylon, and Sumatra; then embracing on its way, as we go South, Madagascar on its right hand and Australia and Tasmania on its left, it ran down to within a few degrees of the Antarctic Circle; when, from Australia, an inland region on the Mother Continent in those ages, it extended far into the Pacific Ocean, not only beyond Rupa-nui (Teapy, or Easter Island) which now lies in latitude 26 S., and longitude 110 W."¹

There was no North India at that time. Southern India is more ancient than Northern India. Northern India was only up to Hardwar. There was an inland sea between the foot of the Himalayas and South India. And now after Tibet and Assam — Assam is a northeast state of India today. There was no Indian Ocean at that time. The land was extending up to the South Pole. An inland region on the mother continent in those ages extended from Australia far into Pacific Ocean up to Easter Islands. The whole land from the foot of the Himalayas was an inland sea. And then what you see as Southern India, from the mountain ranges Vindhya downward, it extended on both sides of the continent, from Asia towards Australia and towards what we know today as California and extending to Madagascar and Tasmania. Southern Lemuria was a very huge continent.

What is known as North India today came to be known later as Aryavarta. There was a portion of a sea in between. Australia, now classified as an island continent, has been regarded as a Polynesian Island and it was part of a gigantic and continuous continent. In the Pedigree of Man it was written: *"It certainly was, since it stretched, during the Third Race, east and west, as far as where the two Americas now lie, and since present Australia is but a portion of it, as are also a few surviving islands sown hither and thither on the face of the Pacific and a large bit of California, which belong to it."*²

What we see as Australia was at one time a small portion of the great continent of Lemuria. The small islands like Singapore, Malaysia, Jakarta, Sumatra, Bali were all parts of the Lemuria. A very large portion of California also belonged to the Lemurian continent. That is why California is the land of the ancient most times where the sons of will and yoga

1 SD, 2:324

2 SD, 2:328

functioned. And what you call Jakarta today, means yoga karta, meaning the place kriya sakti and yoga were practiced. Some of these islands still vibrate with those ancient most vibrations of the Third Human Wave.

The natives of Australia, the aborigines of Australia, are considered to be ancient most on the planet. It may be to our surprise that they chant the sound "Ram". Some of these things may prove astonishing to us. Just as there were great changes in the status of Third Human Wave, so were there great changes in the land masses.

*"The commentary tells us that the Third Race was only about the middle point of its development when: 'The axle of the Wheel tilted. The Sun and the Moon shone no longer over the heads of that portion of the Sweat Born; people knew snow, ice, and frost, and men, plants, and animals were dwarfed in their growth. Those that did not perish remained as half-grown babes in sizes and intellect. This was the third pralaya of the races'."*¹

A tilt of the axle of the Earth

Halfway through the Third Human Wave there was a tilt of the axis of the Earth. Consequently, great changes happened in relation to the Human Wave which was in development. In the case of the First and Second, upon completion of their cycle, before evidence of Second, and before the advent of Third, there was a change in the land. Halfway through the Third Human Wave the axis of the Earth tilted. That means there was a shrinking of the size of the beings to half from what they were originally in the first half of the Third Human Wave. Those who did not perish remained as half-grown babies, meaning, in comparison with their great brothers, they shrunk into half size and half intellect. So, there was a sudden shrinkage happening with some of them. This was the third pralaya of the wave, meaning after the First Human Wave there was one change of land, and a displacement by waters. The second pralaya was after the Second Wave, and the third pralaya was halfway through the Third Human Wave.

*"The sinking and transformation of Lemuria beginning nearly at the Arctic Circle (Norway), the Third Race ended its career in Lanka or rather on that which became Lanka with Atlanteans."*²

1 SD, 2:329

2 SD, 2:332

The Sri Lanka which we have now is from Atlantean times, but the Lanka of Lemurian times was far bigger than what it is now.

*"The small remnant now known as Ceylon is the Northern highland of ancient Lanka, while the enormous island of that name was, in Lemurian period, the gigantic continent described a few pages back."*¹

Before the development of the Third Wave had come to a close, the sons of fire had obtained the secret wisdom and had retired to a secret abode. There is the descent of the sons of mind, the sons of will and yoga. The sons of will and yoga have secured themselves into a secure abode when there was such a pralaya happening halfway through the Third Human Wave. The elect race is known by several names.

*"Happily for the human race the 'Elect Race' had already become the vehicle of incarnation of the (intellectually and spiritually) highest Dhyanis before Humanity had become quite material."*²

They formed the nucleus for higher incarnations to appear on the planet, meaning they provided the nucleus for avatars to manifest on the planet from the highest circle. This is least known by any exoteric scriptures. This is a very important statement of the Secret Doctrine. So, some avenue for descent from higher circles was prepared and secured. And it is through that avenue that the avatars appear each time.

*"When the last sub-races — save some lowest — of the Third Race had perished with the great Lemurian Continent, 'the seeds of the Trinity of Wisdom' had already acquired the secret of immortality on Earth, that gift which allows the same great personality to step ad libitum from one wornout body into another."*³

This is a very important statement. Before the Lemurian Continent and the related Human Waves perished, the seeds of the Trinity of Wisdom... the First and the Second and Third Wave seeds represent the Trinity of Wisdom, because the primary triangle of the First, Second, and Third Wave would only enable the manifestation of the higher plan into the lower. The three seeds are will, knowledge, and activity. So, three beings became three seeds for the Trinity of Wisdom. It is their abodes which you find in the Himalayas as Badrinath, Mount Kailash, and

1 SD, 2:332

2 SD, 2:276

3 SD, 2:276

Manasarovar. It is Brahma Manasarovar. Likewise, the places were secured around the Himalayas, and the energy was secured and beings also became linked to the energy of the Cosmic Trinity.

Their corresponding centres were also established in the Grand Canyon. In the Grand Canyon there are three mounts; their names are Vishnu Temple, Shiva Temple, and Brahma Temple. It is not that Indians from India named them. Those are the names existing from times immemorial.



Mount Kailash and Manasarovar

This is how the seed of the Trinity of Wisdom had formed and acquired immortality on Earth. And that gift of immortality which allows these great personalities to step down, also enables one to retain continuity of consciousness. Hence, this forms the basic seed to grant immortality to beings. Today, the major teaching is about immortality — transcending death, establishing continuity of consciousness, and the conscious change of personality vehicles identifying the self with the soul.

So, this knowledge was well preserved and from that time onwards this wisdom is given to people according to their inclination. This seed is the foundation of the Hierarchy on the planet, which happened in the Third Human Wave. This inaugurated a great opening for the humanity to enter into higher circles.

12. Manasaputras and the Elect Race

The beginning of language

Language was also starting to be conceived around the same time — initially Senzar and later Sanskrit. That is the reason why when I move around in the West — be it Europe, North America, or South America — people are unconsciously or let us say super-consciously drawn to Sanskrit names and Sanskrit words. In spite of their Western intellect, they like Sanskrit sounds. In South America, they specially want their babies to be given a Sanskrit name. People came to India; they picked up many mantras and wanted me to teach them.

Mind you, I did not offer to teach anything Sanskrit; it is only upon the demand coming from the groups. First, it started with Gayatri. I was only giving Master CVV meditation and Gayatri because Gayatri was already known. Then the German groups wanted "*Sam no Mitraha*".¹ When they come to India they listen to many other things. The Spanish began asking, "*What is 'OM Namah Shivaya'?*" "*What is 'OM Namo Narayanaya'?*" "*What is 'OM Namo Bhagavathe Vasudevaya'?*" and so on, because there is inquisitiveness. Once the scientific meaning of these sounds were given, they wanted to practice them. It is to my amazement that people would even want to practice the fire ritual. I was also surprised at how they were attracted to these ancient-most formulae relating to sound coming from the Third Human Wave. Nothing was done on my side without concerning their demands. I am not a missionary. I only respond to the demands that keep coming to me. And I do not respond to a casual demand because anything I do is not casual for me.

People want to learn the fire ritual; people want to learn the water ritual. In this group-life also, a few members came to me even on the very second day of group-life and asked me if I could teach them the worship hymn of Hanuman. I wait to be asked and there is an ocean of such knowledge of sounds to be known.

1 Invocation of the teacher and the student. See https://worldteachertrust.org/en/web/meditation/morning_evening_meditation

It is not that we gather knowledge for the sake of gathering. Gathering knowledge is one thing, working with it is another thing. Already there is much Sanskrit already known. The apparent Indianization of the groups is not Indianization, it is indigenization of the groups. Please remember that people tend to be indigenous, meaning returning to their original nature. And it should not cause indigestion! These are some of the hard realities which I encounter through all my travels. In some remote corner in Venezuela someone wants to learn the fire ritual, someone else wants to learn the water ritual. This is because these sounds were popular in all the continents at one time, and people are remembering their original natures.

The whole work is done by the seed of Trinity right from the Third Human Wave. And whom we know as the World Teacher today... World Teacher is an office. It is an office which is presided over by Lord Maitreya in the present times. You have to think of the World Teachers before him. From the Third Human Wave how many great seers were there? How many continue to be here? Mind you, Master Morya is the ancient-most one that we all know. He is from the times of the Third and Fourth Human Waves. Likewise, there are many seers, many rishis remaining on the planet who can see within and without. Do not think that the few names we know are the sum total of everything. What is given out by Madam Blavatsky is a window display of a great museum which you need to visit. Not all are known. No one knows all of them. Please remember. No one knows all of them and what we know is a small window of a great museum. How much can you see through a window? And what is there in a museum? Just a sample is given out. These seers and rishis are working for humanity as a whole — not with a partitioned attitude, not with a partisan attitude, no partial thinking. For the sake of humanity they formed the seed.

The Elect Race

This elect race is known by several names. They are called the sons of will and yoga, sons of fire, sons of fire-mist, sons of Ad, and the Hierarchy of the Elect. It was produced by kriya sakti. There are three essential qualities of nature of which the third quality is kriya sakti, meaning intelligent activity. Through the help of the Third Ray this intelligent activity, constituting a seed of the Trinity, was carried out thousands and thousands of

years ago. *"They were a conscious production, as a portion of the race was already animated with divine spark of spiritual, superior intelligence."*¹

By the second half of the Third Human Wave, there is already a spark in a portion of the human beings which makes them eligible to realise immortality and soul consciousness. According to that demand, the seed was formed.

*"It was not a Race, this progeny. It was at first a wondrous Being, called the 'Initiator', and after him a group of semi-divine and semi-human beings."*²

This being is not emerging out of the human wave. It is a descent. This descended being into the form is called Sanat Kumara. Around him the semi-human and semi-divine beings gathered.

*"'Set apart' in Archaic genesis for certain purposes, they are those in whom are said to have incarnated the highest Dhyanis, 'Munis and Rishis from previous Manvantaras' — to form the nursery for future human adepts, on this earth and during the present cycle."*³

They became vehicles for many great beings who were fulfilled in the past Manvantaras and wished to help humanity in this Manvantara. They opened a channel to higher beings who are fulfilled. There is a new channel of beings apart from what is being evolved on the planet. They are already divine and they have all come to help. And to enable such help, there was a seed formed, a vehicle formed.

"To form the nursery for the future human adepts..." To prepare the beings who carried the divine spark and who carried superior intelligence among human beings, they were all admitted into the nursery — like pre-school, play school, kindergarten. And they are all adepts of the present times but were all trained in this nursery so that they in turn can help humanity. Humans helping humans was the plan and hence the humans were given the divine touch and were trained. The training is for so many centuries. And consequently, we have adepts who can help humanity today. We cannot say that our coming to know about the World Teacher is the constitution of the World Teacher.

With the little that man knows, he tries to establish that this is all there is. We cannot say that the Hierarchy was founded only 5,000 years

1 SD, 1:207

2 SD, 1:207

3 SD, 1:207

ago. The Hierarchy was constituted during the Third Human Wave — to form the nursery for future human adepts on this Earth.

*"These 'Sons of Will and Yoga' born, so to speak, in an immaculate way, remained, it is explained, entirely apart from the rest of mankind."*¹ Apart from mankind, they remained, and they began inspiring mankind.

Shambala

The secret abiding place was an island situated in a vast inland sea which extended over middle Asia, north of the Himalayas. Called Shambala, it is hidden away today in the Gobi desert. Earlier it was hidden under a sea. Now it is hidden in a desert. Only initiates can go there. *"An island, which for its unparalleled beauty had no rival in the world, was inhabited by the last remnant of the race which preceded ours."*²

There is no equal to this island on the entire planet. *"The 'Island' according to belief, exists to the present hour; now, as an oasis surrounded by the dreadful wilderness of the great Desert, the Gobi — whose sands 'no foot hath crossed in the memory of man'."*³

It exists in our present time and now is an oasis surrounded by the dreadful wildernesses of the great Gobi desert. Gobi is 'Gopi' which means 'the secret one'. Gopa means secret. Gopi means the one who carries the secret. Gopi becomes Gobi. The one who heads this ashram is considered to be a blue boy. Blue in Sanskrit is Shyama. Boy is bala. It is Shyama bala which has become slowly Shambala and Shamballah. People write the name Shamballa with a variety of spellings. Some write Shambala, some write Shamballah. The original name is Shyama bala, the blue one. And the secret abode is Gopi because it is a secret. It is secret to the mortal life. This is the desert whose sands no foot hath crossed in the memory of man. No one in the memory of man could reach there in his physical body.

So, this is one good inauguration. Why is it a good inauguration? Compassion happened and it is by far the best thing that happened to humanity on this planet. An act of compassion appeared for people who do not know how to live, how to realise themselves, and how to ascend into

1 SD, 1:207

2 SD, 1:220

3 SD, 1:220

divine circles. It is a great act of compassion that someone comes and provides a way out. So, the first act of compassion on the planet is said to be creation constitution of this seed.

Manasaputras

So far, an elaborate account of the Third Human Wave is being given but we now come to the mention of this important event concerning the Third Human Wave. Gigantic forms, their powers, their strengths — among all that drama the most important event occurring during the era of the third stage of evolutionary development was the creation of the human kingdom. In the Third Human Wave the mind principle is awakened. And there is the descent of the manasaputras. Manasaputras means beings with cosmic mind. The kumaras have started entering into the system. Manasaputras means sons of mind. Sons of whose mind? The sons of Brahma, meaning the cosmic mind. They are the sons of wisdom. They need to be considered as an essential aspect of the Third Human Wave. This aspect of the manifestation comes under the divine law of compassion for the beings upon the upper rungs of the ladder of life bent down to lend a helping hand to their brothers on the lower rungs in order to enable them to mount and climb the ladder. It is like someone throwing a ladder into a deep well to enable the people to come out of the well. This was not simply an allegorical aide. This was not an allegorical fairy tale. This was an actual event that happened. Madam Blavatsky writes that it was an actual event benefiting individuals as well as the human kingdom as a whole.

In due time, it will be the turn of the human hosts to act in the role of manasaputras. In the future Manvantaras, on a still different planet Earth. Who knows? Some of you and me, too, could be born as manasaputras.

In future Manvantaras, it will be the turn of the human host to act in the role of manasaputras, because surely some people will be left over. People means monads here — do not think monad means human beings only. The monads take to mineral, plant, animal, and human forms. In some Manvantara there would be some ascent and some could be salvaged. In the meanwhile, the span of one Earth would be over. The unevolved beings need to be given another platform.

That is how our whole story began. The unevolved from the previous planet are brought to the next wave for evolution and that is an opportunity. Divine beings have come down from higher circles to help us. And now there is an evolution happening. Evolution is planned for all — it is the evolution of the Monad¹. The Monad exists in all kingdoms — mineral, plant, animal, human. Monads are not only human. Monads exist from ant to Abraham. For the leftover ones, there has to be another planet available to live and evolve. That is why a series of globes was formed for the monads to evolve into divinity and this is part of a grand evolutionary scheme. Helpers are always prepared to help others on the evolutionary path.

That is why if you wish to join the higher regions on the evolutionary ladder, we must learn to help others so that we too are helped. The helpers help, and the helpers are also helped. As much as you help, you in turn receive help. You help those who are less fortunate in terms of knowledge, less fortunate in terms of ability to work, less fortunate in so many ways. You should always think in what little way you can help because the amount of help given is the amount you are also helped in return.

The manasaputras help us to eventually become manasaputras in some future Manvantaras. Having attained that state of awareness, we become helpers too. Unless the habit of helping is formed you cannot reach the higher rungs of the ladder. People who do not have the attitude to help but only wish to gain knowledge, they just remain intellectual. They cannot gain that higher step. The true culmination of knowledge is to heal and to teach. "*Prana treat, yoga teach.*" Heal the sick, teach the gospel. Everyone who knows performs these two tasks: heal the sick, and teach the gospel — not in a missionary or militant way, but to those, who seek, because those who seek are the ones who carry the divine spark. From out of that spark, a flame emerges. The Masters look for someone who can help transform the spark into a flame. Once the flame is lit, seekers continue to discover the light. Teaching the gospel does not mean going anywhere, dominating people, or forcing the doctrine upon people. It is about trying to feed the hungry. If someone is hungry and he asks for food, you give him food. If someone is not hungry, we do not push it down their throat, because they will have to vomit it out eventually.

1 Essence within all of life

That is how the work continues — teaching those who are seeking the teachings and healing those who are seeking healing. Teaching and healing are the ultimate acts of a human being. All semi-divine and divine mortals demonstrate only these two acts: healing the sick and transmitting the knowledge by their own actions. Knowledge is better taught through demonstration than by vocal speech. That is how the work continues and such is the law of compassion.

“Furthermore, the one absolute, ever acting and never erring law, which proceeds on the same lines from one eternity (or Manvantara) to the other — ever furnishing an ascending scale for the manifested, or that which we call the great Illusion (Maha-Maya), but plunging Spirit deeper and deeper into materiality on the one hand, and then redeeming it through flesh and liberating it — this law, we say, uses for these purposes the Beings from the other and higher planes, men, or Minds (Manus), in accordance with the Karmic exigencies.”¹

Although the coming of the manasaputras has already been referred to as the pivotal awakening event in the evolution of mankind, this statement should be repeated again and again so that it may permeate the consciousness of the reader bringing forth the realization that the primary effort of the Secret Doctrine — portrayal of birth and development of humanity — is to trace this epochal achievement. One of the chief purposes of writing the Secret Doctrine was to trace this epochal achievement which happened as a vital, central and pivotal event on the planet. Imagine the excitement of Madam Blavatsky when she came to this knowledge first-hand. It is the master key of knowledge that allows humanity to climb the higher rungs of life. This epochal achievement is described under the title of *“Anthropogenesis”*. Because of this awakening knowledge, man will be regarded in a new way. Because of this possibility, man should be regarded in a new way and in the footnotes Madam Blavatsky writes of man, *“Do not see him as a miserable sinner.”*

You know why? What exists in the Gobi desert (Shambala) is also implanted in your sahasrara. You are already a potential temple. It is a matter of realization. It is already there. The descent of the sons of will and yoga, of kriya sakti, the manasaputras, is a concurrent descent of divinity into man. So everyone is a potential temple of the divine. Do not see man

as a miserable sinner. Madam Blavatsky says that because of this spiritual history, man should be regarded in a new way.

The urge to become human

With this enlightened and ennobled point of view, the realization will follow that man has not yet developed his spiritual functions. We are not functioning mentally. This is true. We have a head, but we do not function through the head. We function through the solar plexus and the sacral centre. But we have the ability to function from the higher centres of our own being. It can also be realized by man that he has spiritual faculties that can be nourished and developed and brought into full potential. The urge to become human is the first step up from being an animal. Animal fulfils the purposes of its body. Human fulfils the purposes of the fellow beings. Divine fulfils the higher purposes of humans and also enables the surroundings to rise to higher states of awareness. In an ashram of a Master, not only the humans evolve, the animals, the plants, and also the minerals, earthly beings, creatures also evolve. Everything is in a state of evolution through the magnetic radiation of the Master.

Each one can evolve as much as possible in the body. When we fulfil the purpose of that body and are eligible for higher accomplishment, a better body is given. That is how animals obtain human bodies. Though all human bodies are apparently alike, qualitatively they are different. With continual spiritual practices, slowly a spiritual body forms that would enable you to practice the spiritual disciplines.

There are seven grades of bodies of flesh and blood on the planet. That is why Madam Blavatsky speaks of this as polygenesis. Seven minor waves represent the seven grades in relation to each kingdom. The human kingdom has seven grades, the animal kingdom has seven grades, the plant kingdom has seven grades, and the mineral kingdom has seven grades. Your gradation improves as you tend more and more towards divinity. In one life if you are able to come to the optimum of your relation to divinity in that incarnation, then in the next lifetime you have a better body with a better gradation.

There is a tendency to have better bodies each time the soul incarnates. The subtlety of the atoms and the tissues of the body, its softness

versus its rigidity, the textures... see, all is cloth. Even the carpet you are sitting on is cloth, and what you are wearing is also cloth, but there are textural differences. There is hard cloth, there is soft cloth — all is made out of cotton. But the textures are not the same. But can you stitch a cloth with that cotton carpet? You need special needles to do that and you cannot wear it because it is very heavy. Likewise, there is gradation from very heavy bodies to very light bodies. Where is all of humanity equal? The principle of equality is at the monadic level. But then in what form is the monad? Don't you find a difference between a buffalo and a cow? Between an ostrich and a swan? Between a stone and a crystal? Crystal is also a stone. What is the difference between any metal and silver or gold? The differences are in the gradations. The gradations improve as we tend towards spiritual awareness. The finest texture is that of the diamond body that you would eventually build through your own actions. Such is the evolutionary pathway which will enable one to develop, achieve and attain the ultimate goal, which is one's divine birth right.

One reason as to why people in the West find it difficult to comprehend the full significance of the teachings regarding the manasaputras and the quickening of the mind principle is because in the West the subject is viewed from formulated in the Biblical story of Adam and Eve — the serpent and the apple, the sin of eating forbidden fruit, and the consequent fall, Adam and Eve sent out of Eden. The incarnation of the manasaputras and the bestowal of mind are also told in an allegorical manner. All allegories are for the purpose of awakening the intuition and are not to be read literally.

*"To some extent, it is admitted that even the esoteric teaching is allegorical. To make the latter comprehensible to the average intelligence, requires the use of symbols cast in an intelligent form. Hence, the allegorical and semi-mythical narratives in the exoteric, and the (only) semi-metaphysical and objective representations in the esoteric teachings."*¹

There are lot of allegorical narrations in the scriptures. They should not be read as literal. And there are symbols mentioned of lions, snakes, etc. You cannot take the snake literally as a snake. They are all symbols containing a message. A lion in a scripture is not a lion. Almost every mythological hero kills a lion. Killing a lion is symbolic of entering into the cave

temple of Leo. Bird is not a bird; bird is pulsation. Bull is not a bull, bull is speech and utterance. Horse is not a horse; horse is the life principle. In scriptures, the symbolical presentation is through allegories. When you understand the symbols, you arrive at a different understanding.

“For the purely and transcendently spiritual conceptions are adopted only to the perceptions of those who ‘see without eyes, hear without ears, and sense without organs’, according to the graphic expressions of the Commentary.”¹

Symbols and allegories are presented to help man begin to ponder and contemplate upon the message. You cannot read a scripture like a daily newspaper. We cannot read any teachings of a Master just like a novel. A lot is said and is unsaid. One sentence carries a thousand sentences behind it. You may have read the book, but you did not get the message because you read what is black and white. What is black and white is obvious but there is something behind the words. A thinker gets what is behind the words. An intuitional thinker gets it even better. As much as you conduct spiritual disciplines in your life, so much the book reveals. It reveals according to the degree of comprehension of the reader. Spiritual reading is not reading as we read a newspaper or a novel; it is like seeing without eyes, hearing without ears. So often people miss the treasure which is hidden in the statements of the great initiates.

Who are the manasaputras, is the question. We cannot just read the answer away. We will try to read with a view to studying the teachings because a lot is said about the manasaputras and a lot is said about the men with the third eye relating to the second half of Third Human Wave. On one side there is the shrinking of the human being and the intellect. Halfway through the Third Human Wave there is a shrinking of humanity and the intellect. But on the other side, there is the grand inauguration of a Hierarchy which would lead the beings into far more states of life.

Five volumes of Secret Doctrine

When Madam Blavatsky conceived the book the Secret Doctrine, it was her wish — and also the comprehension of Annie Besant — that the Secret Doctrine should be in five volumes. Why? So far we have five Human

1 SD, 2:81

Waves. Some think they have done a great job by making the Secret Doctrine into two volumes! In the third volume of the Secret Doctrine there is a lot about the Third Human Wave. You should never try to change a scheme given by an initiate thinking that you know better. The one who thinks he knows better than an initiate need not work with the books or the teachings of the initiate. Any schemes that come from a grand soul must be respected and retained as such. You make two editions, you make abridged editions — this is how we distort. Anyway, this is a side issue.



13. The Awakening of Mind

Solar pitris, lunar pitris, terrestrial spirits

The word “*manasaputras*” is a Sanskrit compound of *putra*, son, and *manasa*, the mind. Hence, *manasaputras* are the sons of mind, sons of wisdom, sons of Mahat, and sons of Brahma, the Third Logos. They are termed solar Ihas, meaning solar devas, in the Tibetan terminology to distinguish them from the sons of twilight, sons of Moon, lunar pitris, who evolved or projected men in the First Human Wave. We know that in the very beginning the lunar pitris prepare forms for us and they also project us onto the planet, because in between the Manvantaras we remain with the Moon, and in between incarnations also we remain with the Moon, because Moon relates to the past.

Omitting reference to the various fables and allegories stating how the sons of Mahat are regarded in esoteric philosophy, the *manasaputras* represent the Fifth Hierarchy. What we have on the planet is the Fifth Hierarchy. Significantly, *manas* is the fifth principle in the human constitution. The lunar pitris represent the Sixth Hierarchy. They prepare the *linga sarira*, the model body. *Linga sarira* is also called the body of mundane identity, and that mundane identity is personality. The relationship of these two hierarchical groups — relationship between solar pitris and lunar pitris — to the human kingdom is clearly given in the following citation. The lunar pitris provide the body, just like the mother provides the body. The solar pitris provide the enlightenment. The father causes enlightenment. That is how it is in the tradition that it is the duty of the mother to give a healthy, strong, fully nourished body; and it is the duty of the father to enlighten the son, guiding him through the initiations. Through father, the solar pitris; and through mother, the lunar pitris we are supplied to the monad.

“The group of the hierarchy which is commissioned to ‘create’ men is a special group, then; yet it evolved shadowy man in this cycle just as a higher and still more spiritual group evolved him in the Third Round. But as it is the Sixth — on the downward scale of Spirituality — the last and

*seventh being the terrestrial Spirits (elements) which gradually form, build, and condense his physical body — the Sixth group evolves no more than the future man's shadowy form, a filmy, hardly visible transparent copy of themselves. It becomes the task of fifth Hierarchy — the mysterious beings that preside over the constellation of Capricornus, Makara, or 'Crocodile' in India as in Egypt — to inform the empty and the ethereal animal form and make of it the Rational Man."*¹

A filmy form is provided by the lunar pitris. The body of flesh and blood surrounds it from the Earth. And then the mind is supplied by the Fifth Hierarchy.

*"This is one of those subjects upon which very little may be said to the general public. It is a mystery, truly but only to him who is prepared to reject the existence of intellectual and conscious spiritual Beings in the Universe, limiting full Consciousness to man alone, and that only as a 'function of the Brain'."*²

Formation of mind to make man rational is the work of the Fifth Hierarchy of manasaputras. And with manas as the basis, buddhi is transmitted, wisdom is transmitted. This is what is to be understood from the Fifth Hierarchy and the Sixth Hierarchy. The Sixth Hierarchy is lunar pitris. The Seventh Hierarchy is of the earthy elements, the terrestrial spirits. They fill, build and condense the form. And the Fifth Hierarchy is the basis for it. What we call the etheric, the astral, form is the model. It is a magnetic model and matter is gathered around it. It is the task of the Fifth Hierarchy to provide the mind, meaning rational thinking. And they do that through the constellation Makara, i.e., Capricorn. This is one of the mysteries about which not much can be explained.

When I narrate to you the Secret Doctrine from the standpoint of Bhagavata, the formation of manas is well explained as the work of the eleven Rudras. The Rudras are also worshipped as a five-pointed star. And the five-syllabled mantra "*OM Namah Shivaya*" relates to the formation of rational mind with the help of the will. In some future time we shall think of it.

One short allegory from the hermetic fragment known as Divine Pymander may be cited with its brief explanation indicating that the

1 SD, 1:233

2 SD, 1:233

manasaputras had passed through the human stage in previous Manvantaras acquiring the full capacity of manas. They are the seniors who have accomplished in the previous Manvantaras; they know how to use the mind in its fullest capacity.

*"We find, in short, that the higher Angels had broken, countless eons before, through the 'Seven Circles', and thus robbed them of the Sacred fire; which means in plain words, that they had assimilated during their past incarnations, in lower as well as in higher worlds, all the wisdom therefrom — the reflection of Mahat in its various degrees of intensity."*¹

These are the ones who have accomplished up to the Absolute in the previous Manvantaras. They are the accomplished ones; we are in the process. And there are many more behind us, many more ahead of us, and we are countless. The esoteric doctrine says that all these countless monads are identified with numbers. Imagine, how they are able to do it!

Evolution through experience

*"No Entity, whether angelic or human, can reach the state of Nirvana, or of absolute purity, except through eons of suffering and the knowledge of evil and of good, as otherwise the latter remains incomprehensible."*²

They suffer both good and bad. They know about both aspects of it, meaning the monad has gained complete experience of the whole part — they know pain, they know pleasure, they know ignorance, they know knowledge, they also know why people indulge in acts of ignorance. They do not become offended when people do acts of ignorance. On the contrary they say, "At a point of time, we too did the same mistakes." That is the beauty of a teacher; he says, "I did as many mistakes as you did but through experience I have slowly overcome. So, you too will overcome." Mistakes are not seen with a punitive attitude by the teachers. They are seen with compassion because they were also at one time mortals, they also suffered every ignorance that is suffered by every monad on his journey. The difference is in detail but the general stations are all common. That is why they carry all that compassion and guide every monad from that state where the monad is. They do not condemn because there is nothing to be condemned.

1 SD, 2:80-81

2 SD, 2:81

All is moving according to a plan of evolution. Manvantara after Manvantara, monads evolve through experience. They gain the knowledge of evil as well of good, as otherwise, the value of good is not understood unless the evil is experienced. The value of food is not understood unless one suffers hunger. The value of riches is not understood when no one suffers poverty. Poverty teaches the value of money. Hunger teaches the value of food. Ignorance teaches the value of knowledge. The teachers went through all of these experiences. Hence, they are the right ones to teach, because they can understand our problems. Today, although they are angelic, the memory of these experiences remains with them, and hence they are compassionate. Gaining an understanding of the esoteric philosophy's teaching in regard to the awakening of mind depends upon how well one is able to interpret the allegories — either in the form of a familiar Biblical story, the Greek legend, the Hindu allegories, or through the story of the fallen angels.

*"The legend of 'Fallen Angels' in its esoteric signification, contains the key to the manifold contradictions of human character; it points to the secret of man's self-consciousness; it is the angle-iron on which hinges his entire life-cycle; — the history of his evolution and growth."*¹

With the advent of mind, man is distinguished from the rest of the species in the sense he is self-conscious and has a possibility for evolution and possibility for growth.

*"On a firm grasp of this doctrine depends the correct understanding of esoteric anthropogenesis. It gives a clue to the vexed question of Origin of Evil; and shows how man himself is the separator of the One into various contrasted aspects."*²

With the advent of manas, man becomes self-conscious, and man also becomes the one with freewill. And as per the state of his awareness, he keeps on doing the contrary things and this provides contrast. The crux of the situation rests upon the understanding of the functioning of the mind principle — manas before and after its awakening.

This is evident in the Stanzas of Dzyan, for in an early sloka (Stanza), immediately following the description of the first appearance of humanity, in this fourth Round on the D globe, the question is asked:

¹ SD, 2:274

² SD, 2:274

*"How are the manushya born? The manus with minds, how are they made?"*¹

The term manushya is derived from the Sanskrit verbal root "*man*". The word "*man*" means mind. "*Man*" also means to think. Hence, the one with mind is a thinking being. Note the repetition of the word "*manas*" — signifying the functioning of the mind principle with the organ of thinking. "*Man*" means the mind, the organ of thinking. "*Manas*" means the principle of thinking. Mind is the organ but the principle thinks in varieties of ways. The word "*Manu*" also has the meaning of man as well as thinking being. The root of all these words is "*man*".

The sloka continues to explain that although the lunar pitris brought forth what they possessed, they were not able to endow humans with the ability to use the thinking principle in a self-conscious manner or with the process of intellection.

*"'Living Fire' was needed, that fire which gives the human mind, its self-perception and self-consciousness, or Manas; and the progeny of Parvaka and Suchi are the animal electric and solar fires, which create animals, and could thus furnish but a physical living constitution to that first astral model of man."*² This is very similar to the Greek legend of Prometheus carrying the fire of the gods to man.



Prometheus carrying fire

1 SD, 2:17

2 SD, 2:102

Preparation of Man

The next Sloka or Stanza of Dzian continues in an allegorical manner to narrate how man was prepared by enumerating all of man's principles — except manas, the living fire, which is regarded as being absent, but in the sense inactive, until the period of Third Human Wave. Until the period of Third Human Wave, manas was dormant, mind was dormant, the thinking principle was dormant, and progress is in a kind of sleep or slumber without much thinking. The progress through the plant and animal is in slumber until the mind becomes active.

Birth of manas is a second descent, when man becomes separate from the totality of consciousness, thereby becoming self-conscious and gains individual identity. Just imagine that we are all in sleep and we keep dreaming. That is the slumber. In sleep the atma and buddhi are there, the body is there, and the manas is at rest. During the wakeful hours, the third letter manifests. That is why in the initial classes, it is said that among the four letters, only two letters are formed. They are not really formed, because they are there already. To them, the fourth letter, the body, is given. But then they cannot relate to the body and to the surroundings. Once, the manas principle comes forth, they become conscious of their objective existence. In sleep, we do not relate to anything in the surrounding. So that self-conscious thinking principle was not active until the fifth Hierarchy came into action. And that is what is called the manasaputras conducting this work to enable us to gain identity and to express ourselves outwardly.

*"The breath (human Monad) needed a form; the Fathers gave it. The breath needed a gross body; the Earth moulded it. The breath needed the Spirit of Life; the Solar Lhas breathed it into its form. The breath needed a vehicle of desires (Kama Rupa); 'It has it,' said the Drainer of Waters (Suchi, the fire of passion and animal instinct). The breath needs a mind to embrace the Universe; 'We cannot give that,' said the Great (solar) Fire... (nascent) Man remained an empty, senseless Bhuta... Thus have the boneless given life to those who became (later) men with bones in the third (race) (a)."*¹

The breath needed a form. The breath means the monad with atma and buddhi. The lunar pitris gave it. The breath needed a gross body. The terrestrial spirits moulded it. Lunar pitris are the Sixth Hierarchy; terres-

trial spirits are the Seventh Hierarchy. The breath needed the spirit of life. The solar pitris breathed it into the form. The breath needed a mirror of its body — astral shadow. Then the dhyanis said, *"We gave it our own."* The breath needed a vehicle of desire. *"It has it,"* said the Drainer of Waters, which is called Suchi in Sanskrit, meaning the fire of passion. The breath needed a mind to embrace the universe. *"We cannot give that,"* said the Fathers. *"I never had it,"* said the spirit of the Earth. *"The form would be consumed were I to give it mine,"* said the Great Fire.

Man remained an empty, senseless bhuta, just form. This is how Madam Blavatsky expressed the state before manasaputras. Everything is there except the principle of mind through which you can embrace everything. This is the situation until the Third Human Wave. I read this passage again:

The breath, which is atman with its buddhi, needed a form; the fathers, that is lunar pitris, the sixth Hierarchical group, gave it. The breath wanted a form. They said, *"Okay, we give you the form."* The breath needed a gross body. The Earth, the spirit of the seventh hierarchical group, moulded it. The breath needed the spirit of life. Life is there even in the amoeba — we have seen in the First Human Wave this explanation. The solar gods breathed life into the form. The breath needed a mirror of its body, that is linga sarira which is called the causal body. First the etheric body, then the causal body, the physical body, the body of light, these are all given. The first represents the etheric body coming from the lunar pitris. The second is the physical body coming from the spirits of the Earth. The third is the spirit of life, i.e., the vital body, coming from the solar gods. Then the breath needed a causal body and the dhyanis gave it. Dhyanis are the contemplative ones. The breath needed a vehicle of desires. The fire of passion, the animal instinct, gave it. And we have the desire body. Then breath needed a mind to embrace the universe. *"We cannot give that,"* said the fathers. Who are the fathers? Fathers are the lunar pitris. *"We never had it,"* said the spirit of Earth. The lunar pitris said, *"We are not permitted to give that. We are incapable of giving it."* The spirits of the Earth said, *"We never had it."* *"The form would be consumed if I were to give it,"* said the great solar fire. *"If I gave you that kind of mind, which is mind because it is cosmic mind, the forms that you have, they would be consumed."*

The physical body and the fire of knowledge when it comes forth creates transformations to the physical body, and death to desire body. There is death to many things. And ultimately all bodies are consumed and you would only remain a fire. That's why the Biblical saying, *"Our God is all consuming fire."* It is called parvaka, fire. So, man remained an empty, senseless bhuta. Until the Third Human Wave, that was the situation of the monads going through the Manvantara, until the advent of the manasaputras.

A commentary following the closing words of sloka 18 should be considered here for clarity. *"The Sons of the Sun and of the Moon, the nursing of ether (or the wind)..."*¹

So the monads are the sons of the Sun and the Moon. And they are being nursed by the wind. *"The 'Father' of primitive physical man, or of his body, is the vital electric principle residing in the Sun."*²

Essentially, we are electrical. Father is son, the electrical principle residing in the Sun is the father of the man. *"The Moon is its Mother, because of that mysterious power in the Moon which has as decided an influence upon human gestation and generation, which it regulates, as it has on the growth of plants and animals."*³

Just like it regulates the growth of animals and plants through gestations and generations, the Moon influences the body. *"The 'Wind' or Ether, standing in this case for the agent of transmission by which those influences are carried down from the two luminaries and diffused upon Earth, is referred to as the 'nurse'; while 'Spiritual Fire' alone makes of man a divine and perfect entity."*⁴

So, the monad is there, the body is there, the life is there, the desire is there, everything is there except the thinking principle without which evolution is not possible. That is what came forth in the Third Human Wave. As may be expected, it is the commentaries upon the Stanzas of Dzyan which provide the clues enabling one to understand the allegorical slokas. Attention is called to the fact that already in the Second Wave, the lofty sons of wisdom were performing their divine labour of compassion. Although the mindless beings were not ready for enlightenment, which was

1 SD, 2:109

2 SD, 2:105

3 SD, 2:105

4 SD, 2:105

achieved during next human cycle, the work began in the Second Human Wave itself in the subtle level, and half-way through the Third Human Wave it was realized.

Following the citation, an explanatory paragraph points out what would have happened to the human wave had not the manasaputras or sons of Mahat quickened the saptaparna... Saptaparna means the sevenfold man.

This signifies that for the remaining portion cyclic pilgrimage of the human waves in Globe D as well as Globe E, F, and G, which is a time period occupying millions of years, mankind would probably have continued in a half-conscious or semi-conscious state.

And the enlightenment would not have occurred before the lowest point in the descending arc had been reached. What would have happened if the slumbering continued? That the beings continue dreaming all the time, not experiencing anything consciously, not working out anything consciously, not utilizing their will for self-progress. They could never have accomplished the evolution even if we had completed all the seven rounds on Globe D and even if you go to Globe E, F, and G. It is a case of unconscious or semi-conscious masses of monads, just moving through the wheel of time. The balance is struck between spirit and matter, then the ascending arc began.

Quickening of the human plant

In the words of the commentary in the Book of Dzyan, *"The Sons of Mahat are the quickeners of human Plant. They are the Waters falling upon the arid soil of latent life, and the Spark that vivifies the human animal. They are the Lords of Spiritual Life eternal... In the beginning (in the Second Wave), some (of the Lords) only breathed of their essence into Manushya (men); and some took in man their abode."*¹

Into some they breathed in the principle of mind during the Second Wave. So, they started the work in the Second Wave itself. And into some abodes, they, the sons of cosmic mind, entered themselves.

"This shows that not all men became incarnations of the 'divine Rebels,' but only a few among them. The remainder had their fifth prin-

1 SD, 2:103

*ciple simply quickened by this spark thrown into it, which accounts for the great difference between the intellectual capacities of men and races. Had not the 'sons of Mahat', speaking allegorically, skipped the intermediate worlds, in their impulse toward intellectual freedom, the animal man would never have been able to reach upward from this earth, and attain through self-exertion his ultimate goal."*¹

When the monads were moving eternally in slumber, in a semi-conscious state, some of those high beings rebelled. They did not want to enter into that general theme of movement. They rebelled and wanted to quicken the process. They gave that impulse to some monads who were able to receive it. And they could themselves be born in these forms to enable self-will, self-exertion, and thereby enabling the ascent from the Earth, to reach upward from this Earth, and attain through self-exertion the ultimate goal.

*"The cyclic pilgrimage would have to be performed through all the planes of existence half unconsciously, if not entirely so, as in the case of the animals. It is owing to this rebellion of intellectual life against the morbid inactivity of pure spirit, that we are what we are — self-conscious, thinking men, with the capabilities and attributes of Gods in us, for good as much as evil."*²

That is how, in the Third Human Wave when freedom came through, people expressed for good and also for evil. Just in our own case, we use the third centre, the throat centre, both ways, because the freedom of self-will is there. There are people who use the throat for constructive purposes, there are others who use it for destructive purposes, and there are still others who use it to confuse people. It is the worst category, the ones that confuse! Either good or bad, if it is clear, it is understandable. When it is very misty, it makes things difficult.

The Hyperborean continent

As well as having a homeland, they also had some more land for their generation. The first land is the Imperishable Sacred Land. The second land is the Hyperborean continent.

1 SD, 2:103

2 SD, 2:103

*"The 'Hyperborean' will be the name chosen for the Second Continent, the land which stretched out its promontories southward and westward from the North Pole to receive the Second Race, and comprised the whole of what is now known as Northern Asia."*¹

The first land is near the North Pole. The second land is Hyperborean. The second continent was Northern Asia where the Second Wave slowly inhabited.

*"Such was the name given by the oldest Greeks to the far-off and mysterious region, whither their tradition made Apollo the 'Hyperborean' travel every year."*²

The word "Hyperborean" was not the name of that continent at that time. The Greeks called that land Hyperborean. That is why it is said Hyperborean "*will be*" the name chosen for the second continent in some distant future. Apollo is the Sun God. There was a year of travel for Apollo. Every year he goes there and comes back. That is what they said.

*"Astronomically, Apollo is of course the Sun, who, abandoning the Hellenic sanctuaries, loved to visit annually his far-away country, where the Sun was said never to set for one half of the year."*³

Just like the Germans and Spanish go to Argentina or Brazil, Apollo was said to be going to a far-off land in Northern Asia which is Hyperborean land. The Greeks said that every year Apollo (the Sun) goes to that far-away country, meaning in his northern course he goes to the northernmost point in June, summer solstice in the Northern hemisphere. For the Greeks, it was a far-away place. "*Hellenic sanctuaries*" are Greek sanctuaries. Apollo went to the North Pole, where there is light for six months around summer solstice, followed by six months of night. That land, which Apollo was visiting every year, was called Hyperborea in Greek mythology.

*"But, historically, or better, perhaps, ethnologically and geologically, the meaning is different. The land of the Hyperboreans, the country that extended beyond Boreas, the frozen-hearted god of snows and hurricanes, who loved to slumber heavily on the chain of Mount Rhiphaeus, was neither an ideal country, as surmised by the mythologists, nor yet a land in the neighbourhood of Scythia and the Danube."*⁴

1 SD, 2:7

2 SD, 2:7

3 SD, 2:7

4 SD, 2:7

Boreas was the proximate land around the North Pole which was full of snow. “Bear” is the word coming from Borea. Mount Rhiphaeus is the name they gave to the Meru. This is all Greek terminology.



Hyperborea

According to the Secret Doctrine, this second continent was a real continent.

“It was a real Continent, a bona-fide land which knew no winter in those early days, nor have its sorry remains more than one night and day during the year, even now.”¹

You see North Asia today and it is no doubt around the North Pole. But that was the time where this land had no snow or hurricanes. That land was very habitable for the simple reason that as Earth formed its South Pole, the North Pole was moving like a half orange around the Sun. If you see a half orange or half apple with its stem, the stem is like the North

¹ SD, 2:7

Pole. If the North Pole is oriented to the Sun, it keeps moving around the Sun and moving around itself. So, it always receives the Sun. Where is the question of it receiving the Sun once in six months and having only day time for six months and night time for six months? It does not exist. That time and the lands were very different from what they are now. You know the desert in Asia which we call Siberia. That area was once very habitable. Today, people are sent to Siberia for punishment.

Hyperborea was the land around the North Pole; it was full of habitation, with agreeable weather conditions, and with enough warmth of the Sun coming unlike what you see now of that land. Naturally, Apollo, the Sun, was said to be going there. If you see now, once a year there is one day, on summer solstice, where there is twenty-four hours of Sun at the North Pole. Likewise, at the South Pole. But that is the situation now, and not at that earlier time. The rest of the land was still semi-liquid and semi-solid. And the placement of the Earth was not as we think it is today. Most of our thinking is incorrect because we assume the planet long ago was the same as it is today. That is why the Secret Doctrine says that even though Greek mythology speaks of this land, their explanation of that land in the mythology is not correct (that it is full of hurricanes, full of snow, etc.,) and that Apollo went there once a year. That part is not correct but the Hyperborean continent and the area they identified is correct.

*"The nocturnal shadows never fall up on it, said the Greeks; for it is called the land of the Gods, the favourite abode of Apollo, the god of light, and its inhabitants are his beloved priests and servants."*¹

The second continent is a land of light. Even today, Trans-Himalayan regions are seen as abodes of gods. Of course, the region around the North Pole is the Imperishable Land where the most high stay. This second continent, Hyperborea, was the favourite abode of Apollo, the God of light, and its inhabitants are his beloved priests and servants — meaning they were all sun worshippers to start with. Sun worship was the ancient-most worship. Worshipping the Sun, worshipping the light and the life beyond is the ancient-most worship. The Gayatri also is a worship of the solar energy, solar life, solar light. Those traditions have become extinct in recent years. In the West or in the East, the foremost God was Sun called "RA".

*"This may be regarded as poetised fiction now; but it was poetised truth then."*¹

That the inhabitants of the second continent, the priests, are beloved and favoured by the Sun. Madam Blavatsky is saying that it may look like a poetized presentation today, but it was poetized truth then. That was the truth. They were all worshipping the Sun, oriented towards the soul.

In addition to being known as boneless, another name for the Second Human Wave is the sweat-born. The reason for this is explained in this Stanza of Dzyan.

*"The early Second (Root) Race were the Fathers of the 'Sweat-born'; the later Second (Root) Race were 'Sweat-born' themselves."*²

The First Wave were the fathers of the sweat-born. They were born by the division and merger, etc. That was the early wave. Later, they were born through sweat only, sweat in the sense born out of moist.

How this sweat generated was discussed in the story of the seer Kandu — how heat generates the related moist from the clay aspect of the matter, and for that heat generation there was the sense of touch, where the seer Kandu was attracted to Pramlocha. I wonder how many remember! This Human Wave seminar came to be on the basis of the questions arising last year where I spoke about the Sun with his spiritual wife going abroad. She left him and sent her shade, chhaya. From thinking that the shade is the wife, the Sun begets children. This is how there was a story relating to the First Human Wave. In the Second Human Wave we have the story of Kandu.

What I am trying to do this time is to avoid stories presented in any theology but go by the general terminology so that it is easy to understand. But nevertheless, something Greek entered in. We are presenting the matter in general terminology, not through the Vedic terminology or any other terminology. That way you can understand better. That is also the approach of Master Djwhal Khul because when we use names in Hindu mythology, then you need to know the symbolism behind them. For instance, Kandu means desire. Kandu is the itch. Itch is the basis for desire. Itching is not only relating to the skin — the itching is in the mind. I also spoke of the Mexican goddess Itch, and the Vedic goddess Itcha, that brings things down. The stories are all given as if they are two — a male

1 SD, 2:7

2 SD, 2:117

and a female. But the names give the clue. We should study the names and the symbolism through the key of etymology.

To review, the later part of the Second Human Wave that came through were born out of sweat. The early part was born out of cell division. That means the later part was the budding part. Like that, they were born.

“The ‘Sons of Yoga’, or the primitive astral race, had seven stages of evolution racially, or collectively; as every individual Being in it had, and has now.”¹

The sons of yoga go through all the stages of evolution. The beings experience the seven stages and in the later part of the evolution they move onward. It is all relevant when it comes to the Third Human Wave. The sons of yoga come up when there is the Third Human Wave. Having completed its seven stages of development by means of its seven minor waves, the Second Human Wave gave place to the Third Human Wave.

“The ever-blooming lands of the Second Continent (Greenland, among others) were transformed, in order, from Edens with their eternal spring, into hyperborean Hades.”²

Here Madam Blavatsky also speaks of Greenland. When you place around the equator a disk in a convex form on all sides — on east, west, north, and south sides — then you have Greenland. That is why Madam Blavatsky says “Greenland, among others.” It was an ever-blooming land at that time. When the second continent was full of life, it was like the Eden Garden. When the Third Human Wave came this land is abandoned. That is why it became Hades. The ever-blooming lands of the second continent were transformed in a particular order from Edens’ with their eternal spring — in their zenith it was Eden — into hyperborean Hades, meaning uninhabitable, abandoned because the climatic conditions changed. Today, we see the Greenland as only a drawing on the map.

“This transformation was due to the displacement of the great waters of the globe, to oceans changing their beds; and the bulk of the Second Race perished in this first great throe of the evolution and consolidation of the globe during the human period.”³

1 SD, 2:117

2 SD, 2:138

3 SD, 2:138

Between the Second Human Wave and the Third Human Wave, there was consolidation of the globe. Until then, the globe was not consolidated. It was semi-liquid, semi-solid, clay-like. And its placement was not as you think today. That is why the northern portion with its vortex that is the North Pole to be, was moving around the Earth like a dish antenna. When the solidification happened, the land was still exposed to the Sun. By the heaviness of the southern hemisphere, Earth turns to be somewhat vertical, so the waters were all displaced, and the climatic conditions totally changed. So, the place became no more habitable. The oceans changed their beds and the bulk of the Second Wave perished. That is where Madam Blavatsky says the blue wave disappeared. Then what happens? Nothing will happen. They will come back in the form of the beings of the Third Human Wave. The monad is being given different forms.

According to the formation of the Earth, the body formations also have to change. Generally, the change is very gradual. Between last century to this century, there is a great change in the body constitution of man but little is realised. The children of this century are different from the children of the last century — they are more agile, more active, and have better perceptions. They are more Aquarian in their qualities — very fast. We are too Piscean to them. Like that, changes happen gradually but changes can also happen suddenly. Here, it is a sudden change from the Second Wave to the Third Human Wave. Between the First Human Wave and the Second Human Wave it was a gradual and concurrent change. While the First was still in appearance, the Second came in like a second stream into which the first stream merged and the first became the inner of the second, and the second became the outer of the first. The First and the Second together fold themselves into the Third through death. In the earliest state it was through gradual transformation. Here, the change is sudden, and through death. In the cryptic words of the Stanza,

"The self-born were the Chhayas, the shadows from the bodies of the sons of twilight. Neither water nor fire could destroy them. But their sons were (so destroyed)."

The second born were destroyed. Destroyed means their forms were destroyed — so, they assumed new forms.

Faster learning through suffering and hate

The choice is left to man once the will is given, once the thinking principle is given. That's why to all other species, the evolution is automatic but slow; it is an unconscious evolution. To man, it is conscious evolution. But then at the same time, a danger also awaits him that he can do conscious acts which would hinder his evolution. So, having freedom has its own peril. Today, we wish to give freedom. Parents give freedom to children. If the child is self-regulated, he moves in the direction of further development. If he is not, he is taken by the sweep of the world. So, should we, or should we not? Out of love for beings, we keep giving freedom. So the manasaputras thought they should help us by giving this freewill and the ability to think. Then the responsibility becomes ours. The consequences are ours. That is how the whole game took a different turn. Earlier the beings were like sheep. They were all moving together in a dream state. Now, there were some self-willed sheep. So, it was for them to decide. So, the decision happened in a variety of ways. Some took to the activity of evolution. Some took to other activity. Thus, duality appeared.

*"It is owing to this rebellion of intellectual life against the morbid inactivity of pure spirit, that we are what we are — self-conscious, thinking men, with the capabilities and attributes of Gods in us, for good as much as evil. Hence the rebels are our saviours. Let the philosopher ponder well over this, and more than one mystery will become clear to him. It is only by the attractive forces of contrasts that the two opposites — Spirit and Matter — can be cemented on Earth, and, smelted in the fire of self-conscious experience and suffering, find themselves wedded in Eternity. This will reveal the meaning of many hitherto incomprehensible allegories, foolishly called 'fables'."*¹

Let them gain their own experience — the acts of good and the acts of evil — and that experience will make them wise.

In the very initial stages of teaching, I used to give a four step evolution. First, it is a state of foolishness, and then from foolishness to experiment, and from experiment to experience, from experience to wisdom. This is how man moves. If he is foolish, let him be foolish. He will learn out of his foolishness. If out of foolishness, I put my finger into the flame, I

learn that I should never do that again. Would I do it again if once I put my finger into the flame to see what it is? To do it again is an experiment emerging out of foolishness. Then I experience suffering. And through that suffering I learn that one should not put his finger into the flame. That is already a settled wisdom. So, if people are foolish, let them be. In a few incarnations, they get the related experience. And that experience will settle down as wisdom. But without any self-conscious thinking entity, the monads would not learn and they would not ascend.

People learn the laws, people follow the regulations coming from the manasaputras because that is the Hierarchy of Teachers. They give yoga, they give Bhagavad Gita, and they give the commandments, various things at various places. There are some who follow consciously, comprehending the commandments, and there are others who rebel against it. For the manasaputras, the rebels are as interesting as the followers, because sometimes the rebels learn faster, because through their rebellious attitudes they sometimes jump into greater fires and through greater suffering and repentance, they return and their inherent will to work will help them thereafter. That is how men who were bandits, killers, or sexually indulgent men, suddenly turned out to be great saints because even to do acts of great evil, what is important is the will. Only men of strong will can produce so much evil. So, the will is strong in them. If the will receives the right direction through a process of suffering, sometimes they step upon the ladder of evolution faster.

There is a saying in Bhagavata that there are many who reached the Lord earlier through hate rather than through love. Through love, you move slowly. Through hate, you move fast. The ones whom you hate enter into your mind even if you do not want to think about them. You continuously think of people whom you do not like. If you understand the psychology - the person whom you hate is continuously present in your mind. He is present much deeper than the person whom you love. That energy of hate develops a continuity. There are beings who were in such hatred of God that they were constantly thinking of God through their hate. They were breathing the divine through hatred. So, they invite the divinity — either through hate or through love. You invite only that which you think. When hate is stronger than love, which is so very clear for a human being of the Kali Age, you tend to be divine suddenly. Such dimen-

sions are also revealed in Bhagavata and in the life of Krishna. Tomorrow, I will narrate a story relating to this and later continue the work of manasaputras.

Thank you.



14. The Constitution of Man

The soul and the fourfold body

The birth of the mind principle is the inauguration of an era for terrestrial experience without which the whole journey on the planet would be without any experience whatsoever. The souls, which are essentially atma and buddhi, are enveloped in a body which is fourfold: physical, chhaya, prana, and causal, i.e., the light of the soul. The physical body is based on a design called chhaya, shadow; the body has the potential to fulfil desires with the desire body. These bodies are the vehicles through which man can find his expression on the planet while also gaining a self-identity. It is like being in a game or being in a movie as an actor. The various roles enacted by the actors are not real, but if all of them have the same conduct, same dialogues, and same movements, then it is not a movie at all. Likewise, in a game, say football, if all are goal keepers, it is no game. If all are front players, it is no game. If all are backward support, it is no game. The forward left, the forward right, the rear right, the rear left, and the one who leads from the centre — all this variety makes the game an experience. At the buddhic level they are all one. But at the playing level, at the terrestrial level, they are many. This is what needs to be accomplished if we have the terrestrial experience. Otherwise, it is like being in a dream, i.e., without self-consciousness. It also means having a separated consciousness to relate to the terrestrial existence.

To relate the atma and buddhi to the body, and then to relate to the objectivity, there was a need for another fire which was not expressed till the Third Human Wave. That fire is called manas, the thinking principle, the self-consciousness principle, which can think by itself and which has the ability to act and thereby manifest. The status of atma-buddhi is that of a resplendent being unrelated to anything. The awareness is not related to its surroundings. The being is on Earth but does not relate to Earth. He is in the body but does not relate to the body. It means that, in fact, he did not enter into the body or land on Earth. It is like a bird

which did not develop the legs — it cannot land. So, the creation of Earth and the creation of the body did not mean anything to the souls till the fire called manas was expressed. Hence, without the fire of manas, there was no scope for evolution. Evolution comes through self-conscious experience. Unconscious experience is no experience. Even semi-conscious experience is not a complete experience. We should be fully conscious of what we are experiencing. We needed one more fire for being fully conscious.

There is the fire of the Seventh Hierarchy by which the physical body is prepared on the basis of the chhaya body given by the lunar pitris, the Sixth Hierarchy. There is the monad with atma, the spirit, and its resplendent light. The enveloped spirit is called buddhi. It is a luminous pulsating entity and is considered to be a double fire. And there is the fire coming from the chhaya body and the physical body. Then it needed life, so a body of life was given. Desire was also implanted. But still, the indweller did not relate to the desire, nor to the body, nor to the objectivity. That was the crisis. They were all guided by the wind and were just floating. That linkup had to be given. It means giving self-will, self-action, and self-knowledge which can be accomplished through linking up the indweller to the fourfold body. It is two in four: the soul is two fires, and the four-fold body is four fires. One fire was missing. Until that fire is supplied, it is not complete — in the sense that the indweller cannot relate to the abode, and cannot relate to the objectivity.

Learning through trial and error

This linking fire is called the thinking principle. There is also an organ for it. The organ is “man”, Sanskrit for mind. Its principle is “manas”, to think. That is how Sanskrit distinguishes “man” from “manas.” We are all called manushyas, because we carry the thinking principle. This thinking principle is what is being created by the manasaputras, the sons of cosmic mind. There was much discussion about it because once this manas is given, man will be of seven fires and therefore becomes a complete image of the Creator. He can use the will, he can use the knowledge, and he can act by himself. So, will he act in tune with the plan or will he act otherwise? When the prisoners are given freedom, what will they do? We are all called

prisoners of the planet. It is risky to release the prisoners, because they can be self-destructive, and they may not evolve as planned. There were pros and cons of bestowing the mind. The conservatives could not allow such thing to happen. But there were the rebels who said, *"Let us give it. Let us allow them to expose and let them experience. And let them learn through experience."* Mind you, the process is the same on any Earth globe. The conservatives said, *"If someone is given such capabilities as are equivalent to the divinity, unless there is adequate responsibility, bestowing power would lead to chaos, would lead to crisis, and would lead to destruction."*

Then the sons of mind argued, *"If it is so, let it be so. Let them learn by their fights. Let them learn by their wars. Let them learn from their foolishness. Let them learn through experience, without which there is no solution for growth. They have come up of age and they should be given freedom. Freedom is responsibility. So, we teach responsibility and we let them free. Those who work out their freedom with responsibility will move forward and become examples to others. And those who feel only the power of freedom and do not feel responsible, would bind themselves with their own acts of ignorance. And through a process of pain and a process of suffering, they will learn that that is not the way. Let them learn through trial and error. Let them know what mistake is, what right action is, and what wrong action is. Let us also inform them what right action is, what wrong action is, and let them free."* To bestow power on the ignorant is like giving a sharp instrument to an infant.

Ultimately, the sons of mind rebelled and did the job. Consequently, man gained the will and the related freedom. Thereafter, the activity of human beings is in contrast. Not all have the same way of action, and not all have the same way of thinking and acting. That difference happened because when they came onto the planet from a previous Manvantara and from a previous planet, they have already gained experience up to a point. They now have to continue from the point where they left off — just like we continue today from the point where we left off yesterday. So, according to the inbuilt evolution, the beings started behaving from the point where they left off, so that they could complete their experience.

Polygenesis

Elsewhere in the Secret Doctrine, Madame Blavatsky writes about polygenesis — that seven human groups were produced on seven different portions depending upon the degree of their perfection. The oneness of origin is not disputed but different classes or degrees of perfection were achieved by men in the previous Manvantaras and consequently on the basis of their action, related experiences were gained in the past. In the meanwhile, there was a suspension of activity. The action was incomplete, and the experience was incomplete. To complete the action and thereby complete the experience, another planet is created and the souls are equipped with bodies. When they are given the mind principle, they start from where they previously left off.

Ascending to unity

This happens to us every night. What is happening to us in sleep? Atma-buddhi is very much there, body is there, but the mind principle is withdrawn. As we wake up in the morning hours, the mind principle returns, we recollect the actions relating to yesterday, and try to find a logical continuation of yesterday's activities today. In the same manner, when the mind principle was bestowed there were contrasts in actions by the humans. And through contrasts, they learn. That is how the contrast is there in human action. It is only by the attractive forces of the contrasts that the two opposites — spirit and matter — can be cemented and melted in the fire of self-conscious experience.

Self-conscious experience is a kind of fire. Every monad would melt itself in that fire, which can be an experience of suffering or an experience of pleasure, and ultimately find themselves wedded in eternity and learn their original be-ness. Be-ness is there, and its functioning in duality is there. The sons of mind said, *“Let the whole reality be learned likewise. Let them not continue to live in contrast. Let the unity of the diversity be learnt. Then they will find the golden middle path recognizing the actions of contrasts of humanity as a reality on the planet, and ascend to that unity from where the whole thing is seen more as a contrast than as conflict.”*

In every conflict, there is a contrast, and both sides keep learning through that contrast. Learning through experience is the ultimate objective. That is why even to Adam, the two sons that are born, Abel and Cain, are of contrast.

In every mythology, the two opposing forces emerge from the same source. To one king, there would be a queen of darkness and a queen of light; or to a priest, there would be two wives, one is mundane, and the other one is spiritual. All these stories of the triangular activity of one becoming two and then producing the contrast indicate that point in evolution where there was birth of mind and self-consciousness. If you study all these allegories, you would not take sides, rejecting one in favour of the other. It is trying to see the taking of sides.

Just like for the light to manifest, there is the positive current and the negative current. Which of the two is more important? All the theists speak of the positive current as the most important, while the atheists speak of the negative current. The theories of theists and atheists put together is the complete doctrine. There is AC current and DC current. Which of the two is important for manifestation of light? Why do you fight that one is more important than the other? How can spirit find any expression without matter and how can matter express anything without spirit? Why condemn matter in favour of spirit? Why the negation of spirit in favour of matter? These are all arising out of inadequate exposure. Which of the two sides of the coin make the coin? These are the thoughts that one has to think of.

With our likes and dislikes, we decide what is good and what is bad. What we dislike is bad, and what we like is good. But what is good and what is bad keeps changing. Coolness in summer is acceptable. Warmth in winter is acceptable. Through changing times, it changes what is acceptable. When there is appetite in the stomach, food is acceptable. When there is no appetite, food is not acceptable. There is a time when we like food, and there is a time when we do not like food. People with diarrhea and vomiting cannot like food. But is that permanent? Once the stomach situation changes, the dislikes become likes again. In changing situations, we adapt to changing patterns. But beyond these contrasts, there is the latent gaining of experience.

The middle principle

Man tends towards perfection through experiences. To experience, one has to be self-conscious. Without being self-conscious, you cannot experience anything. Self-consciousness is provided by the thinking principle. It becomes a perfect unit when it links up with atma and buddhi, and conducts through the body. However, if it links up with the body of four fires, with itself as the fifth fire, and forgets atma and buddhi, then it tends to be otherwise. If it relates to atma and buddhi and conducts through the body, it serves the purpose of its existence. But if it does not link up with the two higher fires and links up only with the four lower fires, then it tends to do acts of ignorance. And through a process of exposure and related experience, it learns. This essential step has to be understood.

At this point, the Book of Dzian itself may be brought forward to show the necessity for the functioning of the middle principle in the sevenfold human constitution. Where would man be without the life of thinking? Without his ability to create, he would be but a chhaya, a shadow, with no sense, as the concluding words of sloka sixteen aptly explain the condition. The atman is just breath, which is not yet discrete. The atman is inseparable. The same principle is pulsating as a unit of pulsation. It cannot feel itself as separated. It cannot be separated from its source. The upadhi, the vehicle of the atman... Upadhi in Sanskrit means vehicle and vehicle in Sanskrit is also vahana. The sound "vah" stands for "to bear, to carry". This atman is carried by buddhi, its light.

Buddhi, termed as vahana in Sanskrit, is a vehicle which is boneless in the sense that by itself it cannot act — it needs something else to act for it. It is like being a wise man with no strong executive capacity. Any wise man needs an executive. Just good ideas do not mean anything. There has to be someone to comprehend the advice and execute the action. That is why in the olden days, there was a priest and a king. The priest is the advisor, and the king is the executive. The priest is buddhi and the king is manas. And he (manas) could rule over the kingdom with the help of buddhi. The executive capacity is called kriya sakti. Kriya sakti means the power of action. The power of action is important to manifest and to experience. But power of action by itself is nothing without the wisdom of buddhi.

*"Says the Book of Dzyan with regard to the primeval man when first projected by the 'Boneless,' the incorporeal Creator: 'First, the Breath, then Buddhi, and the Shadow-Son (the Body) were 'created.' But where was the pivot (the middle principle, Manas)? Man is doomed. When alone, the indiscrete (undifferentiated Element) and the Vahan (Buddhi) — the cause of the causeless — break asunder from manifested life' — 'unless cemented and held together by the middle principle, the vehicle of the personal consciousness of Jiva'; explains the Commentary."*¹

According to Book of Dzyan, man is shadow son, meaning son and shadow. But there was no pivot. Pivot means the middle principle. Man is doomed when he is not yet discrete. Unless he ventured with the middle principle, the soul cannot function. This is how it is said in the sixteenth Sloka of the Book of Dzyan. There is an additional explanation:

*"In other words, the two higher principles can have no individuality on Earth, cannot be man, unless there is (a) the Mind, the Manas-Ego, to cognize itself, and (b) the terrestrial false personality, or the body of egotistical desires and personal Will, to cement the whole, as if round a pivot (which it is, truly), to the physical form of man."*²

The great illusion

Atma and buddhi need something more to link with the terrestrial. There was no individuality on Earth and therefore man could not be man until there was mind — mind enables one to cognize itself. He needs a terrestrial false personality. It is a terrestrial personality. And although it is a "false personality", without it one cannot relate terrestrially. When you relate you lose your identity, which means it is false or entering into a shadow. That is why mind is called the great illusion. If you turn the mind one way it is illusion. If you turn it other way, it gives the experience of light. But unless you experience illusion, you do not know what the truth is. That is the beauty. You have to experiment with many other things to experience the right way. There is a beautiful interpretation of a strophe (Stanza) in the Bhagavad Gita concerning truth that the men of wisdom do not teach. They teach more about what is illusion. If you know what illusion is, then

1 SD, 2:241

2 SD, 2:241

what is left for you is truth. The other way is to teach the truth and to say that the rest is illusion. That is how the teaching can be taught in both ways. And the strophe was so well conceived in Sanskrit that it can be interpreted in both ways.

You need a personality to relate to Earth. But then this personality can cause so much illusion that you lose your original status. It is like a tight-rope walking. You need to hold on to the two higher fires and function with the four lower fires while staying in the mind. That is yoga. You need to hold onto the higher fires — i.e., atma and buddhi or the soul and its knowledge — and function with the help of the four fires of the body and gain the related experience. This is called the path of yoga. That means you stay in the middle principle of mind and relate both to spirit and to matter. You do not become a complete man if you try to escape from matter. Your experience is not complete.

The seers say, *“Deceived are those who go into the forest in pursuit of God without experiencing life.”* Those who just retire into the forest or retire from active life in the world are self-deceit. They do not experience anything. They do not gain the related experience and hence they do not have the necessary knowledge. One must become a yogi. A yogi is one who is equally effective on both sides. He is effective in the mundane world, and he is effective in the super-mundane world. He knows the path of the golden mean. It is an optimum situation. He is the master of mind. A master of mind is the one who utilizes the mind in both ways. It is a sword with two edges — on either side it is sharp. It is not blunt on one side.

Family life

That is what is being provided to man because divinity in itself has such knowledge. It has the knowledge of itself and it has the knowledge of its offspring called matter. That is why the Seven Seers, the Seven Rishis, the Seven Ray Masters, they all live in families. Only in the Kali Yuga you have examples of loners, unmarried people as great examples of divinity. All the seven seeds that are collected by Noah are seven pairs of seeds. The Seven Seers, Sapta Rishis, are all householders. They have their ladies, they have their children, they have their vocation, and they interact with society. They enjoy every aspect of life, both spiritual and mun-

dane, and stand as good examples to all. That is what Master Djwhal Khul says when he says, *"My disciples are in the hub of worldly activity. They are in the thick of worldly activity. They are in New York. They are in Tokyo. They are in Geneva. They are in London. They are not afraid of being in the worldly activity, but they remember that although they are not of the world, they are in the world."*

This statement is not anything new. It is the truth of the life of yoga. There can be no yogi who is ineffective in society. Many people take shelter in theism or in yoga because they are useless otherwise. All useless people gathering together and thinking of promoting yoga is no yoga. They are a very poor example of yoga. Krishna is a yogi. He was the king of yogis. He is called Yogeshwara, meaning he is the master of all yogis. He was effective in every aspect of life, including politics. Politics are not a barrier for disciples — you just need the right effectiveness, that's all. He was a politician, he was a statesman, he was a teacher, he was a ruler, he was an advisor, and he was a householder. Speak of any human dimension, and he demonstrated it. He wanted that everyone should be like him. Madam Blavatsky writes that all the Masters are in the physical bodies with their families in their ashrams. Essentially, the Seven Seers, whose progeny we are, are the role models for us. Only in the age of Kali is the whole theme distorted, giving a partisan, partial, and biased understanding.

Equate the spiritual and material in you and find the optimum experiences of life. The double triangle with you as the centre represents that optimum. That is what we need to understand. Mind is the principle to understand that. Mind holds everything together and balances the two plates in the scales. That is how it has to be worked out and for that you need mind. The terrestrial false personality is needed but you cannot get sucked into it. You have to regularly recollect your original identity. You should consciously step down into your personality on a daily basis, gain the related terrestrial experiences, and not get stuck with one thing or the other. That is what is being said with the beautiful framing of the phrase *"the terrestrial false personality, or the body of egotistical desires and personal Will, to cement the whole, as if round a pivot (which it is, truly), to the physical form of man."*¹ Around the mind, everything is contained and balanced: atma and buddhi on one side, and the fourfold body on the other side.

Seven fires

*"It is the Fifth and the Fourth principles — Manas and Kama rupa — that contain the dual personality: the real immortal Ego (if it assimilates itself to the two higher) and the false transitory personality, the mayavi or astral body, so-called, or the animal-human Soul — the two having to be closely blended for purposes of a full terrestrial experience."*¹

It is fifth and fourth when they come from above. Atma is the seventh; buddhi is the sixth; manas, the thinking principle, is the fifth; and it has a lieutenant called kama rupa, which is the fourth. The first thing to relate to the body is desire, kama rupa, the body of desire. This is where you get the story of Prachetas. We will come to those stories some other time.

Septenary Division in Different Indian Systems²

CLASSIFICATION IN ESOTERIC BUDDHISM.	VEDANTIC CLASSIFICATION.	CLASSIFICATION IN TARAKA RAJA YOGA.
1. Sthula Sarira.	Annamaya kosa.*	} Sthulopadhi. §
2. Prana.†	} Pranamaya kosa.	
3. The vehicle of Prana.‡		
4. Kama Rupa.	} Manomaya kosa.	} Sukshmopadhi.
5. Mind { (a) Volitions and feelings, etc.		
(b) Vignanam.	Vignanamaya kosa.	
6. Spiritual Soul.	Anandamaya kosa.	Karanopadhi.
7. Atma.	Atma.	Atma.

* Kosa (kosha) is "Sheath" literally, the sheath of every principle.

† "Life."

‡ The astral body or Linga Sarira.

§ Sthula-Upadhi, or basis of the principle.

|| Buddhi.

1 SD, 2:241-242

2 SD, 1:157

I think we have a theme for three to four years, when we study the constitution of man. Without knowing this, if we try to learn, to learn so many things, we would be groping in darkness. In a vast forest of light, we move like blind men when we do not know what constitutes ourselves. This manas, fifth principle or the fifth fire, relates to the foremost principle of the body which is the fourth fire. The fourth fire is desire, and there is a desire body. In the downward direction, the third fire is the body of life. The second is the body built by the lunar pitris. And the first one is the matter that is gathered around that magnetic body provided by the lunar pitris. These are the seven fires according to the Book of Dzyan. The terminology is different but every book of wisdom speaks of these seven fires.

Manas joining the kama rupa, the desire body, gains a dual function. On one side there is desire, and on the other side there is buddhi, the light of the soul. So, it has to hold the two sides. They have two different polarizations. Buddhi pulls you towards the spirit, atman. Desire pulls you towards the body and the terrestrial experience. You have to hold them together. For that you need strong hands. The mind has a subjective pull and an objective pull, two different polarizations — the left and the right. The left relates to the four bodies, the four fires. The right relates to the atma and buddhi. You stand in between and find an optimum balance. That is how the triangle is. The two angles when they are equal, the third angle is then reached.

“Incarnate the Spiritual Monad of a Newton grafted on that of the greatest saint on earth — in a physical body the most perfect you can think of — i.e., in a two or even three-principled body composed of its Sthula Sarira, prana (life principle), and linga sarira — and, if it lacks its middle and fifth principles, you will have created an idiot — at best a beautiful, soul-less, empty and unconscious appearance.”¹

This man of seven fires is the greatest saint on Earth, meaning he has all the potential to relate to the higher fires and then bring those fires down through mind which is called the Kingdom of God upon Earth. He can also cause ascent of the lower fires into the higher realms. That is how man becomes the greatest saint who can bring the fiery beings of higher spheres through the fire of mind into the lower rungs and through interaction he can also offer a touch to the lower species to enable them to ascend.

1 SD, 2:242

This is what is given in the Old Testament as the Jacob's Ladder. Jacob's Ladder enables descent of the superior fires to inferior fires and the ascent of the inferior fires to the superior fires. That is how man becomes the fulcrum. It is a great solution provided for the evolution of all the species through man. For this task, man must first be prepared. If man is able to express all his seven fires equally well, then he is a yogi. He is the fit instrument through which the divine plan can be achieved, because the higher forces or fires functioning through him are able to alleviate the lower kingdoms from their suffering, their imprisonment, their conditioning, and from their semi-conscious or unconscious state. That is how man becomes the path. Man is the path. That is the idea behind the words, *"I am the way,"* meaning, each one of us shall have to become the path for the beings to move either way. They can move through you to higher circles and the higher ones can come down through you. That is what the Hierarchy does. Everyone of us shall eventually become a member of the Hierarchy, replacing the present Hierarchy from their present responsibility so that they can assume higher responsibilities.

If someone assumes your responsibility you should feel glad, and not feel competition. If someone is able to do what you are doing, gladly entrust the tasks to him and move onto something higher. Why hang on? There is a natural chain of succession which you can step into. Otherwise, you can become stuck. If there is no one to assume your responsibility, you alone continue to do it. What did Atlas do when Hercules found him? Hercules said, *"Grandfather, shall I hold it for a while?"* Atlas immediately said, *"The pleasure is yours,"* and gave the responsibility to Hercules. The ones who have wisdom always look to someone to whom they can pass their work and wisdom on. It is a responsibility. They cannot pass on to undeserving and disabled ones and they hold on until an able one is found. It was not until Master Djwhal Khul came that Master Morya and Koot Humi were relieved of their responsibilities. When Master DK came in, they gladly entrusted the work to him and moved to higher responsibilities. That is how the entire system works.

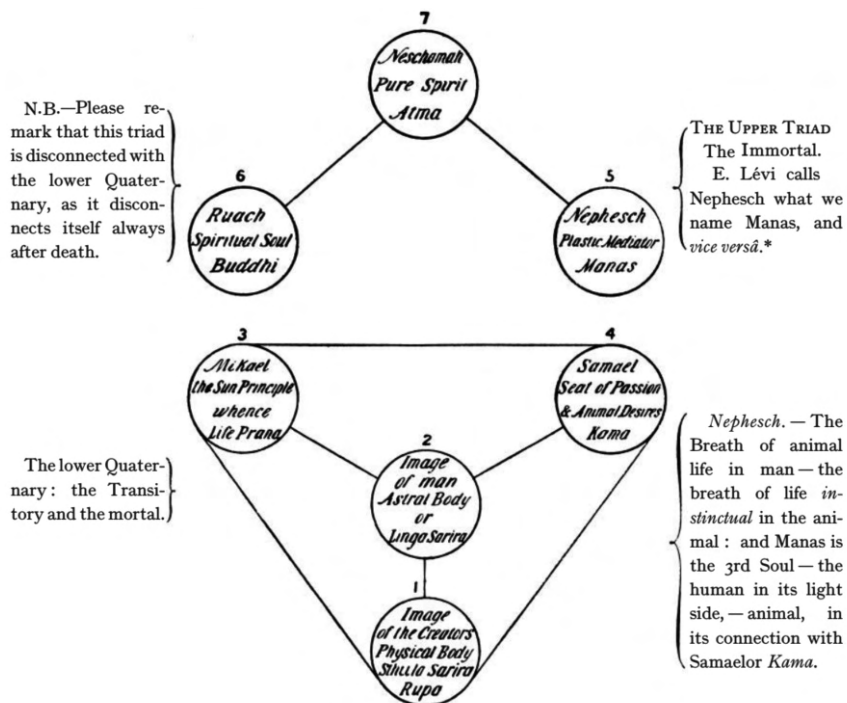
That is how man becomes the highest saint on Earth in a physical body, the most perfect being on the physical plane. He has all the potential to be a saint. He can be the god, he can be the man, and he can be the beast. He can understand the plan of God, he can understand the

feelings of being human, and he can compassionately take care of the needs of the beast. He is three-in-one with the help of the mind principle, the middle principle.

In a human body, composed of sthula sarira (the physical body), prana sarira (the body of life), linga sarira (the body of personality), and chhaya sarira (the body of shadow coming from the lunar pitris), one can find no parallel. In another commentary, the same thing is said in a beautiful and precise manner:

*"Man needs four flames and three fires to become one on Earth, and he requires the essence of forty-nine fires to be perfect."*¹

Man needs four flames and three fires. Now, you know what the four flames and the three fires are.



Septenary constitution of man²

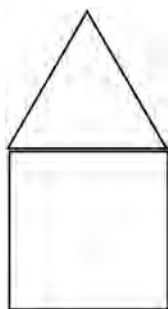
1 SD, 2:57

2 SD, 1:242

The four flames are the four bodies: the body of the personality (linga sarira), the body of desire the body of life, and the body of shadow, which is the basis for the physical body. These are called the flames. And there are the three fires: atma, buddhi, and manas. These four bodies or flames and three fires are the seven. And he requires the essence of the forty-nine fires to be perfect. Seven fires and through the seven rounds one becomes perfect. With the help of the will of the mind, one can complete these rounds even before the earthly seven rounds are completed.

But for those who follow the path of will and yoga, they exercise their will and move forward like a Maitreya or a Buddha and complete all the forty-nine fires, meaning the seven fires develop seven sub-fires.

The three fires represent man's three higher principles, the upper triad, and the four flames stand for man's four lower principles, the lower quaternary. That is how you have the upper triangle and the lower quaternary making the form of a temple. The triangle over a square or a rectangle is the structure. That is why houses also need to have that structure. A triangular roof is better than a flat roof. Box-like structures do not bring in the right energies. It is a case where the triangle is within the quaternary. The triangle has to be above the quaternary. Then only the principle of seven functions. The head is not in the body. There was a creation in the early Third Waves where the head was in the body. Then slowly the head was removed from the body and placed upon the neck.



A triangle and the quaternary, the symbol of septenary man¹

In the Ramayana, you find a being who had his eyes, his mouth, and his ears in the stomach. He only knew how to eat. He had very long hands. His

1 SD, 2:591

hands could stretch very far to pick up food and eat. Just to satiate hunger he used to extend his hands all over the globe, may be like the present multi-national corporations. The multi-national corporations are not satisfied with the little food that they get for their little stomach, so they stretch and become global. Insatiable hunger and thirst is represented by the head in the stomach. The head over the neck is a temple. That is how temples and churches are built with the principle of a triangle over the square or a rectangle. Such is the perfect man. The essence of forty-nine fires required an order for the man to become perfect. The cyclic pilgrimage is completed after the seven rounds, representing seven times seven. There is a saying, *"Seven times seven the wheel rotates."* It relates to the perfect human being which is given as a caption, as the thought, relating to the World Teacher Trust: *"Seven times seven the wheel rotates"* — it brings out the perfect man.

The Catechism continues. *"It is those who have deserted the Superior Spheres, the Gods of Will, who complete the Manu of illusion. For the 'Double Dragon' has no hold upon the mere form. It is like the breeze where there is no tree or branch to receive and harbour it. It cannot affect the form where there is no agent of transmission (Manas, 'Mind') and the form knows it not."*¹

The ones who created the mind are those who deserted the Superior Spheres, meaning they disobeyed for the simple reason, they wanted to help. It is an act of goodwill, poetically stated as deserted, and mystically called rebels, but it is part of the scheme. Emerging out of compassion they performed their task. They deserted the superior spheres because of the Double Dragon. Who is the Double Dragon? The monad, atma and buddhi, together are called the Double Dragon. It has no hold upon the form. The form is there, but it does not hold to the form. It does not feel the existence of form. It is like the breeze where there is no tree or branch to receive and harbour it. It cannot affect the form where there is no agent of transmission.

Ichha sakti, jnana sakti, kriya sakti

The soul is transmitted through the mind to the surroundings via the body. Soul also is transmitted by the mind to the body. The form does not

1 SD, 2:57

know that there is a soul in it. The two lovers are there, but they do not know each other. They are brought together but do not know it. The man does not know that the lady is his lady. The lady does know that the man is her man. They are there together, but unrelated to each other. So, someone has to bridge them. That bridging is done in the Third Human Wave. The gods of will, the manasaputras, the sons of Mahat, are thus called because they have full knowledge of kriya sakti (will in action). Because they know, they carry the knowledge of the power of action, the power of intelligent activity. The will has to be brought into activity through knowledge. What use is will and knowledge which cannot be put to intelligent activity? One has to be intelligently active to bring down the will through knowledge. If knowledge is missing, it becomes destruction. If will is missing, then purpose is missing. If action is missing, nothing manifests. The action part is called kriya sakti. The knowledge part is called the jnana sakti. Jnana is the root for knowledge. The will is called iccha sakti. Iccha sakti (the will), jnana sakti (the knowledge), have no expression. That expression comes through kriya sakti which is provided by the manasaputras. They have the full knowledge of kriya sakti, the power of will in action, goodwill in action.

When we say *"Love is goodwill in action"*, do you know that it contains all the three powers? Love stands for the secondary energy of knowledge: love-wisdom. It is love emerging from wisdom. Do not think it is animal magnetism. It is pure impersonal love emerging from wisdom. How can that be expressed? Through goodwill. And how can goodwill be expressed? Through action. Iccha, jnana, and kriya sakti in action, i.e., the primary triangle in action, is what is intended by the statement *"Love is goodwill in action"* — the First Ray, the Second Ray, and the Third Ray together. Without the Third Ray, the whole thing is unmanifest.

Pythagoras says, *"It is like two lines of the triangle coming from the same source, moving in different directions, with no meeting point."* They can continue like that. Where will they meet unless there is the third line of the triangle? That third line of the triangle is the kriya sakti, the action. Without action where is the fulfilment? You may carry the will but if you do not act, the triangle is not complete, and the experience is not yours. You cannot transmit the experience. See the beauty of the manasaputras and the kriya sakti, the intelligent activity! Master Djwhal

Khul is a great adept of the First, Second, and Third Rays. He himself is intelligent activity, and his two Masters, Master Morya and Master Koot Humi, are will and knowledge. What better triangle can you dream of?

The manasaputras leave their superior spheres, loftier lokas than our material sphere, in order to accomplish their mission of helping the Manu of illusion, i.e., man in early human waves, so regarded because manas was non-functioning. Hence man was incomplete. The Manu is there but he is not able to function. Mind as potential is there but it is not yet functioning. So they have to add the fire to make the mind function. The gods of will complete man when they quicken the manas (mental) principle so that it becomes active. Without manas, the monad is unable to have a hold upon the form.

And the Catechism concludes as follows: *"In the highest worlds, the three are one, on Earth (at first) the one becomes two. They are like the two (sides) lines of a triangle that has lost its bottom line — which is the third fire (Catechism Book III., sec. 9)."*¹

This I have already explained. In the highest worlds, the three fires are one. On Earth, they become two — they become atma and buddhi. They are like the two sides of a triangle that have lost their bottom line. And that bottom line is the third fire which is supplied by the manasaputras.

1 SD, 2:57



15. Devas, Men and Animals

The abyss between man and animal

*"The doctrine teaches that the only difference between animate and inanimate objects on earth, between an animal and a human frame, is that in some the various 'fires' are latent, and in others they are active."*¹

When all the seven fires are active, one becomes a human. When the fire of manas is not active, the human becomes mindless. The lesser the number of fires, the lesser is the evolution. The greater the number of fires, the greater is the evolution. Evolution is measured by the degree of fire that one carries.

*"The vital fires are in all things and not an atom is devoid of them. But no animal has the three higher principles awakened in him; they are simply potential, latent, and thus virtually non-existing."*²

The three higher fires are there and also not there in an animal. They are virtually non-existent.

*"And so would the animal frames of men be this day, had they been left as they came out from the bodies of their Progenitors, whose shadows they were, to grow, unfolded only by the powers and forces immanent in matter."*³

"This day" here means half way through the Third Human Wave.

*"But as said in Pyramander: — 'This is a Mystery that to this day was sealed and hidden'."*⁴

The mystery of mind, that of buddhi, and that of atma, is hidden and man is seeking to know it. The knowledge to activate these three fires is being worked out with the help of the Hierarchy. Nevertheless, there is a gap between the animal kingdom and the human kingdom. And the reason for it lies in the ability to use the mind principle consciously. Animal uses it unconsciously. Man uses it consciously. Man has the power that an-

1 SD, 2:267

2 SD, 2:267

3 SD, 2:267

4 SD, 2:267

imals do not have. Man also has the ability to use the higher mind. Through its use man can mould his life towards noble ends.

Man can link up manas to buddhi and lead a life towards noble goals. Animals are not able to use the higher mind however clever they seem to be. Animals have the ability to respond to training, and have the ability to enact with the trainer that teaches them. Animals responds to training but in a mechanical way. It is not a conscious using of the mind. It cannot make decisions, nor it can access higher thinking abilities because mind is not activated. With the help of mind we have the ability to activate buddhi, and with the help of buddhi we have the ability to realize the atman.

There is no shortcut. And with the help of mind we also function with the lower four fires, which are called the flames. So, the difference between animal and man is that man can use the mind completely and even link up to buddhi and lead a very noble life, while animal, however clever it is, is not able to use the higher mind — it can only respond to the extent it is trained. If there is a new situation, there is no additional thinking to act. The animals are also not able to become exponents of the moral laws. Humans may do so if they use their will to do so. Man can exercise, if he wills, the discriminative will to determine what is right and what is wrong, but animals cannot.

“Between man and animal — whose Monads (or Jivas) are fundamentally identical — there is the impassable abyss of Mentality and Self-consciousness.”¹

The words soul, monad, and jiva, they all mean the same. In Sanskrit they use the word jiva. Jiva means pulsating consciousness. It means, it has both aspects — the life aspect and also the awareness aspect. When we say jiva, it also refers to a living condition, a pulsation. Jiva is below the Trinity, and the deva is above the Trinity. That is why we have jivatma meaning the conditioned soul, conditioned by the three qualities. And then paramatma — the atma which is beyond the three qualities. Para means beyond. God Absolute is on the other side of the triangle, and the beings are on this side of the triangle. Jivatma is directed by the three qualities which are hidden in him. Jiva means pulsating awareness. Jiva also means the one, who is in eternal search for bliss. All life is a pilgrimage — with the help of the body means to find eternal bliss. So, that is jiva. Madam Blavatsky uses the word “jiva” many times. It means at-

1 SD, 2:81

ma-buddhi. She also uses the word "*monad*". Alice A. Bailey uses the word "*souls*". You do not often find the word "*souls*" in Madam Blavatsky's books. Nevertheless, they all mean the same.

Man and animal are fundamentally identical, but in the animal certain fires are not working. In man also, not all fires are working. If all the fires are working in us, then we are masters. If atma, buddhi, and manas, if all these three fires are working with the four flames, then it is the situation of a master. We are trying to dabble with five fires — we are trying our best to manage the five fires. However, we are not able to manage our fifth fire, i.e., mind. We are not even able to manage our fourth fire, which is that of desire. Consequently the second fire, i.e., the vital fire, is in trouble. There is always a health problem. And the fire relating to the physical body is in trouble, and the fire relating to the etheric body is in trouble. In our effort to handle the five fires, we have not been able to reach an equilibrium. We are in a kind of fight to handle the five fires.

The five-pointed star is a symbol of the stabilised state of the five fires. Only when this is stabilised, then the other two points of the seven-pointed star can be found. Then you have a seven-pointed star. We are essentially seven-pointed stars, but what is popular with us is the five-pointed star because we are still trying to learn to handle the other fires with the help of the fifth fire, manas. Based on our ability to handle manas, and then kama, i.e., desire, the other three fires would have stability or no stability. If the thinking and desiring is not appropriate, then we disturb the vital fire. When vital fire is disturbed, then the fire relating to the shade given by the lunar devas is disturbed. Then the body given by the spirits is also disturbed. Therefore, ability to handle our thinking and our desiring principles is the major work. When this is accomplished, then manas will be a good manager for the body system. Then he can relate to the higher principles in him of which buddhi is one. And buddhi emanates from atma.

When it comes to the animal, Madam Blavatsky says that there is an impassable abyss of mentality and self-consciousness as between the animal and human. She disproves at length the Darwinian theory that man is evolved from the animal. On the contrary, man is responsible for the birth and growth of animals and many other species. He is the creator. From his wild thoughts all these beasts took birth in the Third Human Wave. That is why Madam Blavatsky uses the word "*impassable abyss*" to

describe such a huge and deep gap between animal and man in terms of mentality and also in terms of self-consciousness.

"What is human mind in its higher aspects, whence comes it, if it is not a portion of the essence — and, in some rare cases incarnation, the very essence — of a higher Being, one from a higher and divine plane?"¹

Mind principle comes from the higher planes, and it is a portion of the essence. When the very essence descends, it is an avatar. When a portion of the essence descends, it is a great rishi. And a little portion of the essence is given to humanity to foster.

The curse of the Creator

"Esoteric philosophy, however, teaches that one third of the Dhyanis — i.e., the three little classes of the Arupa Pitris, endowed with intelligence, 'which is a formless breath, composed of intellectual not elementary substances' (see Harivamsa, 932) — was simply doomed by the law of Karma and evolution to be reborn (or incarnated) on Earth. Some of these were Nirmanakayas from other Manvantaras."²

Some of these manasaputras invited a curse from the Creator so that they would be sent down. They had an agenda to invite that curse from their father, the Creator. The Creator said, *"Let us create."* Some of them said, *"Sorry, dad! We won't"* — because they had a different purpose. That was the disobedience. But it was a purposeful disobedience. Allegorically it is said that the Creator became angry and said something like, *"Go to hell."* So, they came to Earth. The allegory in the Puranas is like this, to put it in an oversimplified form. The Creator wanted them to be procreators, but they wanted to be members of the Hierarchy. They said, *"There are enough procreators. Why should we also be procreators?"* As I said before, the procreators are called barhishads, and the rebelling ones are called agnishwattas.

There is a lot spoken about these two groups of fires in the Treatise on Cosmic Fire³ but the related seeds were already given in the Secret

1 SD, 2:81

2 SD, 2:93-94

3 Alice A. Bailey, *A Treatise on Cosmic Fire* (New York: Lucis Publishing Company, 1925). Available at: https://www.lucistrust.org/online_books/a_treatise_on_cosmic_fire_books

Doctrine. While two-thirds of the devas followed the command of the Creator, one-third of the devas simply did not follow that law. So, they were cursed, in the sense that they were asked to go down. And that was exactly what they wanted. They wanted to come down, but the father would not send them down, because they were fully accomplished ones. They did not deserve to be sent down. There had to be a cause to send them down. So, they created that cause and the related karma — *“doomed by the law of karma and evolution to be reborn.”*

Nirmanakayas

But the ones who were born were already nirmanakayas. *“Nirmanakayas”* means those who have built their body of diamond light. *“Kaya”* in Sanskrit means body. The physical body is called bhutika kaya. *“Nirmana”* means to build, to construct. The nirmanakayas constructed the diamond body with the physical body. That is what happens in discipleship that you build the etheric body and you build the causal body which have greater longevity. The one who built the diamond body is imperishable, indestructible. The nirmanakayas have diamond bodies built by them by virtue of their own effort utilizing their mind principle, aligning it with the buddhic principle, and by realising the atman. They had already accomplished this in the other Manvantaras, meaning even during the previous Manvantaras they were accomplished. For an accomplished one, wherever he is, it means no difference. Wherever he is, he keeps helping people to reach that point because the knowledge is intact with him, and awareness is intact with him. He does not suffer ignorance, just like Sanat Kumara. Allegorically, it is said that Sanat Kumara is cursed to be on this planet. It is a responsibility that he undertook. Likewise, one third of the dhyanis, the accomplished ones, have taken to this curse because even if they are on Earth, nothing affects them because they are already accomplished ones.

Vairajas

In connection with this passage referring to nirmanakayas from other Manvantaras, mention should be made of vairajas, regarded as a class of solar pitris. The orthography of Sanskrit, this word denotes that the vaira-

jas are sons of Viraj. Viraj is the cosmic form. There is a cosmic human form which I spoke of many times. When Brahma, the Third Logos, commenced to create, he divided his own substance into two portions: a male portion and a female portion. From the female portion, sprang the male power called Viraj who then produced the first Manu. In esoteric philosophy, the male and female portions of Brahma represent the centripetal and centrifugal forces operative in nature. They are also regarded as the forces of attraction and repulsion, positive and negative. It is also termed masculine and feminine potencies in nature. The specific point with regard to the vairajas is that in esoteric philosophy they are called nirmanakayas. And a further clue is given in this passage. The vairajas belong to and are the fiery egos of other Manvantaras. They have already been purified in fire. They are purified of the fires of passion. It is they who refused to create. They have reached the seventh portal and have refused nirvana. There can be further dissolution of the being into the totality. Having reached the seventh fire, they could have joined the totality, which is Viraj. However, they refused to join the totality, because they knew how to open the doors to all the seven fires, and they thought that they should help the beings at every threshold and see that they also reach that point of absolute nirvana which is called mahapara nirvana, to be one with the Father for eternity. They reached up to that point and then they retained their identity. That is what is called refusal of nirvana, meaning the final dissolution into the universal energy. Nothing prevented them from doing it but they refused it for themselves, because there are myriads and myriads of beings who need assistance. They thought that they should help them, because they know the whole journey. They preferred to be the guides for that journey. That is another reason for their refusal. These are the vairajas, the fiery egos, meaning pure souls which are full of knowledge.

The phrase fiery egos calls attention to the manasic aspect of the pitris. Those who have been purified in the fire of passions signify the completion of the human cycle of evolution by means of seven rounds in the circle of necessity. We spoke of the circle of necessity before. It is all out of necessity that we are born. We did not yet complete our passions on Earth. There is still something wanting on the Earth. There is not yet complete fulfilment and realisation of the seven fires. That is how the beings keep coming back through Manvantaras for self-fulfilling. These

fiery egos are the ones who have fulfilled themselves and there is no passion in them, meaning nothing on this Earth interests them, not even the kingdom. The whole Earth as kingdom was offered to Jesus and he refused. He said, *"Thank you. I do not need it."* The wealth of the world was offered. He said, *"Thank you. I do not need it."* He was also tested of the pride of his knowledge. He was tempted to make miracles for nothing, doing miracles just to show that he was great. It is due to the passion of pride, passion of the personality that people show off their knowledge for nothing. They have a hunger to make others believe that they have knowledge. That is the passion for glamour. All conceivable varieties of glamour are over for these fiery egos. There is nothing on Earth that tempts them. If it is so, why should they be here? They are here, and they have no interest in anything relating to Earth. They have only one interest — the beings, their wellbeing, their evolution, their development — nothing else interests them. The only fire they carry is the fire to uplift. In that matter, they are very passionate. They have been on Earth to help throughout the Third Human Wave, Fourth Human Wave, Fifth Human Wave, Sixth Human Wave, and Seventh Human Wave. They do not mind coming back again in a new Manvantara on a new planet because they are always there for left over beings that need to be helped. That is how they have become the darling sons of God because they are the real soldiers. They form the Red Cross to save the beings from their crisis! Such sublime ideas make them remain here.

They are also called fiery egos. The idea is also emphasized in the Sanskrit compound word for the Lords of Flame namely agnishwattas. As I said, agnishwattas means the ones who have put off the fire of passion. To them the quaternary is just a transparent crucible — they can express themselves like a clear crystal through which the triangular fires can flash forth. They do not become involved in the quaternary. The triangle never descends into the quaternary. Remember that there are four planes and three fires, the head over the shoulder, the temple structure. They are called ancestors sweetened by the fire. They are completely sweetened and there is no way to further sweeten them. The three fires are completely fulfilled.

As per the statement that the vairajas refused to create, this has reference to the single stanza in cosmogenesis that deals with anthropogene-

sis. This happened long, long ago — not when the humanity has reached the Third Human Wave in this round on this Earth. This is a principle that happened even in the time of cosmogenesis in relation to a future need. Even at the time of the genesis of the cosmos, the sons of mind visualized their future need.

*"At the fourth (Round, or revolution of life and being around 'the seven smaller wheels') (a), the sons are told to create their images. One Third refuses. Two (thirds) obey."*¹

At the fourth round, the sons are told to create their images. The lunar pitris were asked to create their images which formed the chhaya bodies. Likewise, the vairajas were also asked to create. One third of the dhyanis refused. Two thirds obeyed. When they obey, they become procreators. For procreation, there is the passion — they have to work with the fourth fire of desire.

*"The holy youths (the gods) refused to multiply and create the species after their likeness, after their kind. They are not fit forms (rupas) for us. They have to grow. They refuse to enter the chhayas (shadows or images) of their inferiors. Thus had selfish feeling prevailed from the beginning, even among the gods, and they fell under the eye of the Karmic Lipikas."*²

They said that the beings, the monads which are in form, have to grow. It is only a detail in a different mythological context.

The reference *"returning nirvanees"* means that they are already nirmanakayas and they have already reached nirvana but they refused nirvana and they returned. So, the word *"returning nirvanees"* is used. These exalted beings who had entered nirvana in the previous Manvantaras returned from that beatific state to establish the relationship between the human kingdom and the beings superior to human. Madam Blavatsky is now continuing the discussion relating to the work of these manasaputras to relate the human kingdom to the beings who are superior to human. Their work is to help us to link up to the higher spheres.

The following citation clearly points out to the relationship of a particular class of dhyani chohans. And then Madam Blavatsky gives a quotation from the Book of Dzyan.

1 SD, 1:191

2 SD, 1:192

“There is an eternal cyclic law of re-births, and the series is headed at every new Manvantaric dawn for those who had enjoyed their rest from reincarnations in previous Kalpas for incalculable Aeons — by the highest and the earliest Nirvanees. It was the turn of those ‘Gods’ to incarnate in the present Manvantara; hence their presence on Earth, and ensuing allegories; hence, also, the perversion of the original meaning.”¹

It is the same as what we have been explaining. All those souls which are in slumber in between the Manvantaras, when they all come back for further evolution on this planet, on the D Globe, and having accomplished up to Third Human Wave, the manasaputras plunged into action to help them.

Failures with devas and men

“We have a passage from a Master’s letter which has a direct bearing upon these incarnating angels.”²

That is a great facility that Madam Blavatsky enjoyed. And that privilege was because of the enormous responsibility she undertook and the related sacrifice. Privileges come to those who undertake enormous responsibilities, who are willing to sacrifice themselves in connection with their responsibilities. To them privileges are bestowed. People who demand privileges are another category. By demanding you do not get anything from nature. By demonstrating your attitude for responsibility, if and when the nature is pleased with you, then the privileges are bestowed. At the right moment, Madam Blavatsky used to receive a passage by way of a letter from a Master of Wisdom. Is that not a facility! Because the Master of Wisdom is already a manasaputra, he has accomplished all the seven fires in him and has taken the responsibility of helping the beings.

“Says the letter: ‘Now there are, and there must be, failures in the ethereal races of many classes of Dhyān-Chohans, or Devas (progressed entities of a previous planetary period), as well as among men. But still, as the failures are too far progressed and spiritualized to be thrown back forcibly from Dhyān-Chohanship into the vortex of a new primordial evolution through the lower Kingdoms, this then happens. Where a new solar system has to be evolved these Dhyān-Chohans are borne in by influx

1 SD, 2:232

2 SD, 2:232-233

*'ahead' of the elementals (Entities... to be developed into humanity at a future time) and remain as a latent or inactive spiritual force, in the aura of a nascent world... until the stage of human evolution is reached... Then they become an active force and commingle with the Elementals, to develop little by little the full type of humanity.' That is to say, to develop in, and endow man with his Self-conscious mind, or Manas."*¹

This is all Victorian English. It is one sentence that runs into seven lines. This is the letter; in this letter, the Master is speaking about the many human waves that there are and that there must be failures in the ethereal waves of many classes of Dhyan-Chohans or devas, as well as among men. There are mistakes happening with the devas and also with the men. This is another beauty of creation. We think devas are infallible. But Lord Krishna says in Bhagavad Gita, *"Just like you, the devas also do not know me and my plan."* That was a surprise to Arjuna and he asked Krishna, *"How is it that the devas do not know you? I can understand that the diabolic do not know you, but the devas also do not know you? Are they like men?"* Then Krishna said, *"Yes, not all of them know me. Only some of them know me. And also some of men know me."* Why the devas do not know, why the men do not know was the question. The answer was, they came much later in creation. The birth of devas is a far later situation. So, they do not know how they exist. They exist as devas. You exist as humans. As much as they do not know me, so much there would be mistakes. Only the ones who know among the devas and among the men are the ones who are infallible. So, the ones who do not know made mistakes. Even at the level of creation of the solar system, there were mistakes. That is why the solar system is also under evolution. We are one of the five solar systems evolving together. And we are guided by seven elder brothers who are the solar systems represented by the Great Bear.

*"Says the letter: 'Now there are, and there must be, failures in the ethereal races of the many classes of Dhyan-Chohans, or Devas (progressed entities of a previous planetary period), as well as among men. But still, as the failures are too far progressed and spiritualized to be thrown back forcibly from Dhyan-Chohanship into the vortex of a new primordial evolution through the lower Kingdoms, this then happens.'"*²

1 SD, 2:233

2 SD, 2:233

You know what the big men do when they fail? To cover the failure, they make that as the law. It is like saying that the king does not make mistakes. If a king does a mistake, they make the wrong the right. Such thing happened with the devas, such thing also happened with men. And it all progressed too far and there was no way to retreat. If it is so, people would lose respect for these devas and the legions of men. So what did they do? They spiritualized the mistakes — manipulation — to be thrown back forcibly into the vortex of new primordial evolution through lower kingdom. So even for that reason, the manasaputras have come. Don't we see some very strange statements uttered forth by Master CVV? He says, *"Saturn is not functioning as it should. Venus is not functioning as it should. These regents are not functioning as they should function. I have come to set them right."* It may all look crazy but there is a truth behind all this.



16. Right and Wrong Use of the Mind

Mind — facility and impediment

The souls, which are eternal, are essentially constituted of *atma* and *budhi*. They are given bodies to experience the terrestrial spheres. Likewise, to be on any planet, the related mind is required. Without that, there is no way to experience that sphere of creation. The descent of the *manasaputras* to awaken the mind principle which is latent in the beings is the real inauguration of man on Earth. Man stands for the one who carries the mind principle. Beings can be with or without mind. There are beings in all planes of existence with different states of awareness. Man is the one in whom the mind is functioning. Among beings, there are “*human*” beings. The word “*human*” also has the basis in mind, i.e., *manas*, principle.

When we speak of the First and Second Human Waves, they are all semi-conscious, eternal beings. When the mind is awakened, they become conscious of the surroundings and become self-conscious. This self-conscious man came to be on the planet around 18 million years ago, meaning there was an additional descent in him by way of mind and that distinguished man from all other beings. Until that point, the forms were being perfected by the *devas* to enable reception of the mind principle. Receiving the mind principle should not be understood as something foreign implanted in man. It was already existing with him because two thirds of the *manasaputras* have obliged the Creator and entered into the form; only one third rebelled, meaning there was the latent power of mind in every being. And what the *manasaputras*, the rebelled ones, did is that they awakened the mind principle. This awakening of the mind principle makes a being a man — he becomes self-conscious and starts building up his own personal existence, which is called a personality, which is real and unreal.

How the mind shall be used is the question — just like every facility, it depends on how we use it. Body is a facility, but it depends on how we use it. Money is a facility, and it again depends how we use it. All facilities have their counterparts as impediments. So is the case with mind. That is why initially when mind was gained by the beings, and when the

beings became self-conscious, they also became self-centered, selfish, developing separative consciousness. These were the dangers that happened. Mind is given for one purpose but then it is misused for some other purpose. Just like the example of parents buying two-wheelers (i.e., motorcycles) for teenagers to enable them to go to college which may be at a distance. The children use two-wheelers not only to go to college, but also to go to the seaside, for picnics, to pick up boyfriends and girlfriends, gathering at a pub, creating noise, do mischiefs — doing all kinds of things. Why do they do it? Inexperience! Likewise, there was a lot of inexperience experienced in the initial stages when mind was first given. Very few could really work with it. It is like the saying, *“Throwing pearls before swine!”* How does the swine know the value of pearls? It does not know. Or it is like giving a jasmine flower to a barbarian. What would he do with it? He does not know how to experience a jasmine flower.

Foreseeing all this, there was great disagreement and the question was, *“Should we or should we not give the mind?”* Suppose you do not awaken the mind, then there is peace and harmony, because all the children sleep and act together. The parents are happy if the children are asleep, because when they wake up, they make so much noise and disturbances! Why wake up a sleeping dog? That is one attitude because the parents know what all the children will demand once they are awakened.

I once asked the parents of a young boy in Argentina who was born in the month of Leo, *“How is your son Augusto?”* They named him Augusto because he was born in the month of August. That boy was a very active boy. Then the father replied, *“Oh! Master! Augusto is so beautiful when he sleeps! Once he wakes up, oh god! It is too difficult to deal with him. He demands so many things and he makes me a captive. He does not allow me to do other things. He demands my total attention. I cannot do my work if Augusto is awake.”*

Likewise, when the mind principle was awakened, there was such an upsurge of energy in the beings with their new-found mind principle. The consequence was the Atlantean Wave. They started experimenting with their bodies and it was like giving a Royal Enfield motorcycle with no silencer to a teenager! You see in Europe how the teenagers create a horribly loud nuisance without a silencer on their motorcycles.

The Atlantean Wave entered into all kinds of experiments with the body because the body has a desire principle and the lower mind is associated with the desire principle. The superior or higher aspect of the mind is buddhi. The lower aspect of the mind is desire. So, there was too much experimentation with desire. Hence, the body of life, i.e., the vital body, became disturbed with excessive desire. When the body of life was disturbed, the etheric body was also disturbed. When the etheric body was disturbed, the beings became mortals. They suffered death and hence the physical body decayed faster. Mind's association with the body is towards mortality, and mind's association with the buddhic is towards immortality.

Orientation of the mind

Ever since the mind principle was given in the second half of the Third Human Wave, man became conditioned by desire. This includes the second half of the Third Human Wave, the Fourth Human Wave, and also the anterior part of the Fifth Human Wave, i.e., the Aryan Wave. Till now man has continued to be conditioned by desire. Only in the Sixth Human Wave is it expected that there would be a supra-mental consciousness. The second half of the Third Human Wave, the Fourth Human Wave, as well as the Fifth Human Wave are a kind of a training period, a kind of learning process, to learn how to use the mind. We have not yet realized the full potential of the mind. Until this step is fully gained, we cannot enter the buddhic plane. This is true in general with humanity. But there were some who had evolved enough in the past Manvantaras and were ardently waiting for the awakening of the mind in a latent manner. They are the ones who took advantage of the mind principle and moved forward into the buddhic plane, built a bridge into that plane, and enabled the buddhic consciousness to function through the mind. The buddhic consciousness is that of the soul; the desire consciousness is that of the body. When mind builds bridges with buddhi, then it reflects buddhi. When mind links with desire, it reflects desire. Where do we link up the mind is the question?

When the mind principle was given, the majority of humanity plunged into the activity of terrestrial desire, while a small portion of humanity availed themselves of the opportunity to link up to buddhic consciousness. Those are the ones who revealed the Gayatri. Gayatri is not an in-

vention of the Fifth Human Wave. It came from earlier times. The very essence of Gayatri is the alignment with the buddhic plane. *“Dhiyo yonah prachodayat”* — meaning may our buddhi be enlightened; may the light of buddhi prevail over the mind. For that reason, we contemplate upon the source of light. So, some followed that path. But they were few. Others followed the path of desire, of power, of amassment, of aggrandizement, and the path of terrestrial aggressions. That is the story of the Atlanteans, having an excessive association with an inferior principle to that of the mind. That is why as parents we always wish that our children associate with persons superior to them instead of people inferior to them. We need to know what kind of friends the children have. Through right association, they grow in the right direction. Through wrong association, they grow otherwise.

Mind is a neutral principle. Whatever it associates with, it produces the related reflective aspects. That is what Aristotle said, *“It all depends on how you angle your mirror. If you angle your mirror towards the fire, it reflects the fire. If you angle it towards the mount, it reflects the mount. If you angle it towards the mud, it reflects the mud.”*

Such is the principle of mind. It all depends on how one uses the mind. Mind should be used to nourish the body because without the body nothing can be achieved. Mind should predominantly be used to build bridges with buddhi. But naturally in the initial stages, any facility is bound to be more misused than used. This is very common arising out of inexperience. Hence, in the later part of the Third Human Wave there were giants that caused enormous disturbance to the creation. And their number was very high. There were also a few who followed in the right direction and utilised the mind to build bridges into buddhi. These are the ones who followed the path of divine mortals. Their numbers grow slowly. Their progression is an arithmetical progression. But the progression of the other is in geometrical progression — they were multiplying. Consequently, their number is great and they have to burn their bodies many times and come back again and again until they gain sufficient experience. Till now the experiment continues. Even today, you cannot say that the whole of humanity has learned how to use the mind. The experiment with mind continues. It is expected that by the conclusion of the Fifth Human Wave, we will redress our situation from the fourth plane and we will ascend back

into the third flame, i.e., mind. And in the beginning of the Sixth Human Wave, we will begin to think of relating it to buddhi. That linkup with buddhi would enable us to gain a mind far superior than the mind we have now.

Concretized mind and buddhic consciousness

Mind in the major part of humanity today is full of desires and concepts. It is a concretized mind, full of desires and related emotions. Wisdom science therefore focuses upon cleansing the mind and making it an open mind. Cleansing is in relation to desires, and openness is in relation to concepts. People see through their concepts, through their coloured glasses. As long as you have concepts, your seeing is coloured. When you see through a colour, you find everything to be the same colour. An open mind is able to see clearly. But before an open mind, a clean mind is needed. That is why the doctrines speak of regulating the desire and eliminating opinions and personal viewpoints. To feel that only I am right and others are not is a viewpoint. The strength of your separative belief equals the narrowness of your viewpoint. When you are able to include all viewpoints, then you have vision. Otherwise, there is no vision. That is what Jesus meant when he said, *"If anyone slaps you on one cheek, show him the other"* — meaning if one shows you a dimension, show him the other dimension also. There can be more than one dimension. Unless you cover all the 360 dimensions, you do not have vision. Today, people think that their way is the only way, and their path the only path. Upanishads and Vedas say, *"Ekam sat vipra bahuda vadanti"*, which means that, *"One Truth is expressed by the men of wisdom in thousands of ways."*

The more you know, the more your mind is open. When the mind is open, supra-mental consciousness becomes a reality. You cannot gain unlimited knowledge with a limited mind. The scriptures say, *"If you do not release the limitations of your mind, you cannot absorb knowledge."* The scriptures ask a question, *"Can a mosquito gulp an elephant through its throat?"* To walk into the supra-mental, the most important aspect is the openness of mind. Mind is elastic. It can be stretched to include the entire cosmos.

Pandora's box

The awakening of the mind principle opened Pandora's box. When Pandora's box was opened, so many other things also flew out. Consequently, the Atlantean and the Aryan Human Waves were periods of experimentation. Of course, there was always a stream of humanity that found the path into the buddhic plane. The so-called New Age that we speak of today is nothing but a major part of humanity walking into supra-mental consciousness. Only those who have enough openness of mind and who have overcome their desires for personal profits are the ones that would be fit to enter into the supra-mental consciousness. That is how the whole theme seems to be.

When the majority of the Wave is ready to receive the buddhic consciousness, that would be the time when the buddhic principle would also be awakened — just like the mind principle was awakened when the majority of the Wave was ready to receive the mind. Once the buddhic principle is awakened, it is like entering into Savarni Manvantara where you walk into the light and thereafter contemplate upon the source of the light.

Mind is the fifth principle from below upwards. From below upwards is the physical body, then the body coming from the lunar pitris called the etheric body, then the vital body, then the desire body, then the body of mind which creates personality, and then the sixth body is the buddhi. Staying in buddhi, you can build the higher bridge with the atman (spiritual will). You can thus reach the seventh step. Then the sevenfold man is complete. Very frequently, man is said to be saptaparna, meaning he is sevenfold man. Parna means branch, and sapta is seven. He is a seven-branched tree of which the higher three branches are a descent from above, and the lower three branches are an ascent from below. They are linked by the middle principle called mind. Man needs to function in all these seven planes. According to the scheme of things, it would happen in the Seventh Human Wave in relation to the Fourth Round of this Earth on the D Globe. Once you are given the mind, and if you follow the discipline of yoga or discipleship, you can reach this step faster and you can keep helping others, just like the nirmanakayas. That is what is being planned through the manasaputras whose hard work resulted in the creation of the Hierarchy. All the members of the Hierarchy that we know today, with the exception of Sanat Kumara, are all mortals turned divine. They are divine mortals. They know the trials

and tribulations of man becoming divine. So, they help us with sympathy and with compassion. They understand our problems, our deficiencies, and our debilities, and try to cooperate to see that we stand up and walk on the path. Such was the work which was contemplated.

*"While incarnating, and in other cases only informing the human vehicles evolved by the first brainless (manasless) race, the incarnating Powers and Principles had to make their choice between, and take into account, the past Karmas of Monads, between which and their bodies they had to become the connecting link."*¹

They had to make a choice — should we or should we not open this Pandora's box? Among other things, something good also came from Pandora's box. Hope came out along with the other good things. The manasaputras have tremendous hope in humanity's development. They never leave us and want to help us develop. Is it not a great choice and it is a great risk for them. That is what is being spoken of in the Secret Doctrine. It is trying to give brains to the brainless. And in doing so, they had to consider the past karma of the monads. According to past karma, the monads will react.

For example, you see the parable of the gold coin which Jesus narrates. A master gives his three servants one gold coin each and says that he is going abroad and that he would return. The first servant just keeps it carefully in a safe box, because he is afraid that if he does not give back the coin when the master returns, he may be punished. The second one utilizes the coin and expands his wealth. The third one utilizes the coin much more and develops a huge welfare activity. When the master returns, he calls these three servants and asks them, *"I gave you a gold coin. Where is it?"* The first one dutifully returned the gold coin. The second one became a millionaire, meaning he gained millions of gold coins beginning with just one gold coin, and he returned the one gold coin given to him by the master saying, *"This is what you gave me and I am giving it back to you."* The third one said, *"Your gold coin has built all this kingdom of welfare. It is all yours. Please have it."* What is in this story? When equal opportunities are given, people respond differently. All are given a gold coin, but how did each one respond? Likewise, the monads, who are not yet human, would surely respond in millions of different ways based on their past karma

which cannot be perceived. They had to make a choice between the karmas of the monads and their progress. Would they progress, or would they destroy themselves? What would they destroy? At best, they would destroy their bodies. But the bodies can be redone, because the lunar hierarchy could again give the design of the shadow to the monads, and the Seventh Hierarchy of spirits on Earth could give the physical body, and the Sun could give life. Thus, the body comes back again. The manasaputras thought, *“Let them destroy and let them learn.”* That was a great choice they had to make.



Pandora

Manushyas

“Having been in all the so-called ‘Seven creations’, allegorizing the seven evolutionary changes, or the sub-races, we may call them, of the First Root-Race of Mankind — man was on earth in this Round from the beginning. Having passed through all the kingdoms of nature in the previous three Rounds, his physical frame — one adapted to the thermal

conditions of those early periods — was ready to receive the divine Pilgrim at the first dawn of human life, i.e., 18,000,000 years ago."¹

That means, a form similar to the form that we have now was readied. Then, there was the descent of the mind principle into it. The globe went through the First Round, Second Round, Third Round, and it is now in the Fourth Round. The beings also concurrently made their steps. 18 million years ago in the D Globe, this kind of form was already there at the physical plane for all the monads. At that moment, there was the awakening of the mind principle. Thus, the monad became a human being. I would say there is a language limitation here. The being is called man. The human being is also called man. That is why from time to time Madam Blavatsky refers to monads. In Sanskrit, the word "*nara*" means the beings which are eternal. They are monads, the jivas, the souls. Among naras, there are manushyas. That is the difference. Not all naras are manushyas. Manushyas are those in whom the mind principle is awakened. All manushyas are naras, but not all naras are manushyas. All beings are not humans, but all humans are beings. In using this terminology, you have to understand that some of the beings that are conducting the pilgrimage on the planet in the Fourth Round are developed into this form. Into them the mind principle descended. It happened 18 million years ago. What is 18 million years ago? That period was at the mid-point of the Third Human Wave. That was the time when he was endowed with manas, the thinking principle. Please remember that when we say "*endowed with*" or "*given*" here means awakening of a latent organ, a latent principle.

*"Once united, the two and then the three make one; for though the lower animal, from amoeba to man, received their monads, in which all the higher qualities are potential, all have to remain dormant till each reaches its human form, before which stage manas (mind) has no development in them."*²

It is all mystically said, "*Once united, the two and then the three make one*", meaning the two is atma and buddhi. It has become an atma, buddhi and manas unit. From amoeba to all the stages of mammals, reptiles, etc., then animals, then man, and until the human form is reached, manas was not endowed. Once manas is endowed, man becomes very distinct from

1 SD, 2:254

2 SD, 2:255

the previous states. There is the development of the form happening all the years up to the midpoint of the Third Human Wave. Then there was the awakening of the mind. Awakening of the mind happens only when the form evolves up to the point of becoming a human form. Please note this. Before this stage, the manas has no development in the beings.

*"In the animals every principle is paralyzed, and in a foetus-like state, save the second (vital) and the third (the astral), and the rudiments of the fourth (Kama, which is desire, instinct) whose intensity and development varies and changes with the species."*¹

The mind principle and the buddhic principle are all dormant in a foetus-like state.

Now, we come to the last part of the awakening of the mind principle. This was already explained at the beginning of the class. While the words *"endowed with manas,"* if taken literally, would seem to imply a gift of these principles, in truth it was already there, awaiting awakening. What we already have, has awakened. There are still two more things to be awakened — buddhi and atma. We have to work these out with the help of the mind. With this awakening of mind, further unfoldment becomes possible. Even in man, the one who is endowed with mind, the buddhi principle is as of yet non-functioning, which I explained. It is awaiting proper and appropriate developmental unfoldment of the higher mind. Until man reaches the seventh sub-plane of the mental plane, he will not be ready to receive the vibrations of buddhi. There are seven major planes and seven sub-planes within every plane. The initial four planes of mind relate to lower mind. The higher three planes of mind are the higher mind.

Once we enter the higher mind, we become deeply interested in the wisdom activity. It becomes our preoccupation. Other occupations become secondary. Then slowly the bridge is built into the buddhic plane. Time is still ripening for this to happen within humanity. It will happen during the Sixth Human Wave. These words are sometimes a bit confusing. During the Fifth Human Wave, we are all expected to walk into the buddhic plane, supra-mental conscious plane, where it is also expected that we gain immortality, because in the buddhic plane there is no mortality.

That is the process that would happen in the future. Then in still more future cycles, a similar process will happen for experiencing the principle

of atman in the buddhic plane. Soul realization is not feasible at the mental plane. Please remember this. Only those who entered into the buddhic plane can think of experiencing the soul, and can think of relating to the soul. We can only relate to that which is higher than we are. From the mental state, we need to build bridges into the buddhic. From buddhic, we can build bridges into atma. Katha Upanishad is very clear about it. It says that prayers done with lower mind do not reach the soul. You first must have gained entrance into the higher mind, and ensure that your thoughts and desires are all very noble. Then, build a bridge into buddhi where you can experience the planes and beings of light. There are seven steps, levels or sub-planes of buddhi. In the last three steps of buddhi, you are proximate to link up to the soul. That is how the saptaparna will be fully unfolded.



17. From Unity to Duality

Senses, sense organs and elements

During the evolution of the Third Human Wave, the third sense also started manifesting.

The first sense, which was formed in the First Human Wave, was the sense of hearing which relates to the ether or akasha. The quality of akasha is sound and the sensation is hearing. In the First Human Wave, there was ability to hear. The organ of the ear relates to the First Human Wave. In the First Human Wave, the element is ether or akasha, the sensation is the sound and hearing, and the organ is ear.

The second sense, which was formed in the Second Human Wave, was the sense of touch which relates to the air. The quality of air is that of touch. In the Second Human Wave, there was ability to hear and also feel the sense of touch. The organ skin relates to the Second Human Wave. In the Second Human Wave the element is the air, the sensation is touch, and then there is the formation of the subtle aspect of the skin which can feel the sensation. Even the plants feel the sensation.

In the Third Human Wave, the third element, i.e., the light, expresses itself as the sight through the beings. Hence, there was the formation of the eye. In the Third Human Wave, there is the light of the fire which functions as the sensation of sight, and the sense organ is the eye which is also the middle one among the five. Just like the Third Human Wave is the middle of the five Human Waves, eye is the middle sensation. Fire is the middle element. Sight is the middle sensation which gives also the ability to visualise.

In the same fashion, the organ mouth with the taste and speech happens in the Fourth Human Wave. Until then, there was no sense of taste, and there were no regular speeches. As we said earlier, they were only uttering vowels — no constructions of words or sentences. In the Fourth Human Wave, there was the functioning of the mouth, and that of the taste, and that of the speech. In the Fourth Human Wave, the element is water, the sensation is taste. If the tongue is not wet, you cannot experi-

ence any taste. Water, taste, and tongue are the related correspondences — water is the element, taste is the sensation, tongue is the sense organ.

In the Fifth Human Wave, there is the functioning of the smell and the sensation is conducted through the organ called nose. Earth, smell, and nose are the related correspondences. The element is earth physical, gross physical. Unless there is the earth, there is no smell.

- | | | | | |
|----|---------------|-------|------------|--|
| 1. | Ether | ... | Hearing... | Sound. |
| 2. | Air | ... | Touch ... | Sound and Touch. |
| 3. | Fire,or Light | Sight | ... | Sound, Touch and Colour. |
| 4. | Water | ... | Taste ... | Sound, Touch, Colour and Taste. |
| 5. | Earth | ... | Smell ... | Sound, Touch, Colour, Taste and Smell. |

Evolution of the elements and the senses¹

These are the five sets of three — all together they form your causal body or *linga sarira*. These are the fifteen which make the body through the five Human Waves in its completion. These are presided over by the mind. That is the sixteenth one. There are five pulsations in the body. That makes a total of twenty-one. These are the numbers. We shall explain them some other time.

In every Human Wave, there is a triangular work of manifestation — just like the triad of *akasha*, sound, and ear result in hearing. Every triangular work manifests the fourth aspect. Likewise, you can work out the other triangles and their manifestations as the sensations.

Formation of the eye

The eye was formed in the Third Human Wave. Until then, there were no eyes. Likewise, in the third month in the womb, there is the formation of the eyes of the baby. We can relate the human waves to the baby in the womb. The third eye was the only eye in the beginning — just to see. The animals also had it. The animals and human forms had only one eye at that time, so you cannot call it the third eye. There were single-eyed beings in the initial stages of the Third Human Wave. This is because the wave was androgynous — there was no male-female division yet. The third centre relating to the human body is the throat. Until the formation

of the throat happens, the left and right energies do not appear. That is what I spoke of earlier, saying that it was Gemini in formation. Until Gemini (duality) was formed, all organs were unitary. Even hearing was through a single ear. Everything was unitary. It was not yet dual. Duality comes when the throat is formed, or the third centre is formed, or the Third Human Wave is halfway through, or the third sun sign Gemini happened. Until Gemini happened, male and female divided were not there. They were there only potentially. Once Gemini manifested, then the duality manifested.



Gemini

We are to relate the man, the cosmos, and the twelve sun signs of the zodiac through the law of correspondences; then and only then will we understand life, above (heaven) and below (earth). What occurs in the heavens also occurs here on Earth (which is the study of astrology). That is why astrology is considered to be the best clue. Among the seven keys to wisdom, astrology is considered the master key. It is not enough if we study astrology in terms of planets and sun signs. It should be studied in

terms of man and in terms of cosmos. We should always try to see how we can relate astrology to anthropogenesis and cosmogenesis. It is said that astrology is the eye of wisdom. If you do not have the eye, you cannot see, and you cannot visualize. Among the five senses also, the eye is considered most important. There is a saying in the Veda, "*anganam nayanam prathanam*", meaning among all the five senses and the sensations, the eye and the sight are the most important. "*Vedam ganam jyothishyam prathanam*", meaning among the keys to Veda, astrology is the most important key. When you have the astrological key, your comprehensions are better.

Formation of Gemini and of Mercury

The formation of Gemini happened halfway through the Third Human Wave. That is why halfway through the Third Human Wave there was the manifestation of the mind principle, and the manifestation of the manasaputras, the kumaras, the Cosmic Mercury. Thus, Mercury manifested. Until Mercury and mind manifested, the third organ, the eye, and the third sensation of sight were functioning through the light of fire and a single eye in both animal and the man. Remember that the mind was not awakened yet. And when mind came in, there was the manifestation of Mercury, called the kumaras, the manasaputras, the sons of will and yoga, who started the work of executive power referred as kriya sakti. When the manasaputras happened, then manas as a principle was activated through the descent of the high beings and also through stimulation in the bodies of man which potentially carried the mind. Then there was the formation of the two eyes along with the original eye. For a while, there were three eyes. The three-eye situation is referred as the Manvantara of Chakshusa. "*Chakshu*" means the eye and sight. Chakshus was the Manvantara (time) in which man carried three eyes.

Vision of the cosmic existence

In the beginning, when the mind principle descended, it was very virgin in nature. In the beginning it carried the purity of a virgin which is not yet polluted. The mind was not yet polluted by the fourth flame of de-

sire. For a while, there was a situation where there were three eyes. When three eyes were in operation, the left eye was meant for sight, the right eye was meant for wisdom, and the third eye was meant for vision — from sight to wisdom, and from wisdom to vision. That was how the third eye was functioning as an eye of vision. When they had vision, they could see ahead, behind, and on all sides. When the vision is there, then you can see 360 degrees around you. It is confusing for us because we are not yet ready to receive that kind of vision. If we concurrently see ahead and behind, and also the right and the left, then we will get confused. When you see in all directions, you cannot proceed. We are like a horse now with the two eyes focused on the front only, not even looking sideways. When Arjuna was given the vision, he felt terrible because he was not accustomed to it. In the eleventh chapter of Bhagavad Gita, the Lord grants grand vision to Arjuna, and he starts seeing in all 360 degrees around him, and he started seeing all the dimensions of creation at the same time. It was very difficult to comprehend and Arjuna asked Krishna, *"Please return me to my normal sight."*

Ramakrishna did the same thing to Vivekananda because Vivekananda was frequently pestering Ramakrishna with questions like, *"Do you have the grand vision? Did you experience the grand vision of the Lord?"* Ramakrishna was smiling, meaning through smiles he was confirming that, *"Yes."* Then, Vivekananda started asking him, *"Would you please bestow it upon to me?"* One fine morning Vivekananda came to Ramakrishna's room, which was a very simple room. Ramakrishna was living in a 2 meters x 2 meters room, with no bed. He was sleeping on a mat on the floor, with no pillow, nothing of comfort. The room just had one door and one window. The window had a view of the Ganges river. When Vivekananda came, he sat by the side of Ramakrishna and then suddenly Ramakrishna put his right thigh upon the left thigh of Vivekananda. It was like an electrical contact. And Vivekananda had this vision which was so grand that he could not bear it. After a while, Ramakrishna removed the touch of his thigh and Vivekananda came back to normal sight. Then Ramakrishna asked Vivekananda, *"How was it?"* Vivekananda replied, *"Please do not do it again. I am lost. I am totally lost into the vastness of cosmic existence. Why did you do it without even giving me the notice?"* Then Ramakrishna said, *"If I give the notice, would it make any difference? I now give you*

the notice and will do it again. Will you accept it?" Vivekananda said, "No. Thank you. I still need to do lot of things."

Like this story, the third eye gives us a vision of the cosmic existence. That situation of the third eye was when the mind was in its nascent state. It was only for a very short period during the Third Human Wave. Later, very few retained that capacity. The others have lost it because their mind became associated with the four flames. The four flames are the flame of desire, the flame relating to self-consciousness, the flame relating to the lunar body, and the flame relating to the physical body. When all these four flames take over, you feel your separated existence. In its lower sub-planes, lower mind makes us self-conscious. In its higher sub-planes, it can link up to buddhi. Very few continued to make the right use of this third eye. Those are the ones whom we call the great initiates. And the others, on account of their inclination towards desire, slowly lost the third eye.

There are three stages in relation to the eye taking place in the Third Human Wave. In the beginning, it was only one eye for animal and man. It was only to see. So, the beings were able to see, they could listen, and they could feel the heat and the cold. There was not yet the sense of taste or smell. From that state, with the descent of the mind principle, there was a second stage where there were three eyes.

Then, the third eye functioned as the eye of vision. Only a few could retain it. Others have gradually lost it due to their association with the quaternary, meaning due to building excessive relation towards the physical body through desire. Then, it gave rise to the third stage of the third eye being closed and we are now left with our present two eyes.

When the third eye was functioning, man had four hands and two legs. That was the situation. All the Hindu gods are depicted with four hands signifying that the whole creation is fourfold. Man is also fourfold. With the third principle of manas manifesting, the four letters are now complete: atma, buddhi, manas, and physical body. Thus the four aspects of man: existence, awareness, thought, and action. We exist. Then, there is the awakened state where existence transforms into awakening. It is a two-in-one state. Then, with awakening as the basis, there is thought. When we are thinking, we are three-in-one: existence, awakening, and thought. There cannot be thought without awakening, and there cannot

be awakening without existence. And then for the thought to transform into speech or action, there is the need for the body.

That was how complete man was halfway through the Third Human Wave. He was like a god — fourfold in his existence. He had three eyes with one for sight, one for wisdom, and one for vision. He had four hands like gods. Invariably, every god in Hindu mythology is depicted with four hands. When mind started relating more and more towards objectivity through desire, gradually the third eye closed, and the two hands disappeared. These two hands are like two wings. We are now left with only two hands.

Man with two hands is working with the last two letters, i.e., thought and action. Only 50% of the capacity of man is being utilized. There is no wisdom or buddhi, and there is no knowledge of existence. The knowledge of atma and buddhi is closed. Only thinking and acting are left. Action gives birth to thoughts relating to further action. Thought leads to action, and action leads to thought — this is the vicious circle we get into once the wisdom is lost. So much for the development of the body. There is a temporary involution that happened, in the sense the monads had to pick up their past karma and had to work with it with the help of the mind.

The descent of the mind was helpful to those who have almost fulfilled the previous Manvantaras but could not complete the saptaparna, the sevenfold man. They immediately took the opportunity and turned divine mortals. And those who were behind them can also become divine mortals in due course. Those who have not yet fulfilled themselves in relation to their terrestrial existence, which is a majority, are the ones who turned otherwise. So, the two possibilities were opened during the second half of the Third Human Wave. It was hope for those who were advanced in their evolution in the past Manvantara. For others, it was fulfillment of karma, and through future waves they would also evolve. That is how the Third Human Wave opened the hope for all beings through the manifestation of the mind principle.

Right path and left path

The third eye gradually closed sometime during the Atlantean period. Since there was some time where the third eye was available to those who were associated with terrestrial desire and to those who were associated

with the divine desire, a great battle began between the two. These are the wars between the divine and diabolic which are mentioned in every mythology. Do not think that the diabolic are some other beings other than the human being. Among the humans, some took to the right path, and some took to the left path. Left path means path of material, and right path means path of spirit. A bifurcation, a duality thus occurred.

The manasaputras help both sides. They do not take sides because those who have taken the path of spirit would eventually complete their experiences on Earth and join the Hierarchy, and those who have taken the path on the left side, towards terrestrial experiences, would also, in the long course of time, fulfil their experience through karma. Unless the terrestrial experience is fulfilled, they cannot be fully developed. Suppression is not a means towards fulfillment. The soul's choices are important. Some have a longer course to fulfil because they did not develop as much as the others. It is like a school opening with seven classes, and the children entering the one of the seven appropriated grades or classes related to their development. The ones in the final class would eventually complete their classes. The others would gradually continue their learning until they too have completed their classes. All is seen as a learning process by the sons of God. All is a learning process through different developmental stages.

That is why Lord Krishna says to Arjuna in Bhagavad Gita, *"My dear Arjuna, don't think there are good people and bad people. It is a bad classification. There are only two kinds of people: those who know, and those who do not know. Those who do not know would eventually know. When the knowers and the ignorant are together, it is but natural that there is a conflict."*

In a society, there is always a mix of the two, and all the gradations in between. There are knowers; there are the non-knowers; in between there are grades: semi-knowers and semi-non-knowers. When they are all together, they would have different viewpoints emerging from different understandings. Their main qualities are different, the functioning of their awareness is different. Do not decide that the non-knowers are bad. Among those who know and those who do not know, to whom should we show more compassion? We should show more compassion to those who do not know. Those who know, already know! Those who do not know

need greater support. They should be treated with compassion and love because they go through the process of suffering which is inflicted by themselves in order to become knowers.

That is what Annamayya, the initiate whose place we visited, says to the Lord, *"Why do you stay with yogis? Why do you stay with adepts? What is the use of a lamp in daylight? If you stay in the darkness of the ignorant, they would get little light. Why do you rejoice the company of great adepts, maha yogis, and maharishis, etc.? Come to us, the ignorant. A small lamp in darkness is much more useful than a lamp in daylight. When there is already light, what is the big job of you being with them? Be with us, the ignorant."*



Annamacharya

Like that, God's compassion is always for the common. The energy which we call God is full of love and compassion. God is never seen as a punitive person, who punishes all the time. On the contrary, he heals us from the sufferings that we inflict upon ourselves by our own behaviour because we do not know how to think and how to desire. That is how it is. This theme is very important to come out of the doctrine of sin and the doctrine of evil, which is so much inflicted on the planet today. People may be studying Upanishads or scriptures, they may be studying Blavatsky or Bailey, but this synthesis is required. If you divide the whole thing into good and bad, then you have lost the game.

You see, just for the sake of the game, the players are divided into two. One team becomes two teams. You see, two sisters playing tennis. Eventually, they have to play against each other. Does it mean they are opponents? Does one see the other as an enemy? If you and your brother are playing tennis and each one opposes the other in the game, do you see him as an enemy? The weaker one is defeated, the stronger one is successful. So also in the game of human evolution, the weaker one suffers and learns through further process. When I say weaker and stronger, it is in terms of knowledge.

It is ignorance to say that all human beings are of the same capacity. They are not. All human beings are souls because they are beings. However, their knowledge levels are different. According to the difference in knowledge, there is inequality in thought and action. From a higher standpoint, the weaker sections will need to be assisted by the stronger sections. That is what we call as the brotherhood. The brotherhood is when the stronger ones help the weaker ones in any aspect of life, and not when they exploit the weaker ones. Then only there is brotherhood.

The whole theme is not well understood even by some theologists and their propagators. Then they start the whole thing from the bifurcated point. You need to see the unity before such bifurcation. From that standpoint, you see two streams flowing out. One stream flows towards material, and another stream flows towards spirit. That is how you have ida and pingala, with sushumna as the midstream. That is why even in astrology, Gemini is considered to contain all the secrets of synthesis. Gemini is the sun sign through which the humanity will get initiated. Initiation to the human being is when he sees the purpose of this duality and stands above such duality.

The sun sign Gemini

Even the sun sign Gemini ♊ , with its upper horizontal wave, shows the unity. The upper horizontal wave shows the unity from which there are two vertical lines descending. Then it is called as "*from unity to diversity*". That means the unity is known, and standing in unity, diversity is visualized. That is how there is the symbol of pi (π) with the higher wave projecting two vertical lines, meaning duality emerges from the unity. Pi (π) is wisdom. To experience unity in duality is important. That was the

original symbol of Gemini. As the waves of humanity progressed more towards material, the symbol of Gemini developed a lower wave, and the pillars rested more on the lower horizontal line than on the higher horizontal line. Then duality was confirmed. When the two vertical lines rest on the lower horizontal line, support comes from the lower line, meaning the whole thinking pattern is in duality. To start with, Gemini was the higher horizontal line. Half-way through the Third Human Wave, the two verticals descended. They were still united in the upper horizontal line. Slowly, a lower horizontal line was developed, meaning more reliance on material than on spirit, meaning the unity with spirit was lost and the confidence in material was gained. What happened now? When we go to Greece we can see what happened. We would only see pillars with no roof; the roof is gone. You see Acropolis or you see any old structures of temples which are in ruins today, you will only find the foundations and vertical pillars, the roof is gone, meaning the unity is gone and duality is very strongly established. That is how our present state of mind is. This is all because our relation towards material. The pillars did not lose their strength in the matter, but they lost their unity with the roof. Then it is an inverted pi, meaning wisdom turned upside down. This is how you have to intuitionally work with the symbols. Not everything can be written in the books. In fact, this is not written in any book. I thought I should not speak from the book today.

Duality

Such was the duality that was taking place during the Third Human Wave. From unity there was the development of diversity. Some took to the ladder of ascent, and some took to the ladder of descent. Some took to knowledge, and some took to ignorance. Some took to peace, and some took to violence. It is only on this background that you can understand the Atlantean Wave. That is why there were such powerful fights happening in the Atlantean Wave between two powerful groups, one embracing spirit, and another embracing matter. These fights are described in the Hindu Puranas as the war between the divine and the diabolic. There is so much fight between the devas and diabolics. The devas do not initiate the fight. It is the diabolic that propose the fight on account of their in-

instinct for aggression. The diabolic are always itching for aggression and accretion. They always get into others' territories. They are not happy and content with what they have. The others, i.e., the divine, had to resist. The human colonialism that happened till recent centuries is nothing but this Atlantean energy causing a disturbance to peace. This is how you can trace the roots for all this violence.

Duality is the fact of life today. But there is a higher state of awareness where there is unity. When we embrace unity, we return to the third eye. Through synthesis, one leads oneself to the third eye. Until that synthesis is assimilated into the being totally, the third eye would not open because vision is dangerous to people who are not yet fulfilled in knowledge. That is what is being worked out through the schools run by the adepts at various times and at various places. While there was much confusion and chaos which emerged during the last part of the Third Human Wave, finding its great expression during the Atlantean times, extending into Aryan times, there was also a stream of activity which went on helping souls to discover the purpose of their pilgrimage in the Fourth Round. That was also functioning. There was never a discontinuity of that activity. Beings who were fit were recruited into these schools all over the planet and that is what we call the members of the Hierarchy. Their number is small compared to the humanity but the light in the lamp is turned on. Just like the Olympic torch, the Hierarchical fire remains lit from the times of the Third Human Wave. That is the hope for humanity; that is the future for humanity. Slowly, people will recognize this when they have had enough terrestrial experiences.

Pineal gland and third eye

At the moment, many are groping in the darkness for happiness. Some people find some feeble light, and they slowly move from darkness to that light. What is happening with the third eye now? The third eye settled in us as the pineal gland. That pineal gland still remains as the seat of the soul. The soul is sealed in it. Until the third eye opens, there is no soul experience. Nevertheless, without the soul the body is nothing. The body carries the blood stream, and the five pulsations relate to the body of prana. The pineal gland, through its glands and their related endocrinal secretions, in-

teracts with the prana. That is how awareness and life join together. There is a thread of life and a thread of awareness. Soul conducts the thread of awareness via buddhi and mind, while body conducts the life thread. Life and awareness support each other. Life functions through arteries, veins, etc. Awareness functions through plexus and glands. There are in all twelve glands which cause internal secretions. It is these secretions that integrate with the life stream and with the blood. Man thus functions as an integrated being in the body. That work is presided over by the pineal gland from where the soul functions in a dormant manner because it is imprisoned by the gland. Eventually, as man progresses in his behavioural pattern, tunes up to the law, and conducts himself, slowly the glands come into full functioning. When all the other glands secrete, then finally the pineal gland also secretes. When the pineal gland secretes, then the bridge is built between the personality and the soul, and man gains his seventh state of awareness, which is soul awareness. Then the third eye opens and man realizes his other subtle bodies and knows how to function through those bodies without the body of flesh and blood. This was accomplished by some when there was the descent of manas. Some took advantage of the sublime descent; many did not. It is for them the accomplished ones continue to work. Those who have accomplished this journey are called the elder brothers of humanity. Others are called the younger brothers who are still making their own experiences.

To repeat, a single eye in the Third Wave eventually developed the other two eyes and then that single eye became the third eye. It is not third eye by itself in the absence of the other two eyes. When the two eyes came in, it became the third eye. In fact, it is the first eye. The Vedas say that the left eye is the Moon, the right eye is the Sun, and the central eye is the Cosmic Fire. Central eye is the cosmic or electrical fire, the right eye is the solar fire, and the left eye is the frictional or planetary fire. That is how one became three. That is the second state. Then there is the third state where the third eye got closed. But the potential still remained and continues to preserve and propagate the wisdom in a very secret manner. The sacred schools have all become secret and they continue the work. Let that be our understanding in relation to the eye aspect. As the third eye closed, the two other hands also got closed because when the third eye was lost, the knowledge of the soul and the knowledge of wisdom were also lost. Only the abil-

ity to think in terms of terrestrial things and the ability to act remained. We are left with two hands, while the divine beings have four hands.

When the duality happened, there was a short period where there were two heads. Please note this. When there was duality initially there were two heads on one neck — each containing the two parts of the brain: the female part and the male part. Subsequently, the two heads got merged into one head. That is where there were three-eyed beings, double-headed beings, beings with four hands. All these combinations existed before we are what we are today.

In relation to the Third Human Wave, a lot can be said about the divine giants and also the diabolic giants. Every mythology has them. Imagine the land that was, and the continent during the Third Human Wave. It was so huge! The entire Pacific, extending towards Australia, South America, North America to the Easter Islands, California, the entire Indian Ocean, a portion of Atlantis, and reaching up to the British Isles and Norway. Imagine, how huge the continent was! That continent also, through a tilt of the axis of Earth, was submerged into the floodwaters, and later we had a different map of the Earth, with the continent of Atlantis emerging.



18. The Fourth Human Wave

The paths of devayana and of pitruyana

The Fourth Human Wave is generally called the Atlantean Wave. It commenced to rise, although very gradually, during the middle portion of the Lemurian Wave. When the Lemurian Wave was halfway through, the Atlantean Age was already developing. The Third Wave went through an upheaval while the Fourth Wave was forming.

Although Lemuria is referred to as the third continent, it signifies third global continental configuration, just as Atlantis is the fourth global configuration. So, Atlantis, the fourth continent was formed. With the rise of the Fourth Wave, the fourth developmental stage of the human kingdom also commenced. A change is also to be noted in the archaic records. The Third Human Wave itself was a very fast development compared to the Second Human Wave.

Fourth Human Wave also had a very significant and very substantial development. There were two levels of development and growth within humanity. Some chose to grow within the path of yoga, while many more chose to experience the path of matter. That was how the two ways became established in the Third Human Wave. There was a two-way progression, with the majority progressing towards terrestrial experience, and a minority progressing towards the divine. Thus two channels or two paths were established in humanity: one for terrestrial experience, and one for super-mundane experience. This is how the concept of children of God came to be. The minority which treaded the path towards self-realization are said to be following the path of devayana, meaning the divine path. That means they utilized the principle of manas, linked up to buddhi, and started working towards atman. The other followed the path of pitruyana, meaning the path of procreation through sex and passion towards earthly things. That is how two distinct waves could be found within the human wave. Two paths were developed with one trying to ascend, and one trying to descend.

The magic of sound

The symbolic sound expressions, like seed sounds which were uttered forth, found their poetical expression in the Fourth Human Wave. By the end of the Fourth Wave, even the poetical expressions further devolved into prose expressions. What one can explain through poetical expression needs an elaborate prose version. Such changes also happened in the presentation of the Book of Dzian. Up to the Third Human Wave and a part of the Fourth Human Wave, the Book of Dzian describes human evolution in poetry. Thereafter, it rendered the description in prose, just to signify the change that was happening. All this means is that the Fourth Human Wave had language, had speech, and that the Fourth Human Wave had developed the fourth sense, the sense of taste and sense of speech. The mouth was formed and words and mantric sounds were uttered forth.

The magic of sound was best demonstrated during the Fourth Human Wave where with the help of sound they could do things which are unimaginable today such moving mountains and shifting the course of rivers. If you wanted to shift the course of a river, you uttered forth certain sounds, and the river took a different course. Likewise, mountains could be transferred. Huge palaces could be built within few hours, which could take almost a century today. Innumerable were the ways by which the Fourth Wave was using sound — both for constructive purposes and also for destructive purposes. The magic was fully known because the ultimate magic is that of sound and mantra.

Development of Sanskrit language

The root of Sanskrit was prevailing and evolving into a language of Senzar, which also developed into Sanskrit. Sanskrit was very popularly known during the Atlantean Age all over the globe. That is why the human beings inherently link up to something deep within when they utter forth Sanskrit sounds. Just for information, recently an Indian couple from Manhattan visited our house and they gave me information which was new to me. They said, *“Master Kumar, do you know that in Manhattan, New York, the best of Sanskrit scholars are at work? And Sanskrit is taught in the schools right from kindergarten because the Americans recognized the power of*

Sanskrit language and they have recently introduced Sanskrit in the kindergarten to be taught along with English." I said, *"While it is no surprise, I am really pleasantly surprised."* No surprise because all the Atlanteans worked with Sanskrit sounds, and it is no wonder that Sanskrit is getting picked up now. It is surprisingly pleasant because the prejudice against the language is slowly becoming neutralized.

Madam Blavatsky writes a lot about Sanskrit in *Isis Unveiled*¹ and in *Secret Doctrine* about how Sanskrit developed over the Atlantean Wave into the Aryan Wave, and how the original wisdom is very well preserved in that language. She also says that Sanskrit is the mother of all languages, and that Greek and Latin are her daughters but not her sisters, as is supposed in Europe. Sanskrit was the language of the Fourth Human Wave, though not the Sanskrit that we know today. It was much more sublime, in the sense that it was not so cultured. The original name is "*Samskruta*". We call it Sanskrit in English. "*Samskruta*" means cultured, meaning the language, as it came from the initial Fourth Human Wave, was consistently cultured to carry the meter, i.e., chandas, grammar, and the original potency of manifestation.

That is why Sanskrit is required to be learned with the etymological key because in a word relating to an object, all the sounds relating to its manifestation are there. The sound formula relating to the manifestation of the object is given as the name of that object. That means the naming is done according to the sound vibration of the object. That is how names were given to persons and to objects. In that name you find the sum total of the vibration relating to the object or that person. That is how naming was done for everything in creation. And it has the meter, which is in tune with the creational process. For example, Gayatri mantra, with twenty four letters, relates to the twenty-four hours of the day, twenty-four lunations of the year, and twenty-four right angles of a cube. Like that, everything is relatable to both cosmogenesis and anthropogenesis. Such was the meter. And the grammar too was developed in that manner. All that is contained in Sanskrit is in relation to the actual formation of

1 H. P. Blavatsky, *Isis Unveiled*, Volume 1 and 2 (Pasadena: Theosophical University Press, 1877), PDF e-book. Available at: http://www.theosociety.org/pasadena/isis/isis_unveiled_volume_1.pdf and http://www.theosociety.org/pasadena/isis/isis_unveiled_volume_2.pdf

creation. In other words, they conceived that language completely in tune with nature. Later in subsequent waves, other languages, like Greek and Latin came forth.

Today, all the European languages are children of Greek, Latin, and Sanskrit. There were also other languages like Aramaic. They are all of recent origin while Sanskrit is much older. The Fourth Human Wave speaks only Sanskrit. And all the mantras were conceived in that language. Note that seed sounds do not belong to any language as such. The seed sounds are just uttered through the throat. That is how the fourth sensation took place, that of taste and also speech. Regarding the poetical presentation of sounds, there was also presentation through prose.

Northern Lemuria and southern Lemuria

The Book of Dzyan says, *“Thus two by two on the seven zones, the third race gave birth to the fourth race men; the gods became no gods; the sura became a-sura”*¹.

The Fourth Wave Atlanteans were developed from a nucleus of the northern Lemurian Third Wave men. There was northern Lemuria and southern Lemuria. Atlanteans were developed from out of the northern Lemurian men. They were developed, roughly speaking, towards a point of land which is now considered the mid-Atlantic Ocean. Today’s mid-Atlantic Ocean was the land first occupied by the Atlanteans. In giving birth to the Fourth Wave men, Atlanteans took over the characteristics and patterns that the Lemurians had standardized, namely two sexes and the physicalized form.

The stature had decreased following the catastrophic upheaval. With all of Lemuria going into the waters, and the Pacific Ocean and Indian Ocean emerging, and Atlantis as land emerging, the wave that developed in Atlantis was of a shorter stature than that of Lemurians. The first half of the Lemurian Wave was shortened by the second half of Lemurians because even during the Third Human Wave, around its midpoint, there was a deluge. Through each deluge, the stature of man, i.e., his frame, and in many cases the intellect was reduced. That was how the twenty-eight-foot man is today at maximum seven foot. From Lemurian times to now,

there is a reduction by three-fourths. That is how it has happened: from 28 to 14 feet, and from 14 to 7 feet. The stature got stunted, and it still continued to decrease. The gigantic man in comparison to the Lemurian Wave has come to the present height by the beginning of the Aryan Wave. Today, many divine beings continue to be seven-footers. Their physical frame is seven feet high. There are lower statures up to seven feet.

Changes of the physical frame

The Fourth Wave developed the fourth sense, i.e., sense of taste, and also the full development of sight by means of the two physical eyes because the third eye was completely closed, so the other two eyes started functioning with greater activity. The two eyes had been brought into full evolution with the decline of the third eye. The two front eyes were fully developed as physical organs at the beginning of the Fourth Human Wave.

The fourth developmental change of the human kingdom, while not presenting a marked change in the physical frame of humanity, nevertheless had its distinctive aspects. Four such distinctive aspects should be mentioned for our study. The development of physical frame reached its **stability**. The development of **intellectuality**, the man tended towards intellectualism in the Fourth Human Wave. There was a great **choice** in the Fourth Human Wave. The great choice was between the divine path and the path of procreation. In both paths, there was a great advancement of the human development. Coming to the development of the physical frame, because the human frame had become stabilized after the separation of sexes, its evolution along physical lines had to do with the development of **symmetry of form**. The left is like the right. The left ear and the right ear are symmetrically placed. Similarly, there is symmetry between the left eye and the right eye, left nostril and right nostril, left and right jaw, left shoulder and right shoulder, left leg and right leg. There is symmetry among the fingers. The human form is symmetrical today. That was accomplished in the Fourth Human Wave as part of the development of the frame. At the same time, its stature diminished. While the stature of the frame diminished, greater symmetry was brought into the form. The smaller the figure was becoming, it was tending to be more beautiful. It was like the saying "*small is beautiful*." Up to that

point of evolution, man belonged more to metaphysical than physical nature. It was only after the fall that the waves began to develop rapidly into purely human shape.

*"Strictly speaking, it is only from the time of the Atlantean, brown and yellow giant Races, that one ought to speak of man, since it was the Fourth Wave only which was the first completely human species, however large in size than we are now."*¹

We are prone to regard the present status of the human wave as representing the most advanced evolutionary state that has been attained by the human kingdom. However, as far as the latest development of the human vehicle is concerned, the acme of physical evolution was reached over 2 million years ago during the middle period of the Fourth Human Wave. That means what we carry as the physical vehicle today, this shape existed from the middle of the Atlantean Wave which is put at 2 million years. That was the time when the Fourth Human Wave was at the height of its glory. In keeping with the advances along the ascending arc, other developmental factors are also of greater importance along the material line. There was material development, and there was spiritual development.

When it comes to material development, what we have today is no doubt an evolution compared to what they had then, but they too had their cities. They had greater power, and they conducted greater wars. Our wars are no wars compared to their wars. When it came to spiritual development, that period of the mid-Fourth Human Wave period was of greater importance. There was the arc of ascent and the spiritual factors unfolded much more when generally compared to the present wave. Thus, as far as the physical form is concerned, the culmination was reached during the middle period of Atlantean cycle.

This is epitomized in the following extract: *"Then came the Atlanteans; the giants whose physical beauty and strength reached their climax, in accordance with the evolutionary law, towards the middle period of their fourth sub-race."*²

Fourth minor wave of the Fourth Human Wave was the most beautiful form accomplished by them.

1 SD, 2:227

2 SD, 2:319

Intellectual development

Of even greater importance than the evolution of the physical form is the development of intellectuality. Care should be taken not to confuse intellectual development with spiritual development. Intellect is more for intelligent functioning in relation to the objective world. Intellect also substantially developed during the Fourth Human Wave. The distinction between intellectual and spiritual may be easily made apparent by equating intellectuality with the manasic principle and spirituality with the buddhic principle. At the buddhic level there is synthesis and understanding of analysis, and the purpose of diversity is always held in mind — the purpose of duality is seen from the standpoint of unity. When it comes to mind, it is analysis after duality. So, it loses its ability to synthesize. Intellectuals can analyze and interpret to the point of hair splitting. Intellect is gaining but the theme of synthesis is missing, intuition is missing. That is where Madam Blavatsky says, the intellectual should not be confused with the spiritual. Intellect is important for effectiveness in the world. Intuition is important for effectiveness in the super-mundane world. Both are needed. Just using the intellect is not enough. Just having intuition is also not enough, because one needs to relate to the world. A yogi is one who builds a firm bridge between intuition and intellect. Yoga is a gradual linkup of intellect with intuition. The distinction may be made easily apparent by equating intellectuality with the manasic, spirituality with the buddhic, and ultimate divinity with atmic qualities.

There was completion of the development of the frame in the Fourth Human Wave. The form settled and gained symmetry and the related beauty. It also grew substantially in terms of intellectual understanding because the manas was settling down, meaning it was relating more and more towards objectivity and more and more towards the body. There was greater comprehension of earthly life. There was also a necessity to eat because now that there was a mouth and the sense of taste, you needed to eat. Humanity thus had to develop and utilize the land for cultivation. They had to be taught what to eat and what not to eat. These were the detailed developments within each wave. When the mouth came, the related activity came. The tongue has a double purpose: to bring food in and to speak out. All the activities relating to the mouth were developed in that wave.

Details of the development of languages

Another important aspect of the Fourth Wave is the development of speech. While it may at first seem strange that the speech did not develop until the Fourth Wave, it is true because only after the awakening of the mind principle was there the possibility to conceive meaning, since meaning relates to mind. Hence, as mind developed through the second half of the Third Human Wave and through the first half of the Fourth Human Wave, the formulation of language came to be. Before that, it was only a language of vowel sounds which carried the message at the intuitional plane, just like the birds. The birds also speak among themselves and their progeny understands. Pythagoras spoke to a great swan and a great eagle. How can you know that language? Only if you know the language of the Third Human Wave. There are many stories in many theologies where holy men were speaking to birds, speaking to some evolved animals such as swans, elephants, and cows. All that was possible even though there was no constructed or formulated language. Formulation of language started happening in the Fourth Human Wave and communication was carried on in a more rapid manner. There was even transference of thought.

Thereafter, Madam Blavatsky speaks of the three stages of the development of language. In the beginning it was monosyllabic speech.

*"1. Monosyllabic speech; that of the first approximately fully developed human beings at the close of the Third Root-race, the 'golden-coloured', yellow-complexioned men, after their separation to sexes, and the full awakening of their minds, Before that, they communicated through what could be called now 'thought-transference,' though, with the exception of the Race called the 'Sons of Will and Yoga' — the first in whom the 'Sons of Wisdom' had incarnated — thought was but very little developed in the nascent physical man, and never soared above a low terrestrial level."*¹

The sons of will and yoga had a different way of communication from the rest of humanity, who were only carrying out monosyllabic speech.

*"Their physical bodies belong to the Earth, their Monads remained on a higher plane altogether. Language could not be well developed before the full acquisition and development of their reasoning faculties."*²

1 SD, 2:198-199

2 SD, 2:199

As human beings became accustomed to working with the mind, slowly the reasoning aspect of mind came forth. The development of language for communication could only occur after the reasoning aspects appeared. Language could not be well developed before the full acquisition and development of the reasoning faculty. Initially, vowels were mixed with hard consonants. That kind of speech exists even today in the yellow waves of humanity where there is no flow of sound; it is like dropping the sounds without consonants. Consonants really bridge the vowels to give the flow of sounds.

*"II. These linguistic characteristics developed into the agglutinative languages. The latter were spoken by some Atlantean Races, while other parent stocks of the Fourth Race preserved the mother-language."*¹

What is agglutinative? There was a sorting out to make a proper rearrangement of sounds. In the early Third Human Wave it was the uttering of vowels as speech, and by the end of the Third Human Wave it was uttering vowels and some hard consonants as speech. In the Fourth Human Wave there was a sorting out of the sounds. This was spoken by the Atlantean Human Waves.

*"And as languages have their cyclic evolution, their childhood, purity, growth, and fall into matter, admixture with other languages, maturity, decay, and finally death, so the primitive speech of the most civilized Atlantean Races — that language, which is referred to as 'Rakshasi Bhasa', in the old Sanskrit works — decayed and almost died out."*²

The unconstructed sounds of language were considered by the sons of will and yoga as "*Rakshasi Bhasa*", meaning the language of the diabolic. The tongue was not yet subtle enough to utter forth proper sounds to give a flow and a poetic form to the speech. It had some characteristics of its own. So they called the earlier sounds as *Rakshasi Bhasa* in Sanskrit.

*"While the 'cream' of the Fourth Race gravitated more and more towards the apex of physical and intellectual evolution, thus leaving as an heirloom to the nascent Fifth (the Aryan) Race the inflectional, highly developed languages, the agglutinative decayed and remained as a fragmentary fossil idiom, scattered now, and nearly limited to the aboriginal tribes of America."*³

1 SD, 2:199

2 SD, 2:199

3 SD, 2:199

Heirloom means their successors. Highly developed languages started forming and the agglutinative languages decayed. At the beginning of the Aryan Human Wave, the language found its full expression as we see today. In some aspects, there was growth in it. There was admixture in it. But the purity of language got reduced and there was more fall into matter. There was the developmental aspect and also its decaying aspect.

*"III. The inflectional speech — the root of the Sanskrit, very erroneously called 'the elder sister' of Greek, instead of its mother — was the first language (now the mystery tongue of the Initiates, of the Fifth Race)."*¹

The root of Sanskrit is the mystery tongue of the initiates. And from that there was the development of Sanskrit and then the other languages in the Fifth Human Wave.

For this Madam Blavatsky gives an account in *Isis Unveiled* that when the Northern Lemurian continent went into the waters, the humans moved towards what is called today the Southern Himalayan region, which was an inland sea during Lemurian times. During the Lemurian times there was an inland sea between the Himalayas and South India. These Atlanteans moved into that area. There the language of Sanskrit was further developed to be handed over to the Aryans. That was how Sanskrit happened to be in the southern parts of the Himalayan range and not in the southern parts of India because the southern parts of India were there before with different sounds. There is a mountain range called Vindhya in the middle of present-day India. From Himalayas to Vindhya, the land which we today call North India, to that region the language moved. That is how only that part of India was considered as Aryavarta during the beginning of the Aryan Wave. The southern part was seen as a primitive wave. Slowly, the entire land came under the influence of Sanskrit.

That is how there were Dravidian languages in South India, like Tamil, which are considered to be more ancient than Sanskrit. Sri Lanka, as well as a major portion of South India have the Tamil language. The islands which are today called Singapore, Hong Kong, Bangkok, and many Tamilian colonies belong to the Lemurian times, so they carried a different language. Slowly, there was an admixture of language with Sanskrit during the latter times of the Atlantean Wave and the early times of the

Aryan Wave. Initially, all South Indian portions of land were non-Sanskrit speaking. Sanskrit came to northern India where it was further developed. All the seers that have developed the Sanskrit language are related only to North India. That was how there was the language difference. Even today, there is a feeling of separation between Sanskrit-based language and non-Sanskrit based languages in India. Among the active languages we have in India which do not have Sanskrit as their basis, it is Tamil and another language called Tulu which is spoken in the west coast. There are many other dialects which are unrelated to Sanskrit in South India. All of India gradually came under the Aryan Wave because South India was elder to North India in its existence. This issue is generally not known. Thus, the language found its own development. If you wish to study language and its development, Madam Blavatsky dealt with it in greater elaboration in *Isis Unveiled*, more than in *The Secret Doctrine*. A great advancement along the human phase of development can be related to the structuring of speech by the Atlanteans.

The lowest point of descent

A clear note should be made that the lowest point on the arc of descent occurred in the middle of the Fourth Round, which occurred during the fourth minor wave of the Fourth Human Wave. The lowest point in the arc of descent commenced during the middle of the Third Human Wave. This is an important point. The monads came here. Then, the manas principle appeared in the third and fourth minor waves of the Third Human Wave, during the second half of the Third Human Wave. Then, there were two options. Those monads who were on the arc of ascent even during the earlier Manvantaras utilized the opportunity to ascend. The other monads availed themselves of the opportunity to descend, i.e., more and more towards materialism and terrestrial experience. The arc of descent commenced during the middle of the Third Human Wave. The descent continued till the first half of the Fourth Human Wave. So, a stream went down almost for a full racial period — from the middle of the Third Human Wave to the middle of the Fourth Human Wave. Thereafter, even this stream is trying to make its ascent.



19. Evolution of Humans and Animals

A two-way progress of man

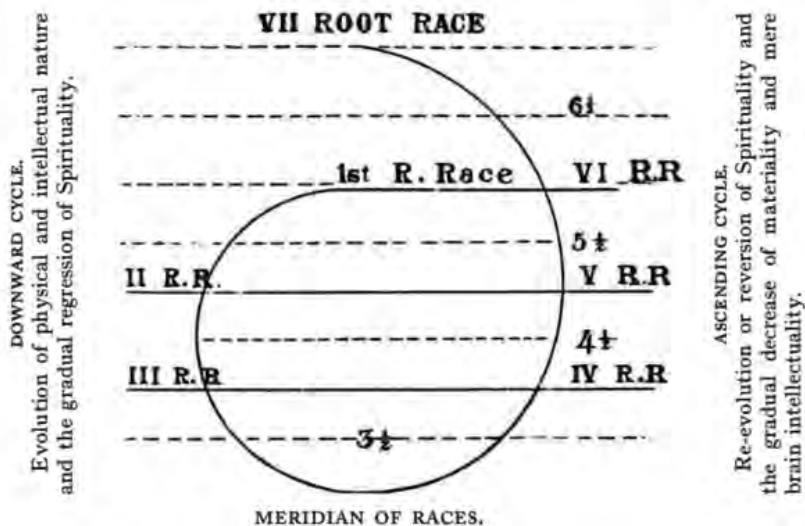
Let us recapitulate that in the Fourth Human Wave human form was perfected as it is today. Man gained the fourth sense, i.e., the sense of taste. Man also gained speech and developed language. The agglutinative language became a logical, rationalistic language with the descent of the mind. Ever since the Third Human Wave, due to the development of the dual nature emerging from the dawn of the manasaputras, there has been a two-way progress by man. Those who were already progressed in the previous Manvantaras, have come back to progress on the arc of ascent to complete their terrestrial experience; and the others who came to fulfil the terrestrial experience further have taken to the arc of descent. That was how in the second half of the Third Human Wave, there was a divergence of human activity to that which is yoga and that which is materialistic. This bifurcation continued and material tendencies continued from the second half of the Third Human Wave to the second half of the Fourth Human Wave.

The lowest point in the arc of descent was reached in the second half of the Fourth Human Wave, meaning it was the touchdown to the grossest level by the monads who took human form — they have come down in their pursuit for material fulfilment. Mind you, both ascent and descent could happen only in the presence of the manasaputras, the descent of the mind principle, which awakened the mind principle in man and distinguished man from the animal. The form was perfected through many varieties of changes and ultimately, it was settled. In the fourth minor wave of the Fourth Human Wave, the lowest point was touched. It all started in the fourth minor wave of the Third Wave. During this period, the materialistic tendencies of the human being, and matter also developed on the planet. Meanwhile, a small group of individuals who chose spiritual development formed the group of Hierarchy and their ensuing activities.

All this happened 2 million years ago while the Third Human Wave was far behind. The Secret Doctrine speaks of millions of years, not thousands

or hundreds of years. Ever since the Third Human Wave there has been a successive formation of the members in the Hierarchy with Shambala as its headquarters, which formed in the First Human Wave. Material development, language development, and development of intellectuality are seen on the material side of things. Using the language for potential sounds, making divine incantations, finding rhythms of nature and related vibrations, the keys of sound, and the keys of light were gained by the other part of humanity on the divine path.

EVOLUTION OF ROOT RACES IN THE FOURTH ROUND.



Evolution of Human Waves¹

"For the Earth was in a comparatively ethereal condition before it reached its last consolidated state; the archaic teachings, moreover, telling us that, during the middle of the Lemuro-Atlantean Race, three and half Races after the Genesis of man, the Earth, man, and everything on the Globe was of a still grosser and more material nature, while such things as corals and some shells were still in a semi-gelatinous, astral state. The cycles that intervened since then, have already carried us onward, on the

¹ SD, 2:300

opposite ascending arc, some steps toward our dematerialization, as the spiritualists would say. The Earth, ourselves, and all things have softened since then — aye, even our brains."¹

The intervening cycles from the second half of the Third Wave to the second half of the Fourth Wave contributed to the ascending arc; towards dematerialization. From the fulcrum point of the throat centre, which is the Third Human Wave, some have descended into the fourth plane of the body while some have ascended into the second plane which is buddhi. From manas, some chose the ascending arc into the buddhi plane and they were able to dematerialize while a major part of humanity was preoccupied with materialization (descending arc). For those who chose dematerialization, meaning integrating their causal body, linga sarira, the self-conscious existence, into the buddhic plane, what happened to them was instead of their mind becoming concretized, it softened into the planes of buddhi.

A concretized mind on the descending arc is a crystalized mind and it can function intellectually in relation to worldly things only — it develops reason, reasoning, arguments, and discussion. However, from the same mind principle, on the ascending arc, when people have taken to dematerialization with the help of will and yoga imparted by the manasaputras, their brains become pliable and flexible. That is the difference between a spiritually oriented person and an average terrestrial person. A yogi's brain filaments are much more supple, subtle and superior compared to that of an average intellectual man. The development on the material side leads to intellectuality and concretization of brain cells, while the development on the divine side leads to softening of the brain cells.

Softening of the brain cells

It is not out of context here to mention that when Madam Blavatsky was taken into the cave ashram of Master Koot Humi in the Himalayas for one year, which she writes in the book *Caves and Jungles of Hindostan*², she

¹ SD, 2:250

² H. P. Blavatsky, *From the Caves and Jungles of Hindostan*, (London: Theosophical Publication Society, 1908), PDF e-book. Available at: <https://archive.org/download/fromcavesjungles00blavuoft/fromcavesjungles00blavuoft.pdf>

was already carrying etheric vision and intuition, but still her brain content was found to be hard. Imagine, what kind of brain content we have! The brain content was found to be hard for the purposes of imparting the Secret Doctrine. So, the Master used to squeeze Madam Blavatsky's brain for one hour every day after the morning prayer. Mind you, Madam Blavatsky is a First Ray soul and a First Ray personality which can bear any degree of pain. Even she was feeling horrible pain when her brain was getting squeezed like an orange. She writes in the book *Caves and Jungles of Hindostan* that the Master was daily squeezing her brain like an orange to make it soft to enable her to receive the most subtle wisdom, and that she was afraid of the morning hours every day. She was very afraid that the Master would come and squeeze the brain. An initiate who by birth had etheric vision and had intuition was put to such a transformation of the brain cells to ensure that the most high wisdom could be passed on to the human wave through her.

The sublime secrets that are given out through the Secret Doctrine would last for eternity because it is a scripture of the future where there is a systematic presentation of successive formations of globes, formations of solar systems, all cosmic intelligences and their workings, as well as the theory of anthropogenesis (study of human origins), man, and how he evolves in his sevenfold manner through the seven rounds. In recent times, this knowledge is a complete presentation of cosmogenesis and anthropogenesis. To give such knowledge, the brain needed to be soft, penetrable, permeable. For that reason, Madame Blavatsky's brain was regularly squeezed one hour daily for one month.

Our brain cells soften as we practice more and more with the light and sound. Coarse material cannot transmit light; it cannot transmit magnetic vibrations, and electric radiation. So, that is the reason for the training, resulting in softening the brain cells and reaching into the areas of the buddhic plane, i.e., from material to de-material. These were the concurrent developments on the divine path, while on the path of procreation there were other developments like intellectuality, language, speeches, knowledge as to how to find food on the planet, and such other things. Of course, the Atlanteans on the ascending arc were not nearly as dematerialized as the present Fifth Wave. Those on the ascending arc in the Fifth Wave have gained much more. Just like on the descending arc,

people in the Fifth Wave continued to gain on the material side compared to the Atlanteans. As the Atlantean cycle approached its peak on the upward journey along the ascending arc, the developmental status along strictly human lives was bound to be more pronounced. So, more and more humanism was getting transmitted through these members of the ascending arc.

In this connection, there is a story in the Bhagavata where the waves of humanity chose two different routes. Gemini is the sun sign relating to the Third Human Wave — duality in manifestation. When duality happened, the counterpart of Gemini was in Sagittarius. There was a story of a king whose thigh and in between his shoulders were churned to bring out a successor to him. Shoulders represent Gemini, and thighs represent Sagittarius. This representation is symbolic. From out of the shoulders twins, a male and a female, were born, who took to the kingdom. And the one who was born from the thigh, returned into the forest and became aboriginal. That is how the two waves of humanity have taken two different directions. This is a story relating to the second half of the Third Human Wave and first half of the Fourth Human Wave. The pair which was born out of the shoulders helped humanity to know how to get food, how to cultivate, and how to produce what it needed.

The Fourth Human Wave relates to eating because the mouth was formed, and the fourth sense, that of taste was formed. Speech was also formed in the Fourth Human Wave. Consequently, humanity has taken two different directions beginning at the second half of the Third Human Wave and there are two distinct communities that appeared in humanity: one on the ascending arc, and the other on the descending arc. Both developments continued in the Fourth Human Wave and into the Fifth Human Wave, but there was a difference. From the second half of the Fourth Human Wave, by which time materialism reached its zenith, it could not descend any further. Humanity in general began seeking humanism, meaning ascending from the solar plexus to the heart. There was an awareness in humanity that they should curb their desire for terrestrial experiences because it is through association with the four flames that they descended into matter. Now, they wanted to curtail and eventually eliminate excessive association with the body represented by the four flames. That is how the reversal is taking place for humanity and

that reversal is continuing. As a consequence, humanism is now emerging as a major concept in the Fifth Human Wave.

The ascent from solar plexus to heart

However, even today, there is still the old energy of the Atlantean Wave, which accounts for 15-20 %, that still prefer aggression and fulfilment of selfish purposes at the cost of life on the planet. That energy is also still present in the current wave relating to Atlantis. It will continue to be more and more emphasized as the cycles roll on. However, humanism will also continue to rise. This is how the ones on the descending arc are also trying find their pathway of ascent. In the meanwhile, those who initially chose the ascending arc have now taken greater initiations. They have become soldiers in the hands of the Sons of Will and Yoga and are creating the necessary inspiration for others. They formed themselves into a group and continue to inspire people from animalism to humanism.

To ascend from solar plexus to the heart, thinking in terms of others' welfare more than one's own welfare is the beginning of the path of ascent. As long as man remains within the solar plexus, he continues to think of his own welfare. As long as he does not think of others' welfare and upliftment, he has not yet embarked upon the path of ascent. That ascent is what is being worked out by a large group of accomplished monads who stepped upon the arc of ascent during the second half of the Third Human Wave. Humanity on the descending arc has developed its own concretized habits: the habit to think for one's own comfort, one's own growth, and one's own welfare. Then one day a new thought appears concerning the welfare of others. The thought of others' welfare and one's own welfare becomes a battle in every human being.

The fourth centre, the heart, sustains conflict and tries to find harmony. Even today, though the humanity has come into the Fifth Human Wave, the conflict of the old — self versus others — continues in every being. That conflict, called the Kurukshetra, happens in each one of us, as the fight between the forces of light and forces of darkness. Forces of darkness means the forces of materiality. The forces of darkness are far more in number than the forces of light to start with. In the Kurukshetra war (in Mahabharata), there were a hundred sons of the blind (darkness)

and five sons of light. It was a 1:20 proportion — i.e., one good part versus twenty other parts. That was the situation at the time of Mahabharata war, which was only in the previous minor wave of the Aryan Human Wave. You can imagine the situation in the Atlantean times!

Distance from the animal

Great wars of a very high order were happening while the seeds of humanism were also growing. The Fourth Human Wave continued developing so that by the midpoint of the Atlantean cycle, the human kingdom and the animal kingdom had reached a point where there was a distinct separation between the kingdoms. On the downward path, there was a limit that a human form with manasic principle could descend. This limit was at the midpoint of the Fourth Human Wave. Man was proximate to that of a beast, but man is not a beast. The Human is not a beast because of the principle of manas which makes man self-conscious, the beast does not have self-consciousness. That is the difference between the two. Except for that difference (having the principle of manas) man was still at that time like an animal — beastly in his aggressions, in his occupations, in killing life, and in so many ways. But that was the limit. From the midpoint of the Fourth Human Wave, he started receding from the beastliness and orienting more towards the human being. When he started receding from that point of beastliness towards humanism, he grew far distant from the animal. There was a time where animal and man were together on the descending arc. From that point, there was a retrieving of the human, beginning at the midpoint of the Fourth Human Wave, humans distinguished themselves from the animal.

And so it was that a distinct separation occurred between the two kingdoms. It was no longer possible for any monad which had been using the vehicles of the animal kingdom for its evolution of experience to enter the human kingdom. Man and animal were living together at one time. Slowly, as man found himself more and more self-conscious, and more and more humanistic, human societies moved away from the habitations of the animal. So, the separation happened. The animals could evolve in the presence of humans due to their proximity to human vibrations and consequently they stood a chance to acquire the manasic prin-

ciple. That is why animals which are proximate to human life, like a cow, a horse, or a tamed dog, anything in the proximity of human beings develop the seed to receive the mind through the process of magnetization and also through the process of taming and training by the humans. That is how their next incarnation would be in a human form instead of an animal form. In the earlier times, as humans became more and more self-conscious, they distinguished themselves from the animals. They built their own cities and places of habitations, and they limited the animals to the forests.

In all the old stories in mythologies, whenever the animals crossed the borders of their forests and entered the human kingdom, kings used to hunt the animals. Hunting was only to ensure that the animals were sent back to their reserve in the forests. There was a place marked for them and it was the king's duty to ensure that the animals did not cross the borders and did not cause problems for the humans. The animals were restricted to the forest reserve. And the humans developed their own places of habitation, be it villages, or towns, or cities. With this separation, the animals lost the opportunity to evolve and enter the human kingdom. That is how the door was shut on the animals becoming humans. Those animals interacting with human beings on a day-to-day basis in a daily life have the possibility of gaining human vehicles. That is another development that has happened in the Fourth Human Wave.

No sister to the D Globe

*"From the preceding diagrams, which are applicable, mutatis mutandis, to Rounds, Globes or Races, it will be seen that the fourth member of a series occupies a unique position. Unlike the others, the Fourth has no 'sister' Globe on the same plane as itself, and it thus forms the fulcrum of the 'balance' represented by the whole chain."*¹

Why Globe D is spoken here is because Globe D relates to the Fourth Round, the Atlantean Wave which is the Fourth Human Wave. So, that is the fulcrum. Thereafter, the wave only has to ascend. In a seven waves of humanity evolution, number four is the middle number. 1, 2, 3, then 4 is the middle point, and there is 5, 6, and 7 after that. That is how the D

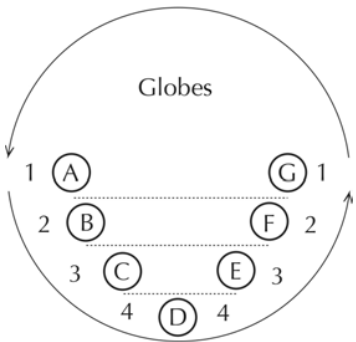
¹ SD, 1:182

Globe relates to the Fourth Human Wave. This is where the monads have a final opportunity to step upon the arc of ascent because once they miss it, they have to wait for another Manvantara until another D Globe is formed.

There is no sister globe to the D Globe. It is the fulcrum of the balance represented by the whole chain.

*"It is the sphere of final evolutionary adjustments, the world of Karmic scales, the Hall of Justice, where the balance is struck which determines the future course of the Monad during the remainder of its incarnations in the cycle."*¹

Those who have taken the path towards evolution are the ones who would continue to develop up to the Seventh Human Wave. Once they join the path of ascent, some of them complete the ascent by the Seventh Human Wave, while some may even complete the ascent by the seventh minor wave of the Aryan Human Wave because the seventh minor wave of every Human Wave offers that opportunity. The final opportunity is the seventh minor wave of the Seventh Human Wave.



No end of the journey

Suppose by then some remained unfulfilled, then they remain in slumber and wait till another D Globe forms. Then, they pass through the First Human Wave, the Second Human Wave, and the Third Human Wave in a kind of dream state until there is once again the descent of the sons of fire, manasaputras, agnishwattas. What happens once they descend? Those who remained unfulfilled on the ascending arc in the previous

1 SD, 1:182

Manvantara are the ones who will begin to develop immediately. But those who did not take to the ascending arc even by the second half of the Fourth Human Wave, they will now enter the terrestrial experience through the human being.

The whole scheme of life waves seems to be so large. It covers such a span of time beyond human comprehension. Imagine something like a plant or a stone or any formation of primitive nature, of the mineral kingdom, plant kingdom, or animal kingdom evolving through all these processes — more than one Manvantara and more than one D Globe is needed for its evolution.

Unable to see the entire picture, we can only see ourselves and our surrounding fellow beings. But the monads are countless. So, until their evolution is complete, these waves of creation keep happening. And creation after creation keeps happening in eternity. This is what the scriptures tell us. We cannot say when the whole of creation will be over; we cannot say when the whole thing began. Once the evolution is complete on Earth, then we go to Venus, and there are seven rounds on Venus. After Venus, the next evolution is on Mercury with its seven rounds. Then, it's to the Sun and its seven rounds. Thereafter, going beyond the Sun into the Central Sun, and from the Central Sun to the Cosmic Sun.

Do not think of completing the whole journey but think of enjoying every bit of it. That is why there is the saying, *"There is no happiness at the end of the road."* Do not look for when we will reach the goal; instead, enjoy every bit of the journey and the milestones that you cross. Then, it is enjoyable. Being here, you can also experience the cosmos. However, to be a part of the cosmic intelligences, there is a path of evolution and we have to choose that path. We lose our way when we are in the glamour of completing the journey. At some point we must begin to enjoy our path along the way. That's our task. That is the beauty.

If it is a 20 kilometre distance, then you can think of the goal. But if it is a 20 billion kilometers distance, do you think of the goal now? Better enjoy the travel here and now. As we travel, we can enjoy the journey. That is how the path itself becomes blissful. Do not think of the end because in truth there is no end. The great beings like Buddha, Maitreya, and even the manasaputras or cosmic intelligences say about the journey, *"We stay back and help those who are behind us because there is a beauty*

in walking together.” There is no hurry to complete the journey. When you know the journey is into eternity, then that eternity can be brought here right now. The projection of the mind can be suspended and you can be in eternity. Being in eternity, you keep moving. That is what yoga offers.

Closing the doors to the human kingdom

“It is the sphere of final evolutionary adjustments, the world of Karmic scales, the Hall of Justice, where the balance is struck which determines the future course of the Monad during the remainder of its incarnation in the cycle.”¹

It means by the second half of the Fourth Human Wave, there are already karmic adjustments and a balance is struck — some are retained for the next Manvantara even by the second half of the Fourth Human Wave; and the rest are taken out for the higher evolution. Those who miss a bus will have to wait for the next bus, those who miss a train will have to wait for the next train, and those who miss a flight will have to wait for the next flight. Likewise, according to the Book of Dzyan, the balance had already been struck by the second half the Fourth Human Wave and adjustments on the karmic scale had already been made.

“And therefore it is, that, after this central turning-point has been passed in the Great Cycle, — i.e., after the middle point of the Fourth Race in the Fourth Round on our Globe — no more Monads can enter the human kingdom.”²

The monads able and ready to enter the human kingdom by the midpoint of the Fourth Human Wave are the only ones eligible for evolution. The rest are retained. This is what is said in the Bailey books, again by the same Master, that the door is shut on the animal kingdom to enter the human kingdom. It all happened naturally and it is not that someone shuts the door. Before the train left, someone came to the train and entered the train, while others remained, so they must wait for the next train. Such is the law.

“The door is closed for this Cycle and the balance is struck. For were it otherwise — had there been a new soul created for each of the count-

1 SD, 1:182

2 SD, 1:182

*less milliards of human beings that have passed away, and had there been no incarnation — it would become difficult indeed to provide room for the disembodied 'spirits'; nor could the origin and cause of suffering ever be accounted for."*¹

What is it that the humans are doing now? They cannot go on producing 100 children. On the contrary, they are satisfied with one or two. How many children can a woman bear today? By virtue of the evolution of their own body with the finer tissues, people cannot give birth to 100 children or fifty children or twenty children or even ten children. Is not the child bearing capacity getting reduced? If the evolution continues from animal kingdom, plant kingdom, and other kingdoms into human, who would give forms to them? Who is willing to procreate and take care of all of them? Apart from the lack of evolution and also the lack of scope among the monads, this is also the reason why there is no room. That is what Madam Blavatsky is saying here. Just like we say, *"The flight is full, there is no room, so please wait for the next flight"* or *"The train is full and you are in the waiting list"*. In the same manner, it would be difficult indeed to provide room for the disembodied spirits. And it would bring more suffering for the disembodiment spirits when we cannot proffer bodies to them. Is it not a serious situation that you are neither here nor there? You are better off if you at least have some animal body rather than no body at all. The situation of having no body is much more dangerous and would cause greater suffering. So, the divine sees an act of compassion in not letting further evolution when there is no scope to provide bodies for the humans. Human body is required for evolution and bodies have to be produced. The related number of the production of humans is reducing. Hence, from that angle also it could not be done.

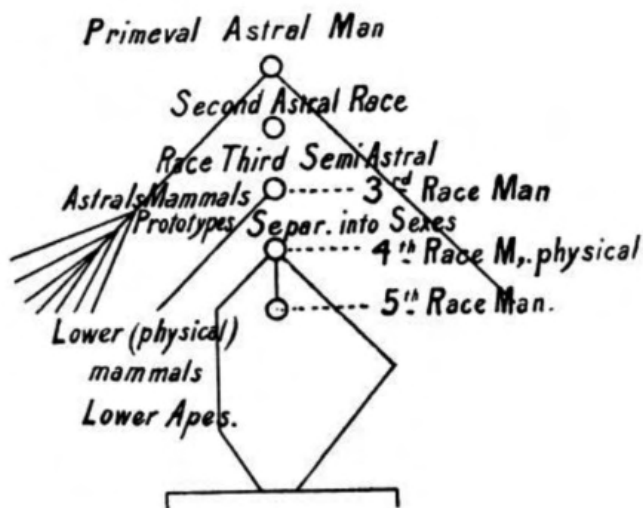
Distorted copies of early humanity

*"The only exceptions to the rule just as stated are the 'dumb races', whose Monads are already within the human stage, in virtue of the fact that these 'animals' are later than, or even half descended from man, their last descendants being the anthropoid and other apes."*²

1 SD, 1:182-183

2 SD, 1:183

So, the apes are an exception because they are products of man. Apes came out of man in the Fourth Human Wave, out of their funny thoughts. When humans started thinking, in the beginning it was new to think. So, they thought in varieties of ways. Very funny! As funny as an ape, as a monkey. So, his funny thoughts gave birth to apes, and these apes are men only. Hence, they are an exception to the rest of the animals. They would also find their evolution along with us.



Mammalian type was a post-human Fourth Round product¹

The apes of Ramayana are not well understood by the Hindus. They are all given birth by those who inherited the mind even by the initial waves. Those who were in the ascending arc also gave birth to some of these apes, monkeys. That is why they are called in the scriptures as “*vanaras*”, meaning special men. They do not look like men, and they are not like animals. They are special men. This is where Madam Blavatsky is very heavy on Darwin. She says that it is not that men have come from the apes. On the contrary, it is the ape that came from man. Do not put the cart before the horse. You cannot say that the father is born out of the son. We hold the fatherhood for apes, but not the apes for us. These apes are an exception and they too find their expression along with us on the planet.

1 SD, 2:688

*"These 'human presentments' are in truth only the distorted copies of early humanity."*¹

I told you earlier that there were human beings with two heads and one eye, two heads with three eyes, two heads with two eyes each, and then the sexes separated with two eyes and four hands. In those days of human experimentation, there was also the presentment of the ape form. These apes are sometimes much more powerful than the man. Some of them are even divine — kamarupas, meaning they can change their form at will. There are some of these apes even on the ascending arc. The Hanuman and his class of beings should not be taken like any other animal. You will come to know more about this in the class about the apes.

The origin of anthropoids is a matter of great discussion and is an unsolved problem of anthropologies as this was an event which occurred during the Fourth Human Wave and became a karmic inheritance of the Fourth Wave, and so the explanation may as well be given. Moreover, it clarifies the statement in the third proposition regarding human evolution that man in this round preceded every mammalian, the anthropoids included. The Fourth Wave language of the Stanzas, the very clear languages of these Stanzas of Dzian, leave no room for doubt as to how Atlanteans acted.



20. Atlantis — Pride and Perversions

Sexual perversions

Endowed with the knowledge of sound, the power of vision, and also its perfected body, the Fourth Human Wave became very proud. That branch of human beings who were tending towards matter became very proud. Those who were tending towards the divine path took to the path of light. But the others became very proud, and they thought that they were the masters. They were filled with false pride. They considered themselves as kings and that there was no god other than themselves, and whatever they did was right. In that attitude of excessive pride, they consequently engaged and indulged in many perversions in their interactions with freshly formed sex forms, meaning the male and female that were freshly separated. They were indulging in a kind of sex with every form. They also indulged in such activities with semi-human, semi-animal forms also.

“They took wives fair to look at. Wives from the ‘mind-less,’ the narrow-headed. They bred monsters, wicked demons, male and female, also Khado (dakini) with little minds.”¹

Most of those forms although fair to look at, were mindless in the sense that they still continued to carry the characteristics of the Second Human Wave and the early part of the Third Human Wave, and their forms were interesting. As said earlier, the First Human Wave forms were transparent, the Second Human Wave forms were blue in colour, and the Third Human Wave became slowly brownish versus yellowish. The earlier forms were found to be of some kind of interest. These females or males with whom they had intercourse were narrow-headed, meaning the mind was not yet developed. Though there was the descent of the manasic principle and the manasaputras or the sons of yoga, not all could respond to it. Some of them were still very nascent and they were mindless. The early Third Human Wave was mindless. Half-way through the Third Human Wave, the mind descended. Therefore, there was interaction with beings who were not of equal development in terms of mind. That is how all these anthro-

1 SD, 2:271

poids and apes came to be. The humans interacted with narrow-headed (mindless) people and gave birth to monkeys and other strange forms. They took wives fair to look at, wives of the mindless, the narrow-headed. They bred monsters. They gave birth to monsters. They gave birth to wicked demons. They gave birth to the species called dakini, meaning they gave birth to a peculiar group of beings who were semi-visible and semi-invisible. Such as these came to be. It is the karma relating to the human being to ensure that they are also evolved. So, they too would evolve along with this humanity before the conclusion of the Seventh Human Wave.

That is how these forms of apes, other monsters, and wicked demons came to be due to the perversions coming out of the new powers bestowed on the human being through sound and light and again through speech because in the Fourth Human Wave the speech also came to be. In fact, seeing the situation and also seeing the pride of the Fourth Human Wave who were trying to disturb the whole law, gods also interfered into the system and they too descended into the human form and gave birth to divine beings and other species such as apes and gorillas.

And certain unplanned species were created due to the perverse will of the beings during the Fourth Human Wave. To counteract the situation, the celestial beings made a great sacrifice by descending themselves into these forms and divinising some of them. That is how in Ramayana, you will find divine beings among these apes, gorillas, and such other species.

*"If men existed two million years ago, they must have been — just as the animals were — quite different physically and anatomically from what they have become; and they were nearer then to the type of pure mammalian animal than they are now."*¹

*"The Commentary says, in describing that species (or race) of animals 'fair to look at' as a biped: — 'Having human shape, but having the lower extremities, from waist down, covered with hair.' Hence the race of the satyrs, perhaps."*²

The beings with developed mind interacted with them, had sex with them, giving birth to such a peculiar species.

"Those who were hitherto semi-divine Beings, self-imprisoned in bodies which were human only in appearance, became physiologically

1 SD, 2:287

2 SD, 2:287

changed and took unto themselves wives who were entirely human and fair to look at, but in whom lower, more material, though sidereal, beings had incarnated."¹

Even divine beings, who became imprisoned in human bodies, took interest in these forms and gave birth to species. That is how even in those beings, there were divine beings with divine potentials and divine capabilities. Madam Blavatsky writes in *Isis Unveiled* about the apes of Ramayana who were all of divine origin and had *kamarupa*, meaning ability to change their form at will, because they came out of the divine beings. There were two categories even among these animals. Some were like those who were on the divine arc, i.e., there were divine mortals in these species also. That is the beauty. Though they had the facility to change those forms, they preferred to retain those forms because ultimately evolution is not through the form, but it is through *buddhi*. Form is a facility. Whether it is a fair looking form or not a fair looking form, what is important is that the mind is turned towards *buddhi*. When mind turns towards *buddhi*, then there is no more imprisonment of the body. When there is no imprisonment of the body, it makes no difference which body you are in.

Influences of negative spirits

*"These beings in female forms (Lilith is the prototype of these in the Jewish traditions) are called in the esoteric accounts as 'Khado' (Dakini, in Sanskrit)."*²

There are some species like *sakini* and *dakini*, who disturb the human course of actions and evolution. Today, Hanuman is invoked to neutralize the impact of these negative spirits, or negative forms, or souls which have come out of a perversion. There are also counter formations happening in the creation. Mind you, all these beings would sooner or later eventually evolve over the course of seven rounds on the D Globe.

"Allegorical legends call the chief of these Lilith, Sangye Khado, (Buddha Dakini, in Sanskrit); all are credited with the art of 'walking in the air,' and the greatest kindness to mortals; but no mind — only animal

1 SD, 2:285

2 SD, 2:285

instinct."¹ — Because they are more in relation to the Second Human Wave where air was predominant, while in the Third Human Wave it was fire that was prominent, and in the Fourth Human Wave it was water that was prominent. Incidentally, we should also link up all those correspondences which I gave earlier. Fourth Human Wave relates to the heart where there is harmony and conflict. It also relates to taste and to the element water. So, the humanity was excessively emotional and excessively devotional. When they related to the terrestrial, they were excessively emotional. When relating to buddhi, they were excessively devotional. That was how the two channels functioned.

*"Yet the 'Lemurians' and the Atlanteans, 'those children of Heaven and Earth,' were indeed marked with a character of sorcery; for the Esoteric doctrine charges them precisely with that, which, if believed, would put an end to the difficulties of science with regard to the origin of man, or rather, his anatomical similarities to the Anthropoid Ape."*²

Those who were tending towards material and those who were tending towards atma (spiritual will), both carried the ability of magic because both were freshly endowed with the power of sound. With the inauguration of the mind, the power of sound, the power of vision, and the power of speech were all gained at once in this Fourth Human Wave. Consequently, they fought with each other with these powers. Some of these apes had capacities equal to that of the human or even more than that of the human.

A contact between an ape and humans

Just after the morning class today, our brother Charles told me that recently an event happened in America that a huge ape in the forest came into contact with humans and explained by its gestures that it had a tooth ache. Interested in the expressions and gestures of the ape, people asked the ape if she would like medication or removal of the tooth. The ape could very clearly inform that it would rather have the tooth extracted. When the tooth was extracted, she expressed her gratitude by way of gestures and walked back to the forest.

1 SD, 2:285

2 SD, 2:286

Lemurian and Atlantean energies in America

Such things are possible only in America! You know why? It is the land of the future. It is the land of enormous possibilities because America with its west coast is well connected with the Lemurian Wave, which was very sublime. And through its east coast, it is connected to the Atlantean Wave. It is in between the Lemurian and Atlantean Waves. The Pacific vibrates with Lemurian energy and Atlantic vibrates with the Atlantean energy. So, the land is in between. Some of its west coast — like California, Rocky Mountains, and the Andes, which are so special and so spiritual — is specifically charged with the mystic vibrations of Lemuria. And the east coast is charged with the vibrations of Atlantis with its good and bad aspects. The Atlantean aggression and Atlantean urge to be great, the quest for knowledge and the quest for power can all be seen. There are so many things relating to this land which is regarded as the land of opportunity for posterity. According to the Secret Doctrine, the growth of science and its synthesis with religion comes only from the United States of America, the land of experimentation. They are the ones with the wild imaginations and they try to realize their imaginations. These are the positive aspects of that continent of America and the people who inhabit that continent.

Examples from Indian scriptures

The theory of the origin of apes finds its answer in the pride and perverted behaviour of the humanity during the Atlantean times. They are products of our karma so we need to work with them. We also need to work with their evolution and they will follow us on the evolutionary path while the rest of the animals do not. As far as the rest of the animals are concerned, there is no scope for them to evolve in this round with the humans evolving into the buddhi or atma planes.

“A careful perusal of the Commentaries would make one think that the Being that the new ‘incarnate’ bred with, was called an ‘animal,’ not because he was no human being, but rather because he was so dissimilar physically and mentally to the more perfect races, which had developed physiologically at an earlier period.”¹

1 SD, 2:286

These species are not called humans by virtue of their form but they are also humans. That is how it is in the story of Ramayana which took place during the last part of Atlantean and early part of Aryan Waves. It was with the help of these apes that Rama, the Aryan king, won over Ravana, a diabolic of the Atlantean times. Ravana was from the Atlantean Wave with all the power and magic. He had the ability to move in the air, and the ability to live through the ages with the help of magical power. The powers of Ravana, the anti-hero to Rama, were too innumerable. He was invincible. To fight with him, Rama, the incarnation of God, needed the assistance of these apes who also carried the Atlantean abilities. The apes of Ramayana could converse with the humans; they could exchange views; they could even transmit the wisdom. It looks as if it is all fiction now because we do not know or understand about the Waves or the possibilities inherent in the Fourth Human Wave, the Atlantean Wave.

Rama, Aryan, was completely human, with the optimum powers of being a human. He was a man who was linked with the divine through buddhi and atma. Rama demonstrated natural attunement with buddhi and atma, i.e., the first and second fires. He also demonstrated a fully developed mind. That is why he is written about as an optimum human who at will could link up to the divine.

Rama's anti-hero, Ravana, was Atlantean with all super-human magical powers. He had the power of sound, the power of ritual, the ability to fly, and the ability to appear and disappear. He could also assume different forms at will. Such was Ravana, the diabolic. Please remember that the divine and the diabolic are humans. By developing different potentials through the mind, some became diabolic, while some became divine. Divine and diabolic are born out of the man only.

There is a scripture in India called Yoga Vasishta which was given by the great seer Vasishta. We all know Lord Maitreya. His teacher was Parasara. Parasara's teacher was Sakti. Sakti's teacher was Vasishta. Vasishta, the great sage, now presides over one of the seven stars of the Great Bear. There was a scripture coming from him called the Yoga of Vasishta. In that he writes that the ones whom we know today as the Trinity – the First, Second, and the Third Logos – were also humans in the most ancient times. If today they have become the Trinity, it is by virtue of their following the path of evolution that they could reach those

places of high “office”¹ Just like the World Teacher is an “office”, and these positions are replaced cyclically. Even the Trinity, the three different offices relating to the cosmic system, are replaced cyclically.

Vasishta was the teacher for Rama. Vasishta taught Rama the Yoga Vasishta. The Vasishta says, *“Brahma, Vishnu, and Shiva were also human beings like you and me.”* He further says, *“Through time, they evolved beyond the planetary system and beyond the solar system. Today, they preside over the cosmic system.”* Such is the law. It is Vasishta who gave the complete alignment to Rama.

Rama, with his ability to link up to the divine, gained the cooperation of the divine and fought the diabolic. The diabolic was otherwise too powerful to fight alone. That is how the human, as he aligns with the buddhic and atmic planes, his abilities become unlimited, meaning they are not his abilities but he is supported by the divine within the solar and cosmic planes. While in the human body, we can gain the cooperation of the intelligences of the solar and cosmic planes. That is how man has learned to invoke these intelligences of the cosmic, solar, and planetary planes. Depending upon the sincerity of purpose, one-pointedness, and the related focus, man receives the needed cosmic assistance.

The story of Rama is an example of a man who walked on Earth who could link up to the cosmos, thereby the powers of the cosmos were available and channelized through him. The powers of the Atlanteans were too small before the powers of the cosmos. Such possibilities are inscribed in the Ramayana where you find the Atlantean Waves, the early Aryan Waves, and the anthropoids and apes. They were all great players in the Itihasa² of Ramayana. Itihasa means the actual story that has happened.

Most of the Indians do not have this knowledge of Human Waves. They have a different way of seeing the cycles through Yugas (epochs of time), like Krita, Treta, Dwapara, and Kali. That knowledge is coming from the Aryan Human Wave. The earlier count was through the Human Waves which are described in the Book of Dzian. People belonging to three Human Waves are described in the Ramayana. Some of the special beings

1 A position of authority, a service, one of a public nature.

2 Itihasa - Sanskrit: इतिहास; iti ha āsa, literally “so indeed it was”- refers to the collection of written descriptions of important events in Hinduism. Available at: <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Itihasa>

of the Atlantean and Lemurian times also find their place in the great epic Mahabharata. But the secret of their emergence is well described in the Book of Dzyan, while they are mystically explained in the Puranas. This is one understanding that we need to gain. All these are humans only. They should be known as humans though they are referred to as animals because they did not carry the human form. They were dissimilar physically and sometimes mentally, but many of them were much more perfect than a normal human. They were all more far advanced than the normal humans whom we know today. This is how the understanding of apes and anthropoids is concluded.

Four aspects of the Atlantean Wave

I spoke of the four aspects of the Atlantean Wave before.

- One was the development of the physical frame, which reached its peak.
- The second aspect was the development of intellectuality.
- The third aspect was the advancement of the human phase of development,
- and humanism took birth at the midpoint of the Fourth Human Wave.

You will need to read this seminar again and again to assimilate what has been said because it relates to us, to our most ancient past as we all have been the players through all these waves of humanity. Do not think they are all foreign to us. This is our history and story too.

All on this planet today as humans, all invariably came to this planet due to the unfulfilled karma of the past Manvantara. We were transported from the previous Earth to this Earth via the Moon which was explained in connection with the First Human Wave. This story is our story. From the second half of the Third Human Wave, beings found evolution from the Earth chain. The fact that we are still here till date shows that we are yet not liberated from the Earth chain. We went through the first stage of amoeba and cell formation and cell division, then slowly took to the different forms — all that is said about the evolution of the First, Second, Third, and Fourth Human Waves. In that connection, there was also humanism touching upon us around the beginning of the second half of the Fourth

Human Wave because from that point the doors were shut on the animal kingdom. Whatever beastly qualities we carried by that time, by virtue of our taking to human form, they cannot proceed any further. Slowly, we get rid of our beastly instincts. In the evolution today, man would not get back into a beast. He would tend to get rid of his beastliness. The less beastly you are, the more human you are. That period was inaugurated in the second half of the Fourth Human Wave. That is why the third aspect of the Fourth Human Wave is the great advancement of humanism. The fourth aspect of the Fourth Human Wave is the great choice representing the critical period of the Atlantean Human Wave.

The historical event just related shows the trend that certain waves of Atlanteans were taking as the Fourth Wave was reaching its prime. Slowly, the Fourth Human Wave has been able to take complete control over the perfected form and over the four senses because the fifth sense of smell came in the Fifth Human Wave. They could also perfect the language. They had ideas about humanism. This is all relating to those who went down the descending arc to come up to the ascending arc. Please remember that in the second half of the Third Human Wave major part of the humanity went down the descending arc. Consequent upon the bestowing of the mind, very few took advantage of the mind and ascended into buddhi. Others descended into desire. That went on for almost one racial period — from the second half of the Third Human Wave to the second half of the Fourth Human Wave. Stating from the second half of the Fourth Human Wave and by the end of the Fourth Human Wave, even they reached the prime of what was allowed under the Fourth Human Wave. It would indicate that the choice which was made was not in consonance with the divine laws, says the commentary.

The Lodge of Ibez

What happened in the second half of the Fourth Human Wave? Some acquired the divine, but many turned out to be unlawful. That is the ultimate result of the Atlantean Age. Some acquired the divine, secured the path of yoga, and moved upwards. But many more turned out to be unlawful. Knowledge followed willingly the left path, meaning the knowledge was abused more than it was used correctly.

In this context, I would request you to read what Master Djwhal Khul wrote in *A Treatise on White Magic*¹ about the Lodge of Ibez which was opened concurrently along with the Lodge of Himalayas. When the Himalayan Lodge was inaugurated by the sons of mind, the manasaputras, the most high beings coming from the cosmic plane, concurrently with the Himalayan Lodge, a lodge was opened in between the southern and northern American continents, nearer to the equator, where Peru is today. In both East and in the West, there was imparting of knowledge. Then the knowledge was used by some and the knowledge was abused by many more as is said here in the Book of Dzyan. In relation to this, Master DK writes a number of pages in *A Treatise on White Magic* describing how the power of sound and the power of vision were abused by the Atlanteans to become powerful on Earth, resulting in the closure of the Lodge of Ibez, while such abuse did not happen in the Himalayan Lodge.

As I told you earlier, the Himalayan Lodge did not believe in aggrandizement. Till date, it believes in simplicity. It does not believe in showing off the powers. There is no showmanship, no publicity, no self-promotion, and no self-aggrandizement because these are all qualities of the personality that are developed by self-conscious people. Along with self-consciousness, personality also comes in with the descent of mind. When the inclination is more towards one's own personality, he would like to show off how great he is. The Himalayan Lodge believed that only the divine is great and that they can live in him. We can live in him, we can move in him, and we can feel him in our being and thereby feel the bliss. When the situation demanded, they momentarily showed their ability to manifest. But once the need was no longer there, they immediately dematerialized, de-manifested. But in the Far West, they were materializing and manifesting just to show how great they were. When there is too much manifestation on the physical plane, then there would be fights to possess it. Anything terrestrially valuable attracts other minds also to possess it. Thus, there were great wars conducted in Atlantis, to possess what was manifested. That is why these possessive instincts, snatching away from others' possessions, snatching away others' beautiful things, snatching away others' beautiful

1 Alice A. Bailey, *A Treatise on White Magic* (New York: Lucis Publishing Company, 1951), Available at: https://www.lucistrust.org/online_books/a_treatise_on_white_magic_obooks_

wives, all these qualities were entertained by the Atlanteans along with the knowledge.

Madam Blavatsky keeps them in italics: *“Men decreased considerably in stature, and the duration of their lives was diminished. Having fallen down in godliness they mixed with animal races, and intermarried among giants and Pigmies (the dwarfed races of the Poles)... Many acquired divine, more — unlawful knowledge, and followed willingly the LEFT PATH.”*¹

They had the knowledge. They knew that the knowledge was not meant for such purposes, but they went on using the knowledge towards such purposes.

There are many stories relating to it in Telugu because they are very few in India who study the knowledge coming from Madam Blavatsky. They may think that they carry the keys, but they really do not. In fact, Madam Blavatsky writes in *Isis Unveiled* that most of the Brahmins who think they know, they know not. When it comes to esoteric knowledge, it was only the cup of very few.

Abuse of knowledge leading to perdition

*“Thus were the Atlanteans approaching destruction in their turn. How many geological periods it took to accomplish this fourth destruction? Who can tell... But we are told that.”*²

It is explained in the commentary. *“‘They (the sixth sub-race of the Atlanteans) used magic incantations even against the Sun’ — failing in which, they cursed it.”*³

You can see the pride. They started using the power of magic against the very centre of our solar system, the sun god. Such was the pride of power. The sixth minor wave of Atlanteans used magic incantations even against the Sun. And many times they failed in their magic against the Sun, so they went on cursing the Sun also.

*“The sorcerers of Thessaly were credited with the power of calling down the moon, as Greek history assures us.”*⁴

1 SD, 2:331

2 SD, 2:331

3 SD, 2:762

4 SD, 2:762

I told you about Ravana. Other than the Sun, he could command every planet. He is the best example of an Atlantean abuse of power. He used to tell Moon, *"Just make your position in such a manner that your rays come through my window."* If Ravana said, *"Chandra!"* then the Moon was afraid. Such things were mentioned in the Puranas. The Moon was afraid when he was called and he had to oblige Ravana. We have similar stories in the Greek mythology also. In fact, Ravana was a man with tremendous knowledge, almost complete knowledge, except for the pride. The First Logos, Cosmic Logos, could give his presence to him whenever Ravana really prayed in focus. Such was the power he carried. You need to see some of the movies about Ravana. Once, when he was praying, the Lord did not offer His presence. Ravana became so furious that he took Mount Kailash into his hands and started moving. Ravana and his cohorts were all titans, giants; they could do anything. They could command planets. When Ravana was to give birth to a son, since he was also a great grand master of astrology, he wanted all the planets to be in the right houses for the birth of his son. He commanded the planets to be so. But then at the hint of the Second Logos, these planetary principles seemingly obliged him but at the very point of birth, they stepped out of their houses and entered the wrong zodiacal houses.

Here, Madam Blavatsky writes that they wanted to work against the Sun but they could not, but they worked against other planets. They were credited with the power of calling down the Moon. You can imagine what we were before the Atlanteans.

*"The Atlanteans of the later period were renowned for their magic powers and wickedness, their ambition and defiance of the gods. Thence the same traditions taking form in the Bible about the antediluvian giants and the Tower of Babel, found also in the 'Book of Enoch.'"*¹

That is the final evil — to defy, to resist God and his agents. All this is because the sons of Brahma, manasaputras, bestowed them with the mind. That was why there was such a huge discussion before bestowing the mind because they knew the possible consequences of bestowing mind. Nevertheless, there was no other way. That is the most important part in our human history. That is why we all are to be ever grateful to the manasaputras — Sanaka, Sananda, Sanat Kumara, Narada, and the Seven

Seers, and their army of disciples. But it is from them only that the diabolic also came. The Atlanteans with mind abused the freedom given. The ultimate of the last minor waves of Atlanteans went to the extent of saying that there was no God other than them, that they were the God, that they had to be worshiped. They did not allow worship of the Sun, and they did not allow worship of the fire. Like this, it went on. That means, they had reached their nemesis and consequently the deluge began. The whole continent of Atlantis was then submerged into waters.

*"They built great images nine yatis high, the size of their bodies. Lunar fires had destroyed the land of their fathers. The water threatened the fourth."*¹

They had forms of twenty-seven feet high. They are called Yetis. Till date, there is still one Yeti in the Himalayas. He is twenty-seven feet high and his foot length is seven feet. Sometimes in the icy planes of the Himalayan range, they feel the impression of the foot of the Yeti. Lunar fires destroyed the land of their fathers — Lemuria. Water threatened the Fourth Wave. The Fourth Wave went down by the deluge of waters.

Before concluding the narrative telling the doom of Atlantis, its far-flung lands may be described. There is a description about the land of Atlantis in the Secret Doctrine. There was a description of the White Island to start with, then a description of the Hyperborean land, and then the description of the Lemurian land. Now, there is the description of the Atlantean land, which we will take up now.

1 SD, 2:21



21. The Sinking of Atlantis

Details of the location of Lemuria and Atlantis

The Atlantic portion of Lemuria was the geological basis for what is generally known as Atlantis. Atlantis was basically formed from that part of Lemuria extending as a horseshoe in what we know today as the Atlantic Ocean. We spoke of a ridge that was connecting the British Islands, Norway, via Atlantic Ocean, and then down under into the South African continent. That arc of land which was existing in Atlantis was the northern portion of Lemuria, which can be seen even now in the Atlantic Ocean. Madam Blavatsky says that in the Third Human Wave there was a ridge of 2,000-3,000 miles extending from Norway and the British Islands towards the southwest, the region we know today as the Atlantic Ocean, and that it ran down into south and joined the land covering the Indian and the Pacific Oceans. That was the horseshoe formation of the Lemurian land. When Lemuria went into the waters after the conclusion of the Third Human Wave, the emergence of the Fourth Human Wave was basically in the northern portion of the Atlantic Ocean which was the land of Lemuria. So, the land of Lemuria was succeeded by the Atlanteans.

*"The Atlantic portion of Lemuria was the geological basis of what is generally known as Atlantis. The latter, indeed, must be regarded rather as a development of Atlantic prolongation of Lemuria, than as an entirely new mass of land upheaved to meet the special requirements of the Fourth Root-Race."*¹

When there was a displacement of waters, more land emerged under northern Atlantis which is today seen as a gulf between Europe and South Africa on one side, and North and South America on the other side. That gulf of the ocean which we see today was at one time the continent called Atlantis.

*"Just as in the case of Wave-evolution, so in that of the shifting and re-shifting of continental masses, no hard and fast line can be drawn where a new order ends and another begins."*²

1 SD, 2:333

2 SD, 2:333

As there was a gradual formation of land, the human wave gradually transformed. There was a gradual development between Third and Fourth Human Waves.

*"Continuity in natural processes is never broken. Thus the Fourth Wave Atlanteans were developed from a nucleus of Northern Lemurian Third Wave Men, centred, roughly speaking, toward a point of land in what is now the mid-Atlantic Ocean."*¹

Whatever today is the mid-Atlantic Ocean was the land of Atlantis.

You can imagine the huge land of the Third Human Wave i.e., Lemuria starting from Alaska, the west coast of America — going down throughout what we know today as the Pacific Ocean, covering all those islands which we have today, and also California, and the west coast of South America — Australia, the whole Indian Ocean, including South India — there was no North India at that time — up to what we know today as the island of Madagascar, then coming down under the South African continent which was not there, and then going up through the British Islands, Norway, and those areas. That was the huge horseshoe of land.

In that horseshoe of land called Lemuria, only that portion which was in the north Atlantic Ocean remained, and it became during the Fourth Human Wave the Atlantic continent. The islands which we see today in the Pacific Ocean, including Easter Islands, Java, Sumatra, Bali, Jakarta, Malaysia, were all high peaks during the Lemurian times. The highest parts of the Lemurian land remained afloat in the ocean. The northern part of that Atlantis already belonged to Lemuria. The southern part of Atlantis was a prolongation of the Northern Lemuria. The entire land of Atlantis was full of high mounts with terraces. Atlantis had more peaks and high lands than valleys. It also touched the eastern coasts of today's North and South America.

When the land of Atlantis submerged into the waters, its high mountain peaks remained as islands we know today as West Indies, Jamaica, Trinidad, Santo Domingo, Cuba, and Puerto Rico. These islands are the traces of the high mountain tops from olden times. If you go to Puerto Rico, they say that there is a high mount called Borinquen Mount. Humanity saved from the submerging waters of Atlantis, are the ones who formed today's South and North America — just like those who were saved from Lemuria came to the land of Atlantis.

1 SD, 2:333

When Atlantis sunk and when the Aryan Wave started, it began in the southern part of Himalayas which is South Asia. That is how the southern part of India, which existed during Lemurian times, has more ancient people, while the northern part of the India became occupied by the Aryan Wave. The civilization of Aryans started in the south of the Himalayas and then slowly extended itself towards west and east. That is the next story of Aryans.

The movement of the monads, i.e., the souls in various forms, from Lemuria to Atlantis happened in the mid-Atlantis in the location of the Bermuda Triangle, a magnetic point. The mid-Atlantic was the main land of the Atlantis civilization.

*"Their continent was formed by coalescence of many islands and peninsulas which were upheaved in the ordinary course of time and became ultimately the true home of the great Race known as the Atlanteans."*¹

During different epochs of the past, huge islands, even continents, existed where now there is but wild waves of water. At a remote epoch, a traveller could travel what is now the Atlantic Ocean, almost the entire distance by land, crossing in boats from one island to another island where narrow straits then existed. At that time, the entire Atlantic Ocean was full of islands and peninsulas and man could cross by land, utilizing a boat wherever necessary. There were narrow straights of waters, and one could cross from one land to another. This seems to indicate that there was more land than water in the era of the Fourth global configuration. The mountains were rather taller than now in that land of the giants. That is why the Atlantic Ocean is considered to be a deep ocean, while the deepest ocean is the Pacific.

*"The conception was certainly due to the gigantic mountain chain running along the terrestrial border (or disc). These mountain peaks plunged their roots into the very bottom of the seas, while they raised their heads heavenward, their summits lost into the clouds."*²

It was a land of mountain ranges, like the land in Southern Italy but with a difference. The difference is that the mountain peaks were very high at that time. They were so high that invariably the peaks were always covered by clouds.

1 SD, 2:334

2 SD, 2:763

*"The ancient continents had more mountains than valleys on them."*¹

That means that it was all highlands. There were no valleys. It was all peaks and highlands. The bottom of each peak was very steep.

Relics of Atlantis

*"Atlas, and the Teneriffe Peak, now two of the dwarfed relics of the two lost continents, were thrice as lofty during the day of Lemuria and twice as high in that of Atlantis."*²

Tenerife³ is an island down under Spain where there is a volcano. Tenerife was a huge mountain and one of the most popular high peaks of the Atlantean times. What is Tenerife today? Today it is a popular tourist destination in the middle of the Atlantic Ocean. The Atlas mountain range in Morocco was equally a huge mountain at that time. These peaks are now dwarfed relics of the two lost continents. They look small now. They are not small; there is much more relating to those peaks in the waters. Only the top parts appear now.

*"Proud Atlas, according to esoteric tradition, having sunk one third of its size into the waters, its two parts remained as an heirloom of Atlantis."*⁴

Atlas was a proud mountain, just like Mount Everest, Mount Kailash, and other such mounts. These are all the highest mounts that we now think of. There were at that time no mountains such as our present-day Alps; they did not exist — no Alps, no Europe. They all came later when Atlantis went into the waters. The Alps and the related land towards north and south linking up to South Asia all formed after Atlantis was submerged. South Asia was also a fresh formation, while the land relating to the Himalayas and northern side of Himalayas came from the First Human Wave in which today we have the Gobi Desert and Shambala, etc. The Himalayas were almost the borders until the Fifth Human Wave. There was an inland sea between the Himalayas and what today is South India. There was no Europe, no North India, no Iran, Iraq, etc. during the

1 SD, 2:763

2 SD, 2:763

3 An island of Spain, one of the eight Canary Islands, in the Atlantic Ocean

4 SD, 2:763

Atlantean times. We only have a souvenir now, the remains of the ancient lands of Atlantis.

The splendour of the mighty Atlantean Wave had become dimmed because of its evil practices. The warning of the threatening waters went unheeded. The waters threatened the lands but the people did not care. Unlike the Aryans, they were too proud to care for anything. A small adjustment in the Pacific Ocean recently put the Aryan Wave into much commotion. It was a small adjustment, but we were alert to it. But the Atlantis people did not care. The key words of the proud Atlantean Wave was *"I don't care."* They did not care for anything because they felt they were gods, and that nothing could destroy them. They could fly with the help of their magical powers. Mind you, the Atlanteans had aeroplanes at that time. Aeroplanes were recently invented by us again. But the Atlanteans, with their magical powers, invented huge ships that could move in the air.

The work of Hierarchy during Atlantean times

The work of Hierarchy during Atlantean times was very present and effective. Just before the continent sank, the Hierarchy and their band of soldiers knew that they needed to save the *sishtas*. Remember that word *"sishtas"* which I spoke to you with reference to the First Human Wave. *Sishtas* are the good seeds. The Hierarchy had to save the good seeds from the Atlantis humanity that turned to evil. Humanity can save themselves, in the sense that they die and then reincarnate in the new land because monads are imperishable. Monads do not die. They lose their bodies which is called death, and they lose their continuity of consciousness. Death causes discontinuity in consciousness.

But from the second half of the Third Human Wave, there were also those who chose the divine path, the *devayana* path. They needed to be saved and had to be brought over to South Asia. For that reason, the disciples of the Hierarchy very intelligently snatched away the aeroplanes of the proud Atlanteans; they snatched away all the *vimanas*. *"Vimanas"* means special vehicles that carry people by air. Aeroplane in Sanskrit is called *vimana*. If the word already existed originally in Sanskrit, it means that the facility was enjoyed by the Sanskrit speaking humans of olden times. Just before the deluge of the Atlantic continent, the disciples of

the Hierarchy intelligently stole all the aeroplanes relating to the proud Atlanteans, filled the aeroplanes with the divine souls, the right souls, into the aeroplanes, and transported them into the new land. Thus, the would-be role models for the future waves were saved. The others perished, later to be reborn again. That is how there was a great act of saving the men of goodwill. This detail was written by Madam Blavatsky in either *Isis Unveiled* or in the *Secret Doctrine*.

The impending doom

Because of the evil practices, the splendour of Atlantis was dimmed. The warning of the threatening waters went unheeded. There are three brief statements in the *Book of Dzyan* relating to this.

*"The first great waters came. They swallowed the seven great islands."*¹

This is in stanza eleven, sloka forty-five. Among the islands, the seven major islands were swallowed at the first instance.

*"All holy saved, the unholy destroyed. With them most of the huge animals, produced from the sweat of the earth."*²

They suffered death. But they came back again because they are monads. They came back again into the human form. There are two statements in Stanza eleven which are further explained by the commentaries to supply the dramatic touch needed to describe such a calamity.

There is a prose explanation about it which is contained in a most sacred script.

*"The one special MS. from which the fragments which follow are extracted, and then rendered into a more comprehensible language, is said to have been copied from the stone tablets which belonged to a Buddha of earliest days of the Fifth Race, who had witnessed the Deluge and the submersion of the chief continents of the Atlantean Race."*³

The manuscript is the most sacred script. The earliest days of the Fifth Wave also had a Buddha. I spoke about his teachings at one May Call seminar in Spain. That Buddha's name is Vrishabha. From the stone tablets of

1 SD, 2:21

2 SD, 2:21

3 SD, 2:423

his times, these inscriptions were copied. On these inscriptions, when translated from a most secret place, the following are its contents.

*"The Kings of Light departed in wrath. The sins of men have become so black that Earth quivers in her great agony. The azure seats remain empty. Who of the Brown, who of the Red, or Yet among the Black (races), can sit in the seats of the Blessed, the Seats of knowledge and mercy! Who can assume the flower of power, the plant of the golden stem and the azure blossom?"*¹

When there was the wrath, the climax of the calamity, the kings of light just departed, disappeared. "Azure" means celestial. This word was also used in the Mayan and Aztec language. The celestial seats were all emptied. The azure seats remained empty of the brown, of the red, and of the black. The brown, the red, and the black are the qualities of the people. The red are the men of will and power; the brown are the ones who are powerful but tending towards more terrestrial things; and the black are the most ignorant.²

"They took to the seats of the blessed," that means these high thrones, which are celestial thrones, were occupied by people of huge pride and personality, and people with total ignorance.

"The seats of knowledge and of mercy were thus occupied." When the seat of knowledge is occupied by the ignorant, the power is abused. The flower of power, the plant of golden stem, and the azure could not blossom.

*"The 'Kings of Light' is the name given in all old records to the Sovereigns of divine Dynasties. The 'azure seats' are translated 'celestial thrones' in certain documents. The 'flower of power' is now the Lotus; what it may have been at that period, who can tell."*³

Even till recently in India, there used to be a celestial throne of Vikramarka Aditya⁴. It could not be occupied unless man had complete knowledge. In the central part of India, there was a great throne with sixteen steps leading up to the throne. Unless man accomplished all the sixteen phases of light, i.e., the fourteen moon phases and the full and new

1 SD, 2:424

2 These colour indications do not refer to today's people of colour

3 SD, 2:425

4 Sun King, a legendary emperor of ancient India. Often characterized as an ideal king, he is known for his generosity, courage, and patronage of scholars

moon, and the related totality of wisdom, he could not occupy the throne. Such celestial thrones were there in the olden times because during the Third Human Wave, divine beings came down to help the monads who were developing. They assumed the offices of the kings and the priests. They gave guidance to the monads that were developing through the Fourth Human Wave. Gradually, the blood of these divine beings mixed with the blood of the upcoming earthy beings which gave birth to a hybrid humanity who continued to help in the progress of humanity on the planet. There was assistance offered at various times and the celestial energies volunteered to mix with the earthy beings. They were the kings of light, meaning the divine dynasties. The azure seats are the celestial thrones. The flower of the power is the power of the lotus. What is the power of lotus? The lotus mentioned here is the lotus relating to the etheric chakras. When a chakra unfolds it becomes a lotus. The six chakras can unfold into six different lotuses with different powers emitting from them, along with light and intelligent activity. The evil ones even tried to snatch those flowers which in the end was not possible.

Evacuation of the righteous ones

*"And the 'great King of dazzling Face', the chief of all the Yellow-faced, was sad, seeing the sins of the Black-faced."*¹

Apart from the brown-faced, red-faced, and black-faced, there were golden yellow-faced ones, and there was a king relating to them. The king of the dazzling face, the chief of the yellow-faced, was sad seeing the sins of the black-faced. The head of the divine part of humanity saw the situation and felt very sorrowful because all the right places were occupied by the wrong people — which is very common today. He said, *"Let me do something about this."*

*"He sent his air-vehicles (Viwan) to all his brother-chiefs (chiefs of other nations and tribes) with pious men within, saying: 'Prepare. Arise ye men of the good law, and cross the land while (yet) dry'."*²

He had his own network of brothers in the peninsula and the island. He sent his air-vehicles to all his brother-chiefs (chiefs of other nations

1 SD, 2:427

2 SD, 2:427

and tribes) with pious men within. He told them to get all the pious souls into the vehicles. And he gave a command. It all looks like a dramatic story, a big drama — that is how it is mentioned in the most sacred scriptures. The great king of the yellow-faced, he commanded, *“Prepare. Arise ye men of good law, and cross the land while dry.”* He organized the air vehicles and sent them to the people to ensure that the right people were all saved before the land was submerged into the waters.

The fight between the White Lodge and the sorcerers

He also informed through his network that *“The Lords of the storm are approaching. Their chariots are nearing the land. One night and two days only shall the Lords of the Dark Face (the Sorcerers) live on this patient land. She is doomed, and they have to descend with her. The nether Lords of the Fires (the Gnomes and fire Elementals) are preparing their magic Agneyastra (fire-weapons worked by magic). But the Lords of the Dark Eye (‘Evil Eye’) are stronger than they (the Elementals) and they are the slaves of the mighty ones. They are versed in Ashtar (Vidya, the highest magical knowledge). Come and use yours (i.e., your magic powers, in order to counteract those of the Sorcerers). Let every lord of the Dazzling Face (an adept of the White Magic) cause the Viwan of every lord of the Dark Face to come into the hands (or possession), lest any (of the Sorcerers) should by its means escape from the waters, avoid the rod of the Four, (Karmic deities) and save his wicked’ (followers, or people).”*¹

“The Lords of the storm are approaching. Their chariots are nearing the land” — the chariots are the clouds that are approaching the land.

“One night and two days”, meaning a day, a night, and the following day.

“One night and two days only shall the Lords of Dark Face live on this patient land. She is doomed.” — The land will be covered with waters.

“And they have to descend with her.” — Along with the land, they also go down. That was the message.

“The nether Lords of Fires are preparing their magic Agneyastra.” These astras are coming from ancient most times, the fourth part of Hierarchy. “Ageneya” means the celestial weapon of Agni.

"The Lords of Fires are preparing their magic Agneyastra" — fire weapons that work with the power of the magic of the sound.

"But the lords of Dark Face are stronger than they (the Elemental) and they are the slaves of the mighty ones. Come and use yours." When the dark forces attack, you also attack with your astras. Let your magic power counteract those of the Sorcerers. Let every Lord of Dazzling Face cause the viwana of every Lord of Dark Force to come into his hands.

"Every Lord of Dazzling Face", meaning the Lord of the White Lodge. Let every Lord of Dazzling Force ensure that the viwana of every Dark Lord is snatched away from him so that no Sorcerers shall escape from waters with the help of viwanas, the aeroplanes, and then build his progeny in the new land. But eventually, they will come. Where will they go? For the moment, there is some kind of peace. But all these monads which are belonging to this humanity will cross the waters and reach the land in some other fashion because they would be reincarnated.



"The Death of Atlantis" by Nicholas Roerich

That is how wars continue on the Earth till today, till the entire humanity realizes that war is no means of peace. How can the war be a means to

peace? War cannot bring peace. War brings another war because in a war there is always someone who is defeated. The vanquished one, the defeated one, will not keep quiet. He will try other means to defeat the one who succeeded. There should be a win-win situation. If someone loses and someone gains, then the loser always plans again to regain what he lost. For the moment, he remains quiet because he is weak and he cannot fight. He will gather strength and fight again. That is why the fight with evil is not seen as a solution by the manasaputras. Enlightening the ignorant and bringing them into the right path through love and compassion, which is a very difficult job, is the solution. It requires tremendous patience, which we cannot imagine. But that is what the manasaputras have ultimately decided because it is like a part of you. If a part of you is sick, you have to recover through right medication and healing. You cannot remove every part that is sick in you. You may do so if it is a body which does not have eternity. But humanity as a body, with all the monads, is immortal. You cannot avoid the ignorant. What are you to do if you cannot avoid them? With patience, with silence, with service, with sacrifice, make them see the light. That is the only way; there is no other way. For the moment, before everything is destroyed by the dark forces, the forces of light had to be saved. That is how the work was done.

The cataclysm

*"May every yellow face send sleep from himself (mesmerize?) to every black face. May even they (the Sorcerers) avoid pain and suffering. May every man true to the Solar Gods bind (paralyze) every man under the lunar gods, lest he should suffer or escape his destiny."*¹

"May every yellow face send sleep from himself to every black face" — to send sleep means to make them more ignorant to ensure that they are not alert. You cast your magical power in the name of God and put them into a kind of illusion and ensure that you come away with their vehicles, viwans, to attain new land.

"The hour has struck, the black night is ready, etc., etc... Let the destiny be accomplished. We are the servants of the great Four. May the Kings of light return. The great King fell upon his dazzling Face and

1 SD, 2:427

wept... When the Kings assembled the waters had already moved... (But the nations had now crossed the dry lands. They were beyond the water mark. Their Kings reached them in their Viwans, and let them on to the lands of Fire and Metal (East and North))."¹

I will explain later the concept of the four karmic deities. Lands of fire and metal, by that they mean, the land in the east and that of north.

*"... Stars (meteors) showered on the lands of the black Faces; but they slept. The speaking beasts (the magic watchers) kept quiet. The nether lords waited for orders, but they came not, for their masters slept. The waters arose, and covered the valleys from one end of the Earth to the other. High lands remained, the bottom of the Earth (the land of the antipodes) remained dry. There dwelt those who escaped; the men of the yellow-faces and of the straight eye (the frank and sincere people)."*²

"Stars (meteors) showered on the lands of the black Faces", meaning many meteors hit the land of Atlantis along with the storm when the black faces were all sleepy.

*"'When the Lords of Dark Faces awoke and bethought themselves of their Viwans in order to escape from the rising waters, they found them gone.' Then a passage shows some of the more powerful magicians of the 'Dark Face' — who awoke earlier than the others — pursuing those who had 'spoilt them' and who were in the rearguard, for — 'the nations that were led away, were as thick as the stars of the milky way,' says a more modern Commentary, written in Sanskrit only."*³

*"Yet the pursuers, 'whose heads and chests soared high above the water,' chased them 'for three lunar terms' until finally reached by the rising waves, they perished to the last man, the soil sinking under their feet and the earth engulfing those who had desecrated her."*⁴

Even the earth did not cooperate with them. The earth, the water, and the fire were all against these demons because they could even command the five elements. When the right time came, everything worked against them.

1 SD, 2:427

2 SD, 2:428

3 SD, 2:428

4 SD, 2:428

Different phases of the sinking of Atlantis

*"Lemuria cannot anymore be confounded with the Atlantis continent than Europe with America. Both sank and were drowned with all their 'gods'; yet, between the two catastrophes a short period of about some 700,000 years elapsed; Lemuria flourishing and ending her career just about that trifling lapse of time before the early part of Eocene Age, since its Race was the Third."*¹ — Meaning the Atlantic Wave existed for 700,000 years. There is an Eocene Age and a Miocene Age according to the science of anthropologists. Lemuria's disappearance was in the early part of Eocene Age.

*"The sinking of the Atlantis (the group of continents and islands) began during Eocene period... and it culminated in the Miocene, first in the final disappearance of the largest, an event coincident with the elevation of the Alps, and second in the sinking of the last of their fair islands mentioned by Plato."*²

When the largest part of the Atlantis sunk, the Alps appeared. The second part of Atlantis that sank was mentioned by Plato. The Egyptian priests of Sais told the Athenian statesman, Solon, that Atlantis had perished 9,000 years before their time. This was not a fanciful made-up date since for millenniums they had preserved their records most carefully. The Hindus also preserved their astronomical records.

*"And they possess recorded observations from the date of the first Great Flood within the Aryan historical memory — that which submerged the last portions of the Atlantis, 850,000 years ago."*³

They had kept records of the history relating to Atlantis and the early Aryan wave. According to those records, the last portions of Atlantis were submerged 850,000 years ago.

Temptations of the left path

This is how the Fourth Human Wave, which is the middle wave of humanity of the seven Human Waves, did their very best in both ways. We

1 SD, 2:779

2 SD, 2:778

3 SD, 2:332

crossed the midpoint and the worst is over. If the worst was over 850,000 years ago, you can imagine what that worst could have been because even now we feel that it is bad. But in a story of the Seven Human Waves, which has the keynote of the evolution of human beings, can we say that the worst is over? There is some meaning in it because we crossed the midpoint. We are on the other side actually. The truth of the Aryan Wave is that 70% of the people are good, 15% of the people have goodwill, and only 15% of the Atlantean pride is still present. It all depends which way the 70% swings from time to time. We are tossing between the two currents. We always take to the line of least resistance. That is why we tend more towards the left path than the right path. It is we that give strength to the forces that cause hindrance to our development. A normally good person would fall for temptation in a tempting situation — temptation for money, temptation for comfort, and temptation for power. We do not mind crossing slightly to the wrong ways for anything that gives us power, money, and comfort. That is how we begin and we make the forces of light weak. You see in every country that people form the right government structure, but ultimately you see wrong people taking the seats. It is only through our voting that the wrong people take seats in government. They exploit our weakness. Goodness remains a weakness, not a strength, with many. Hence, though their numbers are small, the diabolic part of humanity continues to manipulate humanity. That is why it is continuing though their numbers are few. They are few, but they work through common people. The diabolic are not more intelligent than those who work for the evolution of the humanity. There are two different teachers, two different paths to choose. But the students are like those teachers who show them the easy way. The mass of humanity tends towards the easy path. That is the only problem. We learn through experience. After all, ultimately everything is a matter of experience. We gain the related wisdom through the related experience. So, we have hope!

Turning towards the Sixth Human Wave

There are five sub-waves within each Wave of humanity's development. With respect to the Fifth Human Wave, the Aryan Human Wave, we are already through four minor sub-waves and we are at the tail end of the

fifth minor sub-wave of the Aryan Wave. That means the balance is tilting towards the Sixth Human Wave. In the Fourth Human Wave, we developed the sense of taste. In the Fifth Human Wave, we have developed the sense of smell. As we tend more and more toward the Sixth Human Wave we gain intuition. Already a significant part of humanity has gained the sixth sense which is intuition. We are out of the Fourth Human Wave. Even in the Fifth Human Wave, we have passed the middle point. So, we can feel encouraged!



22. The Fifth Human Wave

The beginnings — bifurcation of humanity

With the decay of the Atlantean Wave and the consequent submergence of major islands of Atlantis, which happened 850,000 years ago, the Fifth Human Wave commenced even prior to the sinking of the major Atlantic continent. The Aryan Human Wave inaugurated its era a million years ago, meaning 1,000,000 years ago from now. The major continent of Atlantis sank 850,000 years ago. 150,000 years before Atlantis started decaying in terms of its quality, the Aryan Human Wave already commenced its renaissance on the other part of the globe in Asia. As the Atlantis sank and the Atlantic Ocean got formed, Europe along with the northern part of Africa connecting with Egypt, Iran and Iraq emerged. Subsequent to the dissolution of the Atlantis, the human waves started occupying these lands. Before that, there were already, for 150,000 years, yellow-faced kings who began the work relating to evolution in Central Asia. The northern part of Asia, along with Greenland, was active during the Hyperborean period. During the Lemurian period it became a lifeless continent. In Central Asia, down under the Siberian desert, the Aryan Wave again took up its activity of evolution much before the conclusion of the Atlantean Wave.

The human form found its final perfection during the Fourth Human Wave, i.e., the Atlantean Wave; this happened 2,000,000 years ago. We should be very clear about these periods:

- The planet was formed 30,000,000 years ago.
- The monads found their entrance on the planet 18,000,000 years ago.
- Through the First and Second Human Waves, the lunar body and the causal body were formed.
- In the Third Human Wave, the manasic body, the body of personality, was formed.

With monads gaining self-consciousness as human beings, the body started crystalizing. Until then, they were all beings. All beings are indestructible and eternal.

The initial Human Waves were engaged in developing the related vehicles for the evolution of the monads, the beings. Around the middle of the Third Human Wave, there was the descent of the manasaputras and the formation of the human forms giving a totally different direction to the progress of the human beings. Until then, the human beings were brainless, mindless, and speechless.

- In the First Human Wave, we had only the sensation of hearing.
- In the Second Human Wave, we had the sensation of touch.
- In the Third Human Wave, we gained the mind.
- In the Fourth Human Wave, we gained the sense of taste.
- In the Fifth Human Wave, we gained the sense of smell.

And the perfection of the bodies went on. It is only in the last 2,000,000 years that we have the body that we see today, though in a different dimension, meaning bodies were twenty eight feet high initially, then twenty one feet high, then fourteen feet high, then seven feet high.

With the Third Human Wave setting in, with the development of mind, some of the monads who came to this planet from earlier planets chose evolution¹. Others followed their karma relating to terrestrial experience. That is how in the second half of the Third Human Wave the humanity was bifurcated:

- those who followed the divine path, and
- those who followed the terrestrial path.

The form was put to continuous evolution — from two heads to one head, from three eyes to two eyes, and from four hands to two hands. We settled with this form only 2,000,000 years ago. Humanity having taken two different routes, by the second half of the Atlantean times, humans distinguished clearly from the animals and started living afar from the animals, building their own habitations. The animals lost touch with the humans except those which were tamed by the humans. As a consequence, animals were prevented from entering into human bodies. As humans gained strength into mental and intellectual levels, their physical forms did not permit production of hundreds of children from out of their body. The evolution of the humans into supra-mental consciousness is planned

1 The ascending or evolutionary arc

for this cycle, while those monads that remained in animals, plants, and minerals will find their expression in the future Manvantaras through future globes that will be formed for them.

After the Third Human Wave, there was the Atlantean Wave. They carried the power of sound and the vision of light. They could not really follow the path of the divine because pride due to the misuse of the power of magic overtook them and they caused their own destruction. All this was foreseen.

The body has four flames and the soul has three fires. The three fires relating to the soul are

- atma,
- buddhi, and
- manas.

The four flames relating to the body are

- the body of self-consciousness,
- the body of desire,
- the body of prana, and
- the physical body.

The four flames must be subservient to the three fires. If the flames dominate the fires, then the result is the descent. And if the fires dominate the flames, then the result is the ascent. The Atlanteans willingly followed the left path (of descent) with full knowledge to the extent of feeling that they were the gods and that there was no other god (except themselves).

Migration to Central Asia

While on one side of the globe the Atlanteans were following the left path, there was a concurrent development of the Aryan Wave with the monads distinguishing themselves from the Atlanteans. They did not grow in pride; they followed the path of being humble. They could not coexist with the men of pride. They subtly and silently migrated from Atlantis to Central Asia. They started their work relating to the pursuit of the divine, the pursuit of the atman. All this started 1,000,000 years ago. Before the

major part of the Atlantic continent was submerged, for 150,000 years, the Aryan Wave started functioning in Central Asia because they found the way towards the original Imperishable Land where you have the soul of the planet posited at Shambala in the Gobi Desert. They gathered around that area of Central Asia by virtue of the knowledge they received through the sons of will and yoga, whom they followed right from the second half of the Third Human Wave.

Mind you, a part of the humanity has been following the path of the manasaputras right from the second half of the Third Human Wave. Their progress has been consistent. Through the Fourth Human Wave, they pursued even higher realms of light and many of them could even gauge the source of light on the planet. When the Atlantean disturbance grew, they started migrating towards Central Asia 150,000 years before the Atlantis sank. The Aryan continent happened in two portions: there was a Central Asia portion where there was habitation and inauguration of the Aryan Wave; and there was the formation of the two Americas, Europe, Africa, and Southern Asia. That is how the whole formation gradually happened. Then the pursuit of light continued.

Rebirth of Atlantean souls; the problem of pride

After Atlantis sank, the men of pride had to be reborn. They found their expression on the new lands because monads cannot be destroyed; they had to be given opportunities from time to time. That is the love and compassion of divinity because pride is seen as ignorance; it is not seen as sin. From the standpoint of divinity, there are two portions of humanity: the portion of the humanity that knows, and those who do not know. The compassion of Divinity keeps on giving opportunity after opportunity. It is for the monads to exercise the will and make the right decision. If they make the wrong decision, they destroy themselves. But again, they would be given another opportunity. That is how, Manvantara after Manvantara, opportunities are provided through the formation of continents and globes of the Earth. The compassion and patience that divinity exercises cannot be comprehended by the human intellect.

The Aryans pursued the path of knowledge. These are the ones who went into great penances and meditations in Central Asia to link up to the

atman, the seventh plane existence, their original be-ness. Through their penances, they have been able to discover the clues to cosmogenesis and to anthropogenesis. They were all sharing their wisdom amidst their groups. The major work of the early Aryans was to conduct penance¹, and not to relate too much to terrestrial things. That was their natural inclination. Please remember that meditation and study of scriptures should become natural inclinations. When they are not natural, the monad or the soul cannot sustain it. When one's interests are elsewhere, even when believing in the greatness of the divinity, one cannot sustain it. All would be superficial. And pride would make them feel that they are following the path of divinity.

As long as pride exists, there will be the fourth flame, the causal body or *linga sarira*, the I AM consciousness called self-consciousness, the personality consciousness, which was beautifully named by Madam Blavatsky as false comprehension of self-existence. It is a phantom of the soul. Self-cognition has a separative consciousness from the rest of the being. It is called *ahamkara*, the terrestrial false personality by Madam Blavatsky. That is the basis for pride. Through pride, we try to distinguish ourselves from others. We tend to love and respect ourselves more than we love and respect others. Consequently, we insult and feel that we do not like others. It is a sickness if you do not like people as they are. It is a sickness that you cannot mix or be with people, wanting to separate from people. Illness is the result of a separative attitude. If the *manasaputras* had felt this about humanity, what would have happened to us? If the knowledgeable ones did not enter into and help educate the ignorant and work, in spite of insult and injury done to them, where would the ignorant be? There would be no key or ability for humanity to rise above their ignorance. Pride is the outcome of ambition and one-upmanship. Pride is the result of the desire to be great, to control, to possess and to deny others of our presence. These are all the results of being proud.

Life of the early Aryans

The early Aryans were humble in nature. Please remember the statement of Jesus Christ that *"The pride are humbled, and the humbled are hon-*

1 Meditation, fiery aspiration

oured.”¹ The proud are humbled through time. The humble ones are conscious of life in general and work for the upliftment of that life.

That is how the Aryans distinguished themselves from the Atlanteans who fell due to pride from the principle of higher manas to lower manas. The lower manas is called desire. They had desires towards terrestrial things — accumulation of terrestrial power, accumulation of terrestrial treasures, accumulation relating to all that is terrestrial. Those who follow the path of light have realised that the less terrestrial things you possess, the less heavy you are. The many terrestrial things you possess is in direct relation to how heavy you are. Possession is not only at the physical level, but it is also at the emotional and mental levels. The attitude of possessiveness should be eliminated. To those who do not have a possessive attitude, it does not matter that certain things are in their name. Feeling this is “*my land, my people, my family, my business*” is a possessive attitude. You may own them, but you do not have to have that possessive attitude.

This is what the Aryans learned at the beginning. They also did not believe in creating huge forts and cities on the physical plane. Manifestation was within their power because, like the Atlanteans, they had the knowledge of sound and the knowledge of light. But they saw that by doing all this externalization, it was only for the purpose of aggrandizement. The inner quality of man was getting lost, and the subtle principle of manas was becoming more and more crystalized. People with too many terrestrial possessions have crystalized, concretized minds. Such an intellect is not linked up to the buddhic plane. Manas is a neutral principle. When you relate manas to primarily terrestrial things, manas becomes crystalized. Some bodies are very flexible while some bodies are very rigid. The rigidity comes through the possessive attitude. The more possessive you are, the more rigid is your body. Even in the texture and nature of the bodies, there is a distinction between people who are possessive and who are non-possessive. Likewise, the intellect of people who are not possessive is very flexible, able to adjust itself according to the conditions. When the intellect becomes rigid, it seeks to adjust everything, even nature, according to its own terms. Trying to adjust nature is an ignorant act. Adjusting oneself to nature is an intelligent act related to knowledge.

¹ Bible, NT Mat. 23:12

The Aryans were tending more towards supra-mental consciousness. They were intellectual and became intuitional in the early human waves. They segregated from that part of humanity which was full of pride. They built schools of knowledge and propagated that knowledge amidst those who sought it. The chief functioning of the Aryans in the initial stages was tapas. Tapas means to meditate with fiery aspiration. Their aspiration was so fiery that they went into meditation for years, decades, and even centuries till they experienced the imperishable quality relating to them, which is themselves. It is called the state of *atman*. From that state, they experienced all knowledge. They checked and counterchecked it with their colleagues and formulated wisdom.

They did all this silently and even secretly while the hub of activity was in Atlantis. When it was decided that Atlantis would sink, these good seeds were lifted from that part of humanity in Atlantis and were brought to Central Asia. The rest of Atlantis sank.

150,000 years after the inauguration of the Aryan activity, the beings who perished through Atlantis slowly started coming into the newly formed lands. Simultaneously, those who still had desire and pride also came back into bodies. That is how during the minor waves of the Third, Fourth, and even Fifth Human Waves, there was quite a conflict between those with pride and those with peace. Peace was the keynote of the Aryans. Now, at the tail end of the fifth minor wave, humanity generally demands peace and the pursuit of knowledge. The old Atlantean power however, still anchors around the places of power on the planet. There was a change of situation around the fifth minor wave of the Fifth Human Wave.

In the early waves, before the submergence of Atlantis, the Aryans around Central Asia had a great culture. The first minor waves of the Aryan Waves are called Hindus. The land they occupied was called Hindustan, which covered areas such as Burma, Afghanistan, Kazakhstan, all those "stans". Burma is a distorted sound of Brahma; it is called Brahma-desa, meaning land of Brahma. It became Burma in the hands of the English. And Hindu has become Indu in the hands of the English. "Ha" is the sound relating to the solar energy. When "Hindu" becomes "Indu," it becomes lunar energy. Yesterday, we heard the children say "*Jai Hind*". Hind was the original name of this Central Asia.

There, in this original development was the founding of the Hierarchy, while the ashram at Ibez closed. During the Atlantean times, Ibez was closed because of the abuse. The ashram around Central Asia was forti-

fied, like a jewel, with the ashram in the Gobi Desert. It is the truth and the soul of the planet. The king of humanity, Sanat Kumara, lives in Shambala which is hidden in the desert of Gobi. You can experience this ashram only in the second ether. With that as impulse in the sahasrara (crown chakra), the eye of humanity, the ajna centre of humanity, was formed by the Hierarchy, and they permeate up to the heart centre. This was accomplished during the first and second minor waves of the Aryan Wave before others joined, and then there was a mix-up.

The later part of the third and fourth minor waves, and the early part of the fifth minor wave, went through conflict between acquisition and self-rule. In the initial stages, the Aryan Waves were ruled by divine kings who descended and gave the laws to humanity. And people were living in small groups, not gathering into huge cities because they knew anything terrestrial would eventually disintegrate. The Aryans did not build huge civilizations like in Atlantis. They lived in small groups, relating to and experiencing the peace and bliss of nature. They did not build huge cities and they did not believe in excessive materialization. That was how simplicity as a basis for peaceful living was conceived.

The major activity of human life of the early Aryans was to relate to the atman through meditation, to live with minimum comfort, food, and habitation, and to follow the laws of Manu, understanding the debt to the five elements and the lunar pitris by offering bodies to human beings. That was done as a duty while the orientation was more towards meditation. After conceiving a few children, they would have repaid their debt to the lunar pitris. Thereafter, they only engaged in meditation.

By the seventh year, the children were all sent to the ashram schools for education. The teachers were the builders of the society; they were imparting wisdom and ensuring the unfoldment of souls according to their ray quality. That was how they functioned, till the new wave of humanity came and joined. Whenever there is a new energy joining, it takes time for readjustment.

The time for such readjustment has been from the second half of the third minor wave, throughout the fourth minor wave, and the first half of the fifth minor wave of the Fifth Human Wave. We are now in the second half of the fifth minor wave of the Fifth Human Wave, which would eventually give way for the sixth minor wave of the Fifth Human Wave.

The Aryans progressed in terms of language and in terms of a much more poised invocation of the divine through sounds. Thousands of hymns were conceived for that purpose. They systematized the methods of meditation and also the process of a gradual unfoldment from terrestrial experience to the Absolute, like the eightfold path of yoga. Their main occupation was to find thousands and thousands of ways to reach the atman. They were not saying that this was the only way but that the divine can be conceived in varieties of ways, and that the general pattern of all these ways is the same. They only decided upon the general pattern and let people experience the divine themselves by adopting a way of life for themselves. That way of life which offered a peaceful co-existence with other humans and also with other life on the planet. This was ultimately conceived as the *dharma*, which is today prescribed as *sanatana dharma*. They also conceived the methods by which the body could be trained to experience the light. The body needed to be trained because it is too raw to experience the light directly. That training came to be called yoga, a discipline as a way of life. Through such training as yoga, you cause the tissues of the body to be fit and able enough to absorb the light and sound coming from the highest realms of knowledge. Everything is potentially there in man. As man disciplines and trains himself, he is then able to experience within and around the highest realms of light, sound and knowledge. They incorporated all their experiences in the form of Vedic hymns, and later in the Upanishads, Puranas, and Ithihasas. That is how the scriptures came to be.

Even in the land of Israel, until 3,000 years ago, the major activity was meditation. People were retiring into caves on the banks of the Judaeen Hills, and they were engaged in constant meditation. There are the Qumran caves on the banks of Jordan River, which is dry today. There you will find innumerable caves on either side of the river bank. People were meditating there, and making notes, writing and preparing scrolls of their experiences through meditation. The Israelis have preserved them. They also had a community exclusively for meditation. Their major work was to meditate and to know the Plan. Before it became Israel, it was the land of Canaan. "*Cnana*" was the sound relating to "*jnana*", relating to knowledge. Those were the Gnostics. If you go further in that direction, even the Druids believed only in meditation and were relating to the sky as the heaven. A lot is said about the Druids and about the land of Canaan in the Secret Doctrine.

Today, we talk of meditation, service, and study. That is exactly what the early Aryans scriptures speak of. "*Tapas*" means meditation. "*Swadhyaya*" means self-study. The study in the scriptures is the study of oneself, through self-contemplation, self-introspection, and self-analysis; you also look to the scriptures for guidance. "*Swa-adhyaya*" means enquiring of oneself about what is it that I carry as my nature? It is a self-reflective study, developing self-awareness, self-observation of actions and reactions, eventually realizing the Divine presence within.

This self-introspection is very essential for self-development. It is not that you should just jump into a routine upon awakening. The Vedas strongly recommend self-introspection on a daily basis. Analyze your physical movements — is there anything that can be eliminated? Make an analysis of your vocal utterances — you cannot talk just because you have a tongue which was formed at the Fourth Human Wave. We should use the tongue for constructive purposes. That is how practicing silence has come to be. Make an analysis of your daily communication — how much useless talk is in your speech? And then make an analysis of the thoughts that keep occurring, and eliminate avoidable thoughts. Then you will have a clean mind. Through self-introspection, if you can daily eliminate avoidable thoughts, speeches, and movements, then your mind will be eligible and able to focus on something superior which exists in you as light, as buddhi.

Until you enter into buddhi, you cannot experience the atman. You are now just trying to emerge out of desire into manas — that is the general characteristic of the times. It enables you to shift your focus from personal desires, views, concepts, doctrines, and beliefs to the unlimited light of the soul. The light of the soul is called buddhi. Until you walk into the light of the soul, the seventh step of accomplishment does not happen.

Preparation for the sixth minor wave

Given that we will be walking into the sixth minor wave¹ very soon, it is very likely that those who are sincere in their efforts can experience the sixth sense because now the five basic senses are all in form and available. We can smell, taste, see terrestrial things, hear and listen, and we can feel through touch. What is next? This sixth sense was to be given in the second

1 6th sub-plane of the Fifth Aryan Wave

half of the Third Human Wave. But people then, by virtue of the new-found facility of mind, went towards terrestrial experiences and towards experiencing the powers of the body more than the powers of spirit. From that point of spirit, there is a slow turning back into pure mind, the buddhic plane to appear in the sixth minor wave. In the seventh minor wave¹, a larger portion of humanity can experience the atmik plane. If we do not avail ourselves of this opportunity, we will have to wait for the next round. That is how the scheme of things works. It is an opportunity. The opportunity is given and we have been bestowed with the will to choose this opportunity or not. We can decide our own course of action. That is how the developmental scheme of the Aryan Wave is worked out.

The progress of humanity thus far is to the satisfaction of the higher ones, in spite of the Atlantean energies still trying to control and capture humanity. The Atlantean energy, in its last-ditch effort, is fiercely trying to hold on to the old ways. But the prevailing energy is otherwise. It is said that we will walk into an age where on this globe there would be no wars, no colonialism, and no imperialism — helping each other, thinking of global welfare, and not fighting for terrestrial things. Such ideas are emerging to a great extent. We are now at the threshold of the sixth minor wave of the Aryan Wave. We have also completed one fourth of the Kali Yuga, the prathamapada part, and that we would walk into a better side of things. But the opportunity is always there for us to enter into further experiments. All this is true for those who are treading the path of light. But there are so many who still need to experience the terrestrial treasures. Ultimately, it is the individual decision or even a group decision.

This is in short about the Aryan Wave.

1 7th sub-plane of the Fifth Aryan Wave



23. Inheritance of the Past and Path into the Future

Beginnings of the Fifth Wave; the first divine kings

We recapitulate again from the Secret Doctrine the relevant passages relating to the Fifth Human Wave with which we will conclude the seminar.

*"The fifth produced from the Holy stock remained; it was ruled over by the first divine Kings."*¹

From out of the Fourth Human Wave, the holy were saved. And the people who were unholy, in the sense that they were proud and were clinging to the left path, all sank in the submergence of Atlantis. The unholy should not be seen as those who were looking for terrestrial experience. Seeking terrestrial experience is not unholy. That would be a wrong understanding. To seek such an experience at the cost of the life of others and at the cost of comfort of others is what is considered unholy. Man is free to experience spirit or matter. There is no law in any scripture that says experiencing that which is terrestrial is sinful because matter in its finality is spirit.

Be it matter or be it spirit, one is supposed to experience it peacefully without causing discomfort to fellow beings. Your spiritual practices cannot be a discomfort to others. There are many fanatical spiritualists who cause discomfort to others with their practices. They are unholy. What is important is that you experience whatever you wish to experience here — spirit or matter — and let it be a peaceful experience: peace for you and peace for others. When your practices are not peaceful to others, it is no practice at all. In the name of all religious practices today, and in the name of God, there is, among human beings, so much more discomfort being created than are comfort and peace.

What is holy and what is unholy? The general thinking of the theists is everything material is unholy. That is a very wrong understanding. Where is the basis for us to experience the spirit without matter? You cannot cut off the branch of the tree upon which you stand. Holy and unholy need to be redefined. There are many unholy practices in the name of holiness, while there are so many holy practices which are not recognized as such. We

1 SD, 2:21

need to look at things afresh, and not go by the general thought of mediocrity. Mediocre people think that all practices relating to the divine are holy, and that all practices relating to the pursuit of material experience are unholy. But don't we see much unholiness in many so-called holy activities? This is because the unholiness of the seemingly holy practices cause more damage than the other practices. Any practice which does not help a peaceful coexistence is unholy. This is how we have to understand what is holy and what is unholy.

The holy stock was saved during the submergence of Atlantis, meaning people who had common sense and who were not a nuisance to others were saved. Those who were a nuisance were left behind. They will slowly find expression through a new incarnation. Please understand holy and unholy from the standpoint of wisdom.

The divine kings decided to give them the law again. Therefore, they descended upon Earth. *"... Who re-descended, who made peace with the fifth, who taught and instructed it."*¹

Disturbance of Earth's axis and dating the submergence of Atlantis

*"All this goes to show that the semi-universal deluge known to geology (first glacial period) must have occurred just at the time allotted to it by the Secret Doctrine: namely 200,000 years (in round numbers) after the commencement of our Fifth Race or about the time assigned by the Messrs. Croll and Stockwell for the first glacial period: i.e., about 850,000 years. Thus, as the latter disturbance is attributed by geologists and astronomers to 'an extreme eccentricity of Earth's orbit' and as the Secret Doctrine attributes it to the same source, but with the addition of another factor, the shifting of the Earth's axis — a proof of which may be found in the Book of Enoch, if the veiled language of the Puranas is not understood — all this should tend to show that the ancients knew something of the 'modern discoveries' of Science."*²

What is recorded in the scriptures of the Hindus was that Atlantis submerged 850,000 years ago. The geologists also confirmed the same situa-

1 SD, 2:21

2 SD, 2:144-145

tion, except that the Secret Doctrine speaks of the movement of the Earth's axis resulting in submergence while the scientists called it as extreme eccentricity of Earth's orbit. That means there was an unusual and irregular movement of the Earth in its orbit around the Sun.

*"Now our Fifth Root-Race has already been in existence — as a race sui generis and quite free from its parent stem — about 1,000,000 years; therefore it must be inferred that each of the four preceding Sub-races has lived approximately 210,000 years; thus each Family-Race has an average existence of about 30,000 years."*¹

Apart from what was happening in Atlantis, the Fifth Human Wave was already in existence for 1,000,000 years, meaning 150,000 years before the submergence of Atlantis which occurred 850,000 years ago. I am just reading the passages as they are given in the Secret Doctrine.

*"The Aryan Race was born and developed in the far north, though after the sinking of the continent of Atlantis its tribes emigrated farther south into Asia."*²

Meaning that already in Central Asia and Northern Asia, the Aryan Wave was emerging to whom the law was given and the divine kings descended 150,000 years ago. Thereafter, when Atlantis sank, the rest of the stock that was considered came through farther south into Asia, into Europe, and into the two Americas. That is how there are two stages of Aryans.

Development of the planet and of the human form

The fivefold form of man, which is referred to as a tabernacle — the five senses, the five sensations, the five sense organs, the five organs of action, the five pulsations — and the fifth principle manas, is the constitution of the human body in which the soul resides as atma and buddhi.

"The 'tabernacles' have improved in texture and symmetry of form, growing and developing with the globe that bore them; but the physical improvement took place at the expense of the spiritual inner man and nature. The three middle principles in earth and man became with every race more material; the Soul stepping back to make room for the physical

1 SD, 2:435

2 SD, 2:768

intellect; the essence of elements becoming the material and composite elements now known.”¹

This tabernacle improved in texture when the Aryan Wave further improved, and the symmetry also further improved.

Along with the development of the planet, the form also developed and improved. But the improvement of the form was at the expense of the inner spiritual man because it is only the essence which expresses itself as the matter. So, there was more expending of the essence. Consequently, there was more matter and less spirit. As I said earlier, a similar principle exists with huge cities. When huge cities are built, it results in a great body of beings with more material values and with less spiritual, social, and cultural values. As the form developed more and more, it happened at the expense of the spiritual inner nature of man. The same essence is distributed between the soul, the personality, and the body. The three middle principles of Earth and man became more material with every wave, with the soul stepping back to make room for the physical intellect. More and more intellect, and more and more understanding of the outer world. Consequently, man was more outer focused and forgot the inner abode. The essence of the elements became composite elements as we know them now. Even the elements became composite elements.

Consequently, manas, the mind principle, in association with objectivity became kama-manas — a desiring mind, desiring all that is related to the outer world. Manas being the middle principle, can become kama-manas, or it can be manas with buddhi. That is what we pray for by reciting The Gayatri every day that manas may align with buddhi. “Dhiyo yonah prachodayat”, meaning may our buddhi be alerted. This is a process of aligning the manas, mind, with buddhi. It should become a habit. Then, we would be able to live in the material without being affected by it.

Material tendencies of the Fifth Wave

Manas, the middle principle, has three positions. It can position itself where there is no reflection of anything, spiritual or material. It can position itself in desire relating to the outer material world. Or, it can position itself desiring buddhi. When it desires higher realms it is called will.

1 SD, 1:225

When it positions itself in lower realms, it is called desire. Desire is a lower form of will. Will which is distorted or will expressing itself towards lower aspects is called desire. Where we position our mind decides what we experience. As long as the mind is positioned or focused at the desire level, then there will be a personal motive. To accomplish such personal motives, man tends to manipulate. When he tends to manipulate, there is the related karma. When karma takes place, he moves in circles because karma creates a cause and effect situation. Personal karma emerges from the manipulative tendencies of the mind. Karma-universal is an activity of human welfare where there is no manipulation and no self-profit. It is the common good that is thought of in karma-universal. That is what one learns if the manas principle steps into buddhi. When the manas principle steps into desire, it tends to be manipulative. That is how karma was generated beginning at the second half of the Third Human Wave. Man was given the mind. Thereby, he gained self-consciousness. He was free to use his consciousness whichever way he chose. This freedom substantially resulted in the monads associating with desire and not just with buddhi. That is how the karmic tendencies emerged from the second half of the Third Human Wave. Animals do not generate any further karma until they gain self-consciousness through the development of the mind principle.

*"In our present all-material Fifth Race, the earthly Spirit of the Fourth is still strong in us; but we are approaching the time when the pendulum of evolution will direct its swing decidedly upwards, bringing Humanity back on a parallel line with the primitive third Root-Race in Spirituality."*¹

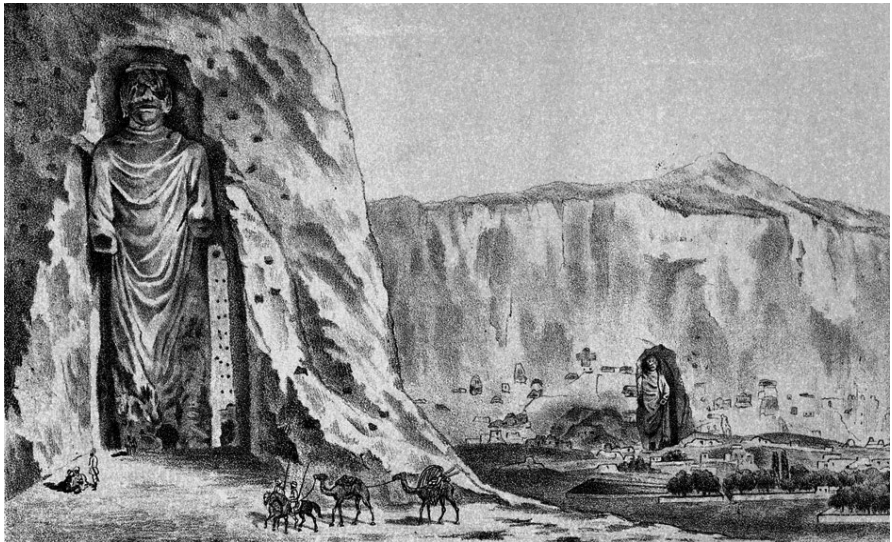
The earthly spirit of the Fourth is still strong in the Fifth Human Wave. The Fourth Human Wave became very attached to earthly things. The Fifth Wave is still strong with respect to the earthly things, but we are approaching the time when the pendulum of evolution will direct its swing decidedly upwards. Even the people who are strongly attached to the material, due to the swing of the pendulum of time, will incline more and more towards the subtle and divine realities.

"For, remember well, as we are in the manasa period of our cycle of races, or in the Fifth, we have, therefore, crossed the meridian point of

the perfect adjustment of Spirit and Matter — or that equilibrium between brain intellect and Spiritual perception."¹

That means humanity as a whole, through these periods of the Third and Fourth Human Waves and the first half of the Fifth Human Wave, has crossed that point of being primarily oriented towards matter. So, we have crossed the meridian. We have crossed that equilibrium between intellect and spiritual perception. And there will be full development of manas and that will lead us to experience the purpose of the Aryan Human Wave, which would and enable us to experience the kingdom of God upon Earth. We have crossed the crucial point and we expect to make progress into that supra-mental consciousness in the ensuing minor waves, that is the sixth and seventh minor sub-wave of the Fifth Aryan Wave.

The statues of Bamiyan — testimony of the five Human Waves



Bamiyan statues (artist rendering)

In the Hindu-Kush mountain ranges, in Afghanistan, there is a place called Bamiyan in Central Asia between Kabul and Balkh. These mountain ranges are 8,500 feet above sea level. In the valleys of these mountain ranges,

¹ SD, 2:300

there are huge sandstone caves and grottoes where the Buddhists built their viharas¹.

In those caves, the history of man was originally preserved by carvings of five different statues, each having five different sizes representing the different waves of humanity from the second half of the First Human Wave to the Fifth Human Wave. The reality is that when the Buddhist monks sought refuge in the caves, they changed the original carving and turned the statues into that of Buddha, his wife, and his son.

The Third Human Wave was millions of years ago before Gautama Buddha. Destruction is the effect of the Kali Age where we try to paint the truth according to our wish, and Buddhism is no exception. The Taliban, March 2001, blew up and destroyed these statues after the Taliban government declared they were idols. That is why they just blasted all these statues. Time does not spare that which is not truth. We felt very sorry when a huge statue of Buddha was targeted by bullets and was destroyed. No doubt, it is an act of ignorance to destroy something beautiful. But in its destruction, there is a higher truth. We only see that which is apparent. The tide of time spares no one and nothing. It does not spare anything that is not true. Similar would be the fate of all aggressive religions. Their falsehood exposed by time and through thousands of years.

The Buddhist monks had covered the original stone statues with plaster and carved many smaller figures with niches. Hiouen Thsang (a Buddhist author), whose name is also written Xuanzang, came from China and explained the civilization relating to Ganges and Indus rivers. He wrote about the culture of Hindustan, the knowledge and high level of social life they held, and the peaceful coexistence they experienced. He touched upon these statues and said the Buddhist monks who entered the valley around the first century, saw these original ancient statues and decided to change, ornament and to clothe them in the guise in which Buddha is usually represented.

*"Therefore Hiouen Thsang, speaking of the colossal statue, says that 'the shining of the gold ornamentation that overlaid the statue' in his day 'dazzled one's eyes,' but of such gilding there remains not a vestige in modern times."*²

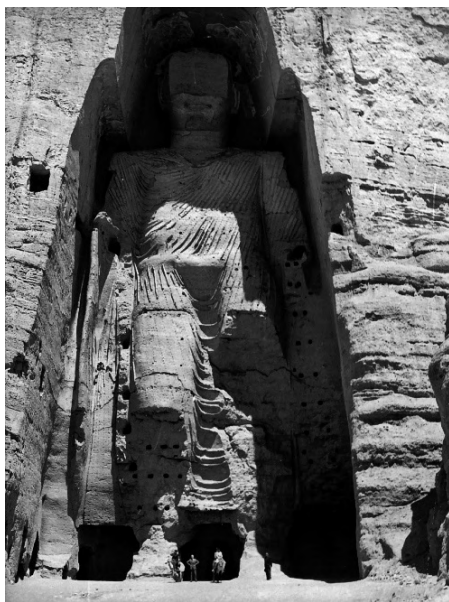
1 monasteries

2 SD, 2:339

*"But the five statues belong to the handiwork of the Initiates of the Fourth Race, who sought refuge, after the submersion of their continent, in the fastnesses and on the summits of the Central Asian mountain chains."*¹

The initiates of the Fourth Human Wave wanted to preserve the history of man. It was preserved during the Third Human Wave on Easter Island. In the Fourth Human Wave, in this Central Asian land they preserved the history of man by the carving of the five statues.

*"The five statues are an imperishable record of the esoteric teaching about the gradual evolution of the races."*²



Bamiyan statue (photograph from 1963)

*"The largest is made to represent the First Wave of mankind, its ethereal body being commemorated in hard, everlasting stone, for the instruction of future generations, as its remembrance would otherwise never have survived the Atlantean Deluge."*³

1 SD, 2:339

2 SD, 2:339

3 SD, 2:339-340

It is an everlasting stone because the first continent and then the soul aspect of man is imperishable. The First Human Wave is atma-buddhi enveloped by a shadow coming from the lunar pitris. So, that statue was represented by hard, everlasting stone.

*"The second — 120 feet high — represents the sweat-born; and the third — measuring 60 feet — immortalizes the race that fell, and thereby inaugurated the first physical race, born of father and mother, the last descendants of which are represented in the Statues found on Easter Isle; but they were only from 20 to 25 feet in stature at the epoch when Lemuria was submerged, after it had been nearly destroyed by volcanic fires."*¹

The statues were 120 feet, 60 feet, 25-30 feet, and so on. The 120 feet statue relates to the First Human Wave, the 60 feet statue relates to the Second Human Wave, the 27 or 28 feet statue relates to the Third Human Wave.

*"The Fourth Root-Race was still smaller, though gigantic in comparison with our present Fifth Race, and the series culminated finally in the latter."*²

That is how these statues originally came to be.

1 SD, 2:340

2 SD, 2:340



24. Pioneers of the Sixth and Seventh Human Wave

The home of the Fifth Human Wave populates the present continental systems of the globe. Whatever is remaining as land on this Earth is the home of the Fifth Human Wave. However, if the new lands that emerged for the Fifth Human Wave are to be considered, it is the two Americas, Europe, and Asia Minor, and the minor islands the conglomerate of which becomes a part of South Asia. In due time, the fifth continent will commence to be changed, but the Fifth Human Wave will last well on into the period of the Sixth Human Wave. Some portion which is undesirable will be submerged.

What is undesirable for human progress will dissolve in order to create a fresh beginning. Eventually the stock that was submerged will come into the new creation. Then, they can start afresh, while their traits remain the same. Suppose a very aggressive person is killed, what happens? He will return again and slowly display his aggression, but the memory of his previous suffering, defeat and of being killed restrains him a bit because he experienced that his aggression ultimately caused his demise. This is the learning process by which we all progress forward.

Then there is a last passage relating to the Fifth Human Wave: *"Thus the Americans have become in only three centuries a 'primary race,' pro tem., before becoming a race apart, and strongly separated from other now existing races. They are, in short, the germs of the Sixth sub-race, and in some few hundreds of years more, will become most decidedly the pioneers of that race which must succeed to the present European or fifth sub-race, in all its new characteristics. After this, in about 25,000 years, they will launch into preparations for the seventh sub-race; until, in consequence of cataclysms — the first series of those which must one day destroy Europe, and still later the whole Aryan Race (and thus affect both Americas), as also most of the lands directly connected with the confines of our continent and isles — the Sixth Root-Race will have appeared on the stage of our Round."*¹

"The Fifth will overlap the Sixth Race for many hundreds of millenniums, changing with it slower than its new successor, still changing in

1 SD, 2:444-445

stature, general physique, and mentality, just as the Fourth overlapped our Aryan Race, and the Third had over-lapped the Atlanteans."¹

What is important in these above passages is that from every part of the globe the seeds are now gathered on the American continent. In fact, on the Northern American continent, you will find seeds from every nation and continent. Name any nation, and all such national groups are gathering over there. In due course of time, by their inter-mixing and inter-mingling, with their attitude to be different from the rest of the wave, and their aspiration for excellence, they will eventually become the sixth minor wave according to the Secret Doctrine because that is the land which is open for new ideas and does not carry the prejudice of the old systems with them.

These positive seeds and possibilities exist in North America, while the primitive minor waves of the Aryan Wave and the energy of the Atlantean Wave simultaneously also exist. That is the heaviness under which the North American continent today suffers. The people of North America will need to come out of their Atlantean energy. They are fairly removed from their religious conditioning, being focused on innovations and the imaginations and in thinking afresh and differently. There is a positive dimension to all of this. If the Fifth Wave progresses in the right way, it is prophesied that the sixth minor wave will be born in North America because the whole of humanity, with all their cultural differences, (from Europe, Asia, and every part of the globe), is gathering there, and they are forming into a new identity. This new identity can form only if the Fifth Wave of humanity in North America is able to dispel their Atlantean energy of the power to control, and also eliminate the religious domination which still exists. Two diverse systems rule the people at the moment in North America - the militant religions and the free thought movement. Both are very active. Through time, these should balance out. In which case, the Fifth Wave can become eligible to receive a fresh wave of light relating to the Aryan Wave. That is what is written in the Secret Doctrine.

It is also said that bridges are being built between Far West and East, through the centre of humanity, which is in the lesser Himalayas. These bridges are being created so that there is a free flow of wisdom for creating and developing new material civilizations which are more attuned to peaceful coexistence. The centre for Hierarchy is in the Himalayas. The

centre for humanity is down under the Himalayas in the city of Darjeeling. This “bridge” cannot be seen with the physical eye. It will appear when America has grown beyond its selfishness.

It is proclaimed in the books of Alice A. Bailey that slowly North America will learn to shed its selfishness. It now helps many nations but there is a motive of business in such help. They are helping in order to increase business. This attitude continues to exist. The roots for this business attitude lies within the British nation. It is prophesied that the change to help without motive will first occur in the British, and then it will cross the Atlantic and helping humanity without a business motive would enter the thoughts and actions of the American government.

To help without motive is spiritual. To help with motive is commercial. When the great power on the planet assumes that dimension of helping without motive, then humanity as a whole will experience the supra-mental with ease. That is how the Tibetan Master comments in the books of Alice A. Bailey.

I circulated a paper at a previous May Call that Great Britain will lead the world with the thought of unselfish aid towards developing nations. In due course, America will follow this as well. This renaissance is expected to happen in Great Britain first, and then extend its influence to the North American government. This is not to happen in the immediate future, but it is expected to happen in some distant future when the American government learns that through power and business motives they cannot win the hearts of humans, while they may win their minds. If you win the minds of others, you are not safe. If you win the hearts of the others, then all are safe. That is what will be learned. The work is already forming in the subtle plane but the outcome all depends on how the Atlantean energy will be neutralized, and how free thought will ultimately prevail.

Future developments and habits from the past

The sixth minor wave (6th sub-wave of the Fifth Wave) itself has been given a time of 25,000 years to reach the seventh minor wave. So, to read about the Sixth Human Wave and the Seventh Human Wave is too far. What is important for all of us is that we all carry these energies of the Human Waves in us. There is something relating to the Atlantean in us

which cannot be denied. Our desire for power, our desire to control, controlling people, controlling information, and then make people kneel down before us, our one-upmanship, separative attitudes, egoistic tendencies — all this is Atlantean.

Even in the minor waves of the Fifth Wave of Aryans, there is conceptual crystallization and concretization. We suffer from the concepts that we have built for ourselves. We are unable to break the concepts and see the purpose of these concepts. When you have perceptions, and when you regularly ponder upon and with these perceptions, you will settle down to some concepts and conceptions. This is what is called the habit-forming nature. And we become conditioned to that habit. As much as we are conditioned by what we do regularly, we are conditioned beings — in the sense that we do not act when there is discomfort. While we need a habit to manifest and to be physical, we also need the necessary intelligence to wriggle out of a habit when it is not needed. That is how, while we learn to frame things, we also imprison ourselves, and suffer from such framing. By that, we lose our independence. That is why many times the groups become conditioned by regular habitual activity. Any change in activity becomes a disturbance and at times feels like a death. Our habit-forming nature is a facility. But at the same time, it is also a conditioning. When to adopt a habit and when not to adopt a habit, is the question. Flexibility is to be learned and less concretization of the intellect. Our intellectual development breeds terrible concretization and we are unable to come out of it. Concretization has its purpose at times. In some situations, the systems need to be changed in order to accomplish a given task at a given place and time.

There should be flexibility without excessive rigidity. You cannot be totally flexible, and you cannot be totally rigid. Totally rigid people suffer from their rigidity. Totally flexible people only gather husks and nothing else. There is the husk and there is the grain. We need to see both sides. Then we need to know when to apply what and at the right time. We need to experiment, also. We should also always be in rhythm. We need discipline and structure as well as flexibility in all that we do. Both adaptability and systemization have to be appropriately understood and worked out by each of us within our free will.

Forerunners of future waves and rounds

We have the ingredients of the First, Second, Third, Fourth, and Fifth Human Waves in us. And we can also develop what is expected of the balance of the Fifth Human Wave, and of the Sixth Human Wave, and also of the Seventh Human Wave

That is the freedom of man. Even during the second half of the Third Human Wave, many accomplished all the seven Human Wave developments. And even in the Fourth Human Wave, there were many more who developed all the seven Human Wave developments. And so also in the Fifth Human Wave there are people who have completed all the sevenfold developments. Those are the ones who guide and help us. It is not that we are limited by the cycles of time.

Man has the facility to move faster. The ones who have moved faster often return to help us, and more often than not we do not understand them because they are too early for us and we may not be quite ready for them. That is why we often reject them. We reject them and send them back because we do not understand them. They do not mind this because they understand us. When a man of wisdom is not understood, he is not worried because he knows and knew he would not be understood. Nevertheless, he has this job to do, to accomplish and he must do it — that is his spiritual task! And he is asked to do it again and again out of compassion for humanity. And he keeps doing it. That is how the Hierarchy is helping us all.

All the men of wisdom who come to enlighten us are the ones who completed all the seven rounds of the Seven Human Waves. There are others who completed the seven Rounds of the Earth also. There are Waves and there are Rounds. There is the Round, and then the Human Wave. This is the Fourth Round of the planet. In the Fourth Round, we are referring to the seven Human Waves. When we enter into the supra-mental we are entering into the next minor wave. Likewise, entering into the quality of the seventh minor wave of the Aryan Wave is an advanced stage. To complete all the seven Human Wave development even now, is a still more advanced situation. There are monads who have completed not only the seven Human Wave development, but also completed the seven Rounds of the Earth of which we are now in the Fourth Round. That is how there is a gra-

dation of initiates and some of them are too high even to consider at this time and place.

Gaining inspiration from such high beings is good, however, we are not to dream about them. Instead, we need to focus upon our immediate lives. Our dreaming about Shambala has no meaning now. What is important is for us to move from the mental to the supra-mental and be able to remain there — that is in the buddhic plane. Then, there are seven sub-planes of the buddhic plane. In the seventh sub-plane of the buddhic plane (from above downward on the Constitution of Man), you can touch the atmic plane (spiritual will). There you can relate more and more with the atma. The wisdom teachings are given to us so we can understand our spiritual journey. What is important for us is to take to the next step in our travels. We need to complete the travel step by step, each leg of the journey. To go to the airport is the first leg of the journey. Then, the next step is to reach the international airport and wait for the flight. And then we cross the continent. These are the steps in our journey. If all I do is sit here and dream and not take action, I will not be able to even take the first step in my travels.

You need to be a wisdom executive, not a dreamer. Dreamer remains here. They do not act on the wisdom. There is the operative side of wisdom, and there is the speculative side of the wisdom. To realize all that speculative wisdom, one needs to be operative. Let us keep operating and enter the temple through regular steps. Let us not forget that. And let us continue to proceed. It does not matter even if we make mistakes. Mistakes are not seen as sins on the path; they are seen as areas in which we need to strengthen ourselves. As we continue to build our strengths, limitations, weaknesses and unskillfulness fall one day. So, let us in all ways continue building our strength.

Thank you.

Appendix

Books & Booklets through the pen of Dr. K. Parvathi Kumar

The following books are available in:

English (E), German (G), Spanish (S), French (F), Hebrew (H), Telugu (T), Hindi (HI) and Kannada (K) languages.

1. Agni E/G/S
2. Akashakaya (Etheric Body) K
3. Amanaskudu T/K
4. Ambareeshudu T
5. Antardarsana Dhyanamulu.. . . . T/K
6. Anveshakudu. T
7. Asangudu. T
8. Ashram - Regulations for Entry. E/G/S
9. Ashram Leaves E/G/S
10. Aswini Devatalu T
11. Atma Sadhana Sutramulu T
12. Bharateeya Sampradayamu T/K
13. Bheeshma T
14. Bhrikta Rahita Taraka Raja Yogamu* T/K
15. Cow E/S/T/K
16. Devapi Maharshi Bhodalu.. . . . T/K
17. Dhanakamuni Katha.. . . . T
18. Dharmavigrahu - Sri Ramudu T
19. Discipleship. E
20. Doctrine of Eternal Presence. E/S
21. Enlightening Encounters. E/G/S
22. From Teacher's Pen. E
23. Gajendra Moksham.. . . . T
24. Gayatri Mantra Avagahana.. . . . T
25. Geetopanishad - Akshara Parabrahma Yogamu. T

26. Geetopanishad - Dhyana Yogamu	T
27. Geetopanishad - Gnana Yogamu	T
28. Geetopanishad - Karma Yogamu	T
29. Geetopanishad - Karma Sanyasa Yogamu	T
30. Geetopanishad - Rajavidhya Rajaguhyam	T
31. Geetopanishad - Sankhya Yogamu	T
32. Geetopanishad - Vibhuti Yogamu	T
33. Geetopanishad - Vignana Yogamu	T
34. Golden Stairs.	E/S
35. Good Friday*	E/G/S/F/H
36. Guru Padukastavam	E/K
37. Guru Sishya Samvadamu	T
38. Health and Harmony - I.	E/G/S
39. Health and Harmony - II.	E/G/S
40. Healer's Handbook	E/G/S
41. Healing Episodes	E/G/S
42. Hercules - The Man and the Symbol	E/G/S
43. Himalaya Guru Parampara (The Hierarchy)*	T/K/HI
44. Indian Tradition*	T
45. Jupiter - The Path of Expansion	E/G/S
46. Just Adjust - Yoga of Synthesis*	E/G/S/F
47. Jyotirlinga Yatra	T
48. Jyotisha Vignyanamu	T
49. Katha Deepika	T
50. Kapila & Kardama - The Quintessence of the Path	E/G
51. Kumara Sambhavam	T
52. Listening to the Invisible Master*	E/G/S/F/H/K
53. Lord Maitreya - The World Teacher*	E/G/S/F
54. Maitreya Maharshi Bhodalu	T/K
55. Mana Master Garu	T
56. Mantrams - Their Significance and Practice	E/G/S
57. Marana Rahasyam - I Markandeya	T
58. Marana Rahasyam - II Sati Savithri Devi Upakhyanam	T
59. Marana Rahasyam - III - Nachiketha Vidhya	T
60. Maria Magdalena*	E/S
61. Marriage - The Sublime Sacrament*	E/G/S

62. Mars - The Kumara	E/G/S
63. Maruvu Maharshi Bhodalu	T/K
64. Master C.V.V. Janmadina Sandesamu*	T/K
65. Master C.V.V. - Nuthana Yogamu	T/K
66. Master C.V.V. - Saturn Regulations	E
67. Master C.V.V. - Yogamu-Karma Rahityamu	T/K
68. Master C.V.V. - Yogamu	T/K
69. Master C.V.V. -The Initiator, Master E.K. -The Inspiror	E
70. Master E.K. - The New Age Teacher.	E/G/S/T
71. Master M.N - The Fiery Flame	E/G/S
72. Mercury - The Alchemist	E/G/S
73. Messages of Master E K.	E
74. Mithila - A New Age Syllabus	E/G/S/K
75. Moon - The Key	E/G/S
76. New Age Hospital Management	E/G/S/F
77. Nutrients for Discipleship	E
78. Occult Healing - 1.	E/G/S
79. Occult Healing - 2.	E/G/S
80. Occult Meditations	E/G/S
81. OM	T/K
82. On Change*	E/G/S
83. On Love*	E/G/S
84. On Service*	E/G/S
85. On Silence*	E/G/S
86. Parikshit* - The World Disciple	E/G/S/F
87. Prayers	E/G/S
88. Pranayamamu*	T/K
89. Rudra	E/G/S
90. Rukhmini Kalyanam	T
91. Sai Suktulu.	T/H/K
92. SAM - The sound of Saturn	E/S
93. Sanganeethi	T
94. Saraswathi - The Word	E/G/S
95. Saturn - The Path to Systematised Growth	E/G/S
96. Shirdi Sai Sayings	E/G/S
97. Siva Sankalpamu	T

98. Sound - The Key and its Application	E/G/S
99. Spiritual Fusion of East and West*	E
100. Spiritualism, Business and Management*	E/G/S
101. Srimad Ramayana - Dharma Kusumalu	T
102. Sri Dattatreya	E/G/S/T/Hi
103. Sri Krishna Namamrutham	T
104. Sri Guru Paadukastavam	T/K
105. Sri Lalitha I.	T
106. Sri Lalitha II.	T
107. Sri Lalitha III.	T
108. Sri Lalitha IV.	T
109. Sri Lalitha V.	T
110. Sri Lalitha VI.	T
111. Sri Lalitha VII.	T
112. Sri Lalitha VIII.	T
113. Sri Lalitha IX.	T
114. Sri Lalitha X.	T
115. Sri Sastry Garu	E/G/S/F/T
116. Sun - That I Am	E/G/S
117. Swetha Padmam	T
118. Teachings of Lord Maitreya - I.	E/S
119. Teachings of Lord Maitreya - II.	E/S
120. Teachings of Lord Sanat Kumara	E/G/S
121. Teachings of Master Morya I.	E/S
122. Teachings of Master Morya II.	E/S
123. Teachings of Master Koot Hoomi I.	E/S
124. Teachings of Master Koot Hoomi II.	E/S
125. Temple Service.	E
126. The Aquarian Cross	E/G/S
127. The Aquarian Master	E/G/S
128. The Doctrine of Ethics.	E/S
129. The Etheric Body*	E/G/S
130. The Masters of Wisdom	S
131. The Mysteries of Sagittarius	E
132. The Path of Synthesis*	E/S
133. The Splendor of Seven Hills*	E/S/T/K/Hi

134. The Teacher - Meaning & Significance.	E/G/S
135. The Teachings of Kapila	E/G
136. The Theosophical Movement.	E/G/S
137. The White Lotus*	E/G/S/K
138. Uranus - The Alchemist of the Age	E/G/S
139. Varunagraha Prabhavam	T/K
140. Venus - The Path to Immortality	E/G/S
141. Violet Flame Invocations	E/G/S
142. Vishnu Suktam	E/G/S
143. Vrutasura Rahasyam.	T
144. Wisdom Buds	E/S
145. Wisdom of Nakshatras	E
146. Wisdom Teachings of Vidura	E/G/S
147. Yama Geetha	T
* Booklets	

Other books by Dhanishta

148. Andari Talli - K. Krishna Kumari	T
149. A Mother to Many	E
150. Puranapurushuni Pooja Vidhanam	T
151. Sadguru Nithya Puja Vidhanamu	T
152. Sarannavaratri Pooja Vidhanamu	T/K
153. Shodosopachara Pooja - Avagahana	T
154. Soukumarya Satakam	T
155. Sri Aanjaneya Poojavidhanamu*	T
156. Sri Dattatreya Poojavidhanamu*	T
157. Sri Hanuman Chalisa	T
158. Sri Krishna Namamrutham	T
159. Sri Lalitha Sahasranama Stotram*	T
160. Sri Mahalakshmi Pooja Vidhanamu	T
161. Sri Rama Poojavidhanamu*	T
162. Sri Saraswathi Pooja Vidhanamu	T
163. Sri Siva Hridayamu	T
164. Sri Shiva Pooja*	T
165. Sri Subrahmanyaswamy Pooja Vidhanam*	T
166. Sri Surya Pooja Vidhanamu	T

167. Sri Venkateswara Pooja Vidhanamu	T
168. Sri Vinayaka Vratakalpamu	T
169. Sri Vishnu Sahasranamamu*	T
170. Sri Yoga Ganapati Pooja Vidhanamu	T
171. Steps of Silence	E

A compilation of articles about Dr. Sri K. Parvathi Kumar

Books by other Publishers based on the teachings
coming from Dr. K. Parvathi Kumar:

172. Aries	E
173. An Insight into the World Teacher Trust	E
174. Eight Steps of Meditation - Through the Key of Time	E
175. Hanuman - An Introduction.	E
176. Jagadguru Peetamu Aasayamulu	T/K
177. Lectures on Secret Doctrine - I.	E
178. Lectures on Secret Doctrine - II.	E
179. Lectures on Secret Doctrine - III.	E
180. Life and Teachings of Master Jupiter	E
181. Master CSG	E
182. Master C.V.V. - May Call!	E/G/S
183. Master C.V.V. - May Call! II	E/S
184. Master C.V.V. - Yoga Moolasutramulu	T/K
185. Master K.P.K. - An Expression of Synthesis	E

A short biography written by Sabine Anliker

186. Meditation and Gayatri	S
187. Sankhya	S
188. Spirituality in Daily Life.	S
189. Sri Suktam	E
190. Thus Spake Master C.V.V.	E
191. The Masters of Wisdom	S
192. Upanayanam	E

These books are available in online bookstores and
directly from the publisher:

info@ghanishta.org

www.ghanishta.org